Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)

Regimental Manual
Third Edition
2015

LORD STRATHCONA'S HORSE

(ROYAL CANADIANS)

REGIMENTAL MANUAL

Third Edition

(First Edition 1990)
(Second Edition 2004)
(Third Edition 2015)

Amendment Number	Date of Amendment	Amendment
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		
11.		
12.		
13.		
14.		
15.		

FOREWORD

Regiments are prolific in the world. Some have numbers to identify them (German Panzer Battalion 393; R22eR; etc.). Others have names from the type of unit and the role played as light or heavy cavalry (Scots Dragoon Guards; French 4e Régiment de Chasseurs). Some are associated with places (The Ontario Regiment; South Alberta Light Horse). We belong to a small group that is identified with an individual (Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry; Governor General's Horse Guards).

What makes the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) unique is that we are named after an individual who used his own money to raise a unit to fight in a foreign war. That individual had an exceptional impact on Canada's future. Whether it was his association with the exploration of the west through the Hudson's Bay Company, his singular vote in Parliament that ousted a government, or his driving of the Last Spike of the Canadian Pacific Railroad, there is no question that Donald Smith, Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal was an extraordinary individual. The soldiers that carried his name into battle in the Boer War were unique in their own right. They were "drawn from the prairie country and British Columbia" with "preference …to be given to good riders and good shots". [1]

What does this background have to do with a Regimental Manual? Everything.

A Regiment is not a commodity that can be bought online. It is an entity that embodies combat soldiers who have a common purpose and are bound by traditions and culture. The strength of the Canadian Army has been the regimental system. The strength of the Strathconas stems from our western heritage, our deeply entrenched sense of professionalism, and our spirited 'can do attitude' in arduous and often lethal conditions. The Regimental Manual documents who we are and how we are defined. It outlines our history, tradition, and culture. It is our route map of where we have been and how we strive to be relevant. Customs and traditions can and should fittingly change with the times. What was *de rigueur* in the past may no longer be appropriate now. Hence, the Regimental Manual should be regularly reviewed and updated.

As best described in the 2nd edition of the Regimental Manual by former Colonel of the Regiment LGen Jim Fox … "The Regimental Manual … provides a record for all to show how we should conduct ourselves as Strathconas and the reasons why we do so… As such, our customs and traditions contribute in a positive way to the esprit de corps of the Regiment …". The Strathcona esprit de corps is widely known and highly respected.

"Living in an atmosphere of soldierly duty and *esprit de corps* permeates the soul, where drill merely attunes the muscles." [2] This Regimental Manual is all about the Strathcona soul. Read it well, and often.

Cameron Ross
Major-General, CMM, CD (retired)
Colonel of the Regiment
June 2015

---

[1] Dr. David Bercuson, *Strathcona's Horse; South Africa 1900-1901* (Bunker to Bunker Publishing, 2000); v.

[2] Robert Heinl, *Dictionary of Military and Naval Quotations* (Annapolis, MD, US Naval Institute, 1985); quote of Liddell Hart, *Thoughts on War*, v 1944; 106

INTRODUCTION

This manual is meant to be the first and last stop for inquiries into the customs, traditions, and history of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians). I encourage every member of the Regimental Family, whether you are currently serving, attached, retired, or affiliated, to read through and see yourself within these pages. Every effort has been made to ensure that this most recent edition of the Regimental Manual is as reflective as possible of those currently serving and recently retired.

Those involved in the first two editions of the Regimental Manual, notably **Colonel (Retired) Keith Eddy** and **Lieutenant-Colonel (Retired) Vince Fagnan** respectively, should be commended for their diligent research and commitment. **Major Peter Beitz** initially established the framework and organisation for the updates to the Third Edition. Subsequently, many of the updates themselves were completed by **Captain Ryan Lee**, **Captain Ali Raju**, **Captain Phillip Webster, and Lieutenant Justin Rice**. Their efforts to accurately summarize all of the changes to this edition were often difficult and should not be understated.

One of the events that prompted this update was the Regiment's participation in Canada's longest armed conflict in Afghanistan from 2002-2014. Although the Second Edition was published in 2004, there was no way of knowing at that time that the Strathcona's would eventually see tanks return into service for combat operations in Kandahar Province in 2006. From 2006-2010, the Regiment deployed eight consecutive tank squadrons to the Panjwayi District.

The updates reflected in this Third Edition are current as of June 2015. Much of the information was provided by our very own **Warrant Officer 'Ted' MacLeod**, the curator of the Strathcona Gallery of The Military Museums in Calgary. The Strathcona Gallery was re-dedicated 25 November 2014 after an extensive five-year renovation and now reflects our status as being the only regiment in the Canadian Army to have participated in every one of our country's foreign conflicts since Confederation.

On a personal note, I was made to read the Second Edition of the Regimental Manual in its entirety before arriving at the Regiment for the first time in October 2007 as a subaltern. Although not a replacement for actual service at the Regiment, it provided me with an excellent picture of what would be expected of me upon my arrival. Since then, I have relied upon it regularly as a guide, as a resource, and as a companion to every aspect of Regimental life. I sincerely hope that this Third Edition provides the future members of our great Regiment the same sense of awe and direction it did for me.

The Regimental Society will be responsible for keeping the Regimental Manual up to date and for publishing amendments as approved by the Board of Directors. Comments on the Regimental Manual should be sent to the Regimental Second-in-Command, Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), Steele Barracks, P.O. Box 10500 Station Forces, Edmonton, Alberta, T5J 4J5. Other contact information can be found at the Regimental Society website at www.strathconas.ca.

Perseverance,

T.W.F. Day
Captain, CD
Adjutant
June 2015

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF FIGURES

LIST OF TABLES

CHAPTER 1 - HISTORY OF THE REGIMENT

ARTICLE 1100 - THE BIRTH OF THE REGIMENT

1.   Alarmed by the frequency and the ease with which British foot soldiers were being defeated by mounted Boers in South Africa, Donald Alexander Smith, 1st Baron Strathcona and Mount Royal, GCMG, GCVO, PC, DL (6 August 1820 – 21 January 1914) offered in 1899, to raise and equip a mounted regiment of Western Canadians to fight in the campaign. Lord Strathcona, then the Canadian High Commissioner in London, believed that these ranchers, cowboys, prospectors, former members of the North West Mounted Police, and the like, who were born and bred to the saddle, able to shoot and live off the land would be a match for the Boers. His offer to form such a unit was eagerly accepted. Uniquely, the Regiment was raised as a unit of the Imperial Army and not of the Dominion of Canada, as was the case with all the other units of the Canadian contingents.

2.   The responsibility of forming the Regiment was given to Superintendent Samuel Benfield Steele of the North West Mounted Police. On 26 January 1900 Lord Strathcona approved Steele's, now a Lieutenant Colonel and the Regiment's first Commanding Officer, suggestion that the Regiment be named "Strathcona's Horse." On 1 February 1900, the unit was formally authorized under Militia Order Number 26/00.[1] By 25 February, Lieutenant-Colonel Steele had completed the organization and on 16 March, 28 Officers and 512 other ranks with 599 horses of Strathcona's Horse sailed from Halifax on the Elder Dempster Liner, H.M. Transport, "Monterey" bound for South Africa.

Figure 1 – H.M. Transport Monterey, 16 March 1900
(The Military Museums Archives)

3.   The Regiment arrived in Cape Town on 10 April 1900 after a voyage that was marked by the death of 161 horses. Lieutenant-Colonel Steele immediately began training the Regiment in the climate and terrain of South Africa. A month later, orders were received for Strathcona's Horse to proceed to the east coast of South Africa by sea and then inland to blow up a bridge and cut Boer communications to the sea. On 2 June the British discovered that the Boers had learned of the plans and the Regiment was withdrawn to Durban.

4.   Strathcona's Horse joined the 3rd Mounted Brigade in Natal on 20 June 1900 and took part in General Buller's pursuit of the Boers into the Transvaal. Employed as scouts for the advancing army, the Regiment was often the first to make contact with the enemy and therefore suffered numerous casualties.

5.   The spirit of Strathcona's Horse in South Africa can best be illustrated by recounting the episode in which Sergeant A.H. Richardson earned the first Victoria Cross awarded to a member of a Canadian unit. On 5 July 1900, at Wolver Spruit, a party of Strathcona's Horse was ambushed by a group of Boers.

---

[1] Militia Order 26/1900, 1 February 1900: The order was issued for the formation of a mounted corps for special service in South Africa. The authorized strength was 42 officers, 504 non-commissioned officers and men, and 548 horses.

Corporal A. McArthur was wounded and fell from his horse. Sergeant Richardson, seeing that the man was in danger of being taken prisoner, retrieved him, threw him across his saddle, and rode off under a hail of Boer fire. Several bullets pierced his clothing. His horse was so exhausted that it died soon after Richardson reached friendly lines.

6.   Buller's force was broken up in early October 1900, and the Regiment was transferred to the 6th Mounted Brigade, then operating in the southern Transvaal. Strathcona's Horse saw action along the Vaal River and south into the Orange Free State before leaving the front lines on 15 January 1901.

Figure 2 – Strathcona's Horse on Parade in London after the South African War (The Military Museums Archives)

7.   Strathcona's Horse embarked at Cape Town on 20 January 1901 and on 14 February arrived in London where, for the first time, they met their patron Lord Strathcona. They were accorded a Royal welcome and His Majesty King Edward VII personally presented them their South African War medals. His Majesty also presented the Regiment with a King's Colour. Upon its return to Canada on 9 March 1901, Strathcona's Horse was disbanded in Halifax.

ARTICLE 1101 - POST SOUTH AFRICA

1.   Changes in regimental establishments after the South African War in 1901 announced that B Squadron, The Royal Canadian Dragoons would move from Winnipeg to Toronto and that a new Permanent Force unit of mounted rifles would be formed in Winnipeg.[2] Many personnel from B Squadron of the Dragoons stationed in Winnipeg were detached on 1 July 1901 to form A Squadron, Canadian Mounted Rifles as a new unit of the Permanent Force in Winnipeg.[3] This new unit later became the present-day Regiment.

---

[2] General Order 102/1901, August 1901 and Militia Order 110/1901, 14 May 190
[3] General Order 103/1901, August 1901.

2.   Major T.D.B. Evans, CB, DSO, first Officer Commanding of A Squadron, Canadian Mounted Rifles, had served in South Africa with The Royal Canadian Dragoons 1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles (Special Service Force) as had many of the other officers and men who formed the new unit. Lieutenants B.F. Mackie, DSO and H.D.B. Ketchen and others who were also transferred from B Squadron, saw service in South Africa, but with Strathcona's Horse.

3.   A Squadron, Canadian Mounted Rifles carried out the routine duties of a peacetime permanent unit. A detachment was sent to the coronation of His Majesty King Edward VII in 1902, and in 1903 the prefix "Royal" was added to the title and "A Squadron" dropped.[4] In 1907, Major A.C. Macdonell, DSO assumed command of The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles.

4.   In October 1909 the Canadian Government decided to perpetuate the famous name "Strathcona's Horse" in the Canadian Permanent Active Militia. The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles were accordingly re-designated Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians).[5] The establishment was soon increased to two squadrons and Colonel Steele, then commanding Military District No. 10 (Winnipeg), again took command of the Regiment in addition to his other duties.

Figure 3 – Troop Crossing on Horseback during the First World War (The Military Museums Archives)

5.   The final change in the name of the Regiment came on 1 May 1911 when the prefix "Lord" was added[6] and that same year Lord Strathcona was appointed Honorary Colonel, a position he held until his death in 1914. In 1912, the Regiment received its first Battle Honour "South Africa 1900-1901"[7] and Major A.C. MacDonnell was promoted to the rank of lieutenant-colonel to assume command. During its time in Winnipeg, the Regiment was garrisoned at Fort Osborne.

ARTICLE 1102 - THE FIRST WORLD WAR

1.   At the outbreak of hostilities in 1914, the Regiment was mobilized and arrived at Valcartier on 19 August, the first unit to arrive at the concentration area for the Canadian Expeditionary Force (CEF). After being brought up to war establishment strength by the addition of some 300 all ranks, the unit embarked at Quebec on 30 September and arrived in England on 16 October. Training commenced immediately on Salisbury Plain, which was turned into a quagmire by the winter rains that continued unabated for three months. There was no shelter for the horses, and the men lived under canvas until billets were provided in January 1915.

2.   In March 1915 the Regiment joined the rest of the Canadian Cavalry Brigade, which consisted of The Royal Canadian Dragoons, Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), 2nd King Edward's Horse and The Royal Canadian Horse Artillery. At this time, there was a need for more infantry in France and the cavalry regiments volunteered to go into the trenches, leaving their mounts behind. The Brigade arrived in

---

[4] General Order 153/1903, 1 October 1903.
[5] General Order 111/1909, October 1909: "His Majesty has been graciously pleased to approve the alteration of the title The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles to that of 'Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)."
[6] General Order 68/1911, May 1911.
[7] General Order 230/1912, December 1912

France on 4 May and the Regiment first came under fire on 22 May when it relieved the 10th Battalion, CEF at Festubert. The Regiment subsequently fought in the action at Givenchy and was then transferred to the line at Messines where it remained in its dismounted role until January 1916.

3.   On 16 February 1916, the Canadian Cavalry Brigade was reconstituted as a mounted force, with The Fort Garry Horse replacing 2nd King Edward's Horse. After training throughout the winter and spring, the Regiment was sent to the Somme sector of the front in June. There were, however, few opportunities for large scale mounted operations.

4.   The Regiment came out of winter quarters in March 1917 and played a conspicuous part in the pursuit of the retreating enemy on the Somme front. During the fighting at Guyencourt-Saulcourt on 27 March, Lieutenant F.M.W. Harvey was awarded the Victoria Cross for rushing and capturing a machine gun post. He jumped from his saddle, hurdled the triple entanglement of barbed wire, shot the gunner, and jumped onto the gun position.

5.   In late November 1917, the Regiment participated as a mounted exploitation force in the Battle of Cambrai, where tanks were used en masse for the first time. When the Germans later counter-attacked, the Regiment was again put into the line as infantry.

6.   During the last great German offensive, in March 1918, the Regiment fought both mounted and dismounted in rear guard actions to relieve the hard-pressed infantry. On 30 March the whole brigade attacked the advancing Germans at Moreuil Wood. Lieutenant G.M. Flowerdew, at the head of C Squadron, led a charge against an enemy 300 strong, supported by machine guns. He later died from the wounds he received that day and was posthumously awarded the Victoria Cross. The Battle of Moreuil Wood was a key event of the war, which contributed to the halting of the German offensive. Moreuil Wood is commemorated annually by Strathconas as a tribute to fallen comrades, and as a great symbol of Regimental pride.

7.   Heavy action began again for the Regiment during the first week of August at the Battle of Amiens, where the coordinated efforts of cavalry and tanks were used to good effect. The next important action came in October 1918, when the whole brigade was in pursuit of the retreating Germans near Le Cateau, east of Cambrai; this was to be the last action prior to Armistice on 11 November 1918.

8.   During their service in the First World War in France, Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) suffered numerous casualties. All told, 20 officers and 172 other ranks were killed, while 2 officers and 24 other ranks died of illness. The wounded numbered 53 officers and 504 other ranks. Two officers and seven other ranks were reported as prisoners of war. Decorations conferred on members of the Regiment, in addition to the two Victoria Crosses, were one Knight Commander of the Most Honourable Order of the Bath, four Companions of the Most Distinguished Order of Saint Michael and Saint George, seventeen Military Crosses, one Bar to the Military Cross, twenty-six Distinguished Conduct Medals, two Bars to the Distinguished Conduct Medal, sixty-four Military Medals, three Bars to the Military Medal and seven Meritorious Service Medals. Twenty-six members of the Regiment were mentioned in Dispatches and fourteen received foreign decorations.[8]

---

[8] W.B. Fraser, *Always a Strathcona*, (Calgary: Comprint Publishing Company, 1976), p. 122. The task of determining the recipients and exact number of honours and awards granted to Strathconas is extremely difficult and incomplete. There are several conflicting lists that have been published. The date when those lists were complied, whether they included Strathconas serving away from the unit and whether they included members of other corps serving in the Regiment may account for some of the differences.

ARTICLE 1103 - <u>BETWEEN THE WARS</u>

1.   When the Regiment returned to Canada in June of 1919, it was demobilized at Winnipeg. On 1 April of that year, however, authority was granted to reorganize Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) as a unit of the Permanent Force.[9] The establishment was set at a total strength of 247 all ranks: a headquarters and one squadron in Calgary and one squadron in Winnipeg, but this number was never reached. Regimental Headquarters and B Squadron moved into Mewata Armoury in Calgary, where they remained until they moved into Currie Barracks in 1936.[10] A Squadron stayed in Winnipeg at Fort Osborne until 1920 when they moved to Tuxedo Barracks in Winnipeg where they remained until 1941.

Figure 4 – "Sale of Horses," Calgary, Alberta, 11 September 1939 (The Military Museums Archives)

2.   The task of the Regiment was to maintain a Royal School of Cavalry at each location and to supervise the instruction of all Non-Permanent Active Militia cavalry units in Western Canada. Horses continued to be the mainstay of the Regiment until 1939, although A Squadron was equipped with a few reconnaissance cars in 1936.

3.   Apart from military duties, the Regiment participated in sports, and the musical ride and jumping and polo teams were very active and well known. On 24 July 1925, the alliance with the 17th/21st Lancers was authorized[11] The Governor General of Canada, the Earl of Bessborough, presented the first Guidon at Calgary on 17 September 1932. Mounted escorts were provided in Calgary and Winnipeg for the Royal Visit of His Majesty King George VI in 1939.

---

[9]General Order 27/1919, 1 April 1919. Order-in-Council 29 of 10 January 1919 and 204 of 30 January 1919.

[10] Militia Order 187/1923 formalized the localization of Regimental Headquarters in Calgary effective 1 April 1923. (Militia Order 383/1922 had temporarily transferred Regimental Headquarters from Calgary to Winnipeg effective 10 September 1922).

[11] Canadian Army Order 265/1925, July 1925 and General Order 106/1925, 1 November 1925.

ARTICLE 1104 - <u>THE SECOND WORLD WAR</u>

1.   The Regiment was not immediately mobilized at the outbreak of the Second World War in September 1939, but was concentrated in Winnipeg the following January. One squadron was sent to London, Ontario, to become part of the 1st Canadian Cavalry Regiment (Mechanized), along with squadrons of The Royal Canadian Dragoons and the 1st Hussars. On 6 July 1940, orders were received for the mobilization of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) and The Royal Canadian Dragoons to form a composite unit called the 1st Canadian Motorcycle Regiment. The Regiment had said farewell to its horses as it entered the motorized and mechanized era of the Army.

Figure 5 – Regiment Training on the Canadian Ram Tank in England in 1942/43 (The Military Museums Archives)

2.   Late in 1940 the mobilization orders were changed again; the Regiment became an armoured regiment, and the detached squadron was recalled.[12] Training began in Listowel, Ontario and continued in Camp Borden until orders were received to proceed to England. Now a unit of the 1st Canadian Armoured Brigade, the Regiment sailed from Halifax on 12 November 1941.

3.   The Regiment trained in England for two years, receiving its first Canadian-built Ram tanks in March 1942. On 24 April, as a result of a remark made by His Majesty King George VI, while inspecting the Regiment, the time-honoured and traditional "LSH" was replaced by "LdSH."[13]

4.   Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) joined the 5th Canadian Armoured Brigade in England when the 5th Canadian Armoured Division was re-organized. As a unit of the 5th Armoured Brigade, the Regiment landed at Naples, Italy on 1 December 1943. The Regiment was in a defensive line at Ortona by 19 January 1944, and was to get its first taste of battle there before being redeployed in late February.

5.   Of the many battles that the Regiment fought in Italy one of the most notable, and the one whose anniversary is celebrated regularly by the Regiment, took place on the Melfa River on 24 May 1944. Crossing the river ahead of the main force, Reconnaissance Troop commanded by Lieutenant E.J. Perkins established a bridgehead on the other side. The position was held with nothing heavier than machine guns and hand-held anti-tank weapons against a number of German tank and infantry attacks. Later in the day, A Company, Westminster Regiment (Motor) commanded by Major J.K. Mahony reinforced the Troop. On the other side of the river, meanwhile, the remainder of the Regiment was engaged in a merciless battle that resulted in the destruction of more than thirty enemy tanks and guns. Lieutenant Perkins was awarded the Distinguished Service Order, as was the Commanding Officer, Lieutenant-Colonel P.G. Griffin, whose battle cry "PUSH ON!" was familiar to every man in the Regiment by the end of the day. Sergeant C.N. Macey and Trooper J.K. Funk of Reconnaissance Troop were awarded the Distinguished Conduct Medal and the Military Medal respectively, while Major Mahony of the Westminsters was awarded the Victoria Cross.[14]

---

[12] General Order 88/1941, 5 June 1941. The order was effective 15 November 1940.

[13] Lieutenant-General A.G.L. McNaughton, G.O.C-in-C. First Canadian Army, Letter to Canadian Military Headquarters, 25 April 1942. The Military Museums Archives, Calgary.

[14] See pp. 67 - 81 of Lieutenant-Colonel J.M. McAvity, *A Record of Achievement*, (Toronto: Brigdens Limited, 1947) for an account of the Crossing of the Melfa River.

6.   After the Melfa, the Regiment participated in a number of major battles in Italy, including the breaching of the Gothic Line on 1 September 1944; Misano Ridge on 3 September; Coriano on 12/13 September; the Lamone Crossing on 12 December; and Fosso Munio on 19 December. In the latter battle, the Light Aid Detachment officer, Captain Whittle, demonstrated in full measure the spirit of "Perseverance" when, while under heavy fire, he recovered a bogged tank that was holding up the Regiment's advance. For this action he was awarded the Military Cross and his driver the Military Medal.

7.   The Regiment left Italy on 18 February 1945, landing in southern France a few days later to proceed to the front in North West Europe. Arriving in Holland on 2 April, the Regiment participated in operation "Dutch Cleanser" along with the 8th New Brunswick Hussars. During this operation a long dash was made from Arnhem to the Zuider Zee to cut off the remaining Germans in Western Holland. This was to be Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) last major operation of the war.

8.   During active service in the Second World War the Regiment lost 12 officers and 95 other ranks killed. The wounded numbered 27 officers and 194 other ranks.[15] Decorations conferred on members of the Regiment included five Distinguished Service Orders, three Military Crosses, two Distinguished Conduct Medals, eight Military Medals, one Member of the Most Excellent Order of the British Empire, one British Empire Medal, ten Mentions in Dispatches, one Bronze Cross and one Bronze Star (United States of America).[16]

9.   In early 1946, the Regiment returned to Canada, settling for a short time in Camp Borden before finding a permanent home at Currie Barracks, Calgary. During the years following the war, the Regiment was given several minor changes to its title when it was

Figure 6 – Regimental Tanks Fighting in Holland(The Military Museums Archives)

formally re-designated: "2nd Armoured Regiment (Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)) R.C.A.C." in 1946[17]; "Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) (2nd Armoured Regiment)" in 1949;[18] and finally back to "Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)" in 1958.[19]

ARTICLE 1105 - THE COLD WAR PERIOD

1.   Peacetime routine was again broken by the outbreak of war in 1950, this time in Korea. From April 1951 to May 1954 C, B and A Squadrons in succession, each spent a year providing armoured support for the battalions of 25 Canadian Infantry Brigade of 1st Commonwealth Division. The Strathcona's also contributed personnel to form a reconnaissance troop for 25 Canadian Infantry Brigade.

---

[15] McAvity. *A Record of Achievement*, p. 257-259.
[16] Ibid. p. 260. This list was published in *A Record of Achievement* in 1947 and is not exhaustive. It did not include honours and awards won by Strathconas who were serving away from the Regiment nor account for any awards that may have been granted after the war.
[17] General Order 259/1946, 16 October 1946.
[18] Canadian Army Order 76-2, Part "B" Supplement to Issue Number 118/1949, 2 March 1949.
[19] Canadian Army Order 76-2, Part "B" Supplement to Issue Number 602/1958, 19 May 1958

2.   During its time in Korea, the Regiment suffered five killed in action and earned numerous awards and citations. Major V.W. Jewkes was awarded the Distinguished Service Order. Major J.S. Roxborough and Squadron Sergent-Major E.J. Armer were inducted as Members of the Most Excellent Order of the British Empire. Sergeant T. Allen and Trooper R.C. Stevenson were both awarded Military Medals. Squadron Quartermaster Sergeant D. F. Eveleigh and Trooper H. Wyatt were awarded the British Empire Medal, Military. The United States Air Force awarded Lieutenant W.E. Ward with a Distinguished Flying Cross. The Belgian military awarded Lieutenant R.W. Bull the Chevalier de l'Ordre de la Couronne and La Croix de Guerre 1940 avec Palme.[20]

Figure 7 – Canadian Army Trophy Winners, 1967 (Regimental Museum Archives

3.   Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) also served in Europe as part of Canada's North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) Brigade Group. An armoured squadron served with 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade Group (CIBG) when the brigade was formed on 15 October 1953.[21] The squadron was garrisoned in Fort Anne in Werl, Germany from November 1953 to November 1955.[22] Later, when 4 CIBG replaced 2 CIBG in November 1957, the Regiment provided the Ferret Scout Car-equipped reconnaissance squadron in Germany between November 1957 and November 1959.

4.   In 1958, the Regiment in Calgary moved from Currie to Sarcee Barracks, which had been built especially for the Regiment. The Regiment was stationed at Sarcee Barracks (renamed Harvey Barracks in 1981 after the death of Brigadier F.W. Harvey, VC, MC, C de G, CD in 1980) since 1958, except for the period 1965 to 1970 when the entire Regiment served in 4 CIBG in Germany.[23] During this period the Regiment was stationed at "Fort Beausejour" in Iserlohn, Germany. Of particular note during this latter deployment was that B Squadron won the Canadian Army Trophy in 1967, NATO's highest award for tank gunnery. Major-General F.F. Worthington, CB, MC, MM, CD, the "Father" of the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps, then the Colonel Commandant, presented the award.

5.   On 26 July 1968, while the Regiment was stationed in Germany, Field Marshal Sir Richard Hull, KCB, DSO, a 17th/21st Lancer, presented a new Guidon. The old Guidon was laid up in Saint Stephen's Church in Calgary on 30 September 1970 following a parade in which the Regiment exercised the Freedom of the City. This ceremony reaffirmed the close ties that have existed with Calgary since 1920.

6.   On return to Canada, the Regiment was re-established in Calgary in June 1970, when the Regular Force component of The Fort Garry Horse was transferred to the Primary Reserve and its members became Strathconas. Simultaneously, the Regiment in Germany re-badged to The Royal Canadian Dragoons. A number of these "originals" were posted in from Germany and elsewhere to join the Regiment in Calgary.

---

[20] Korean War Medals. Previous references to a US Air Medal was incorrect as A.P. Bull (P.P.C.L.I.) was the recipient not R.W. Bull (LdSH(RC)). Further a US Legion of Merit was awarded shortly before the Korean War for actions during WWII by Colonel Wickwire-Foster.

[21] Sean M. Maloney, *War Without Battles: Canada's NATO Brigade in Germany 1951-1993*, (Toronto: McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1997), pp. 74 – 75.

[22] Ibid. p.76.

[23] Ibid. p. 224. 4 CIBG was designated 4 Canadian Mechanized Brigade Group on 1 May 1968.

ARTICLE 1106 - <u>UNITED NATIONS DEPLOYMENTS</u>

1.   Peacekeeping duties overseas have occupied a large portion of the Regiment's time in the modern era. From February 1957 to February 1958, men from Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) and The Royal Canadian Dragoons formed the 56th Canadian Reconnaissance Squadron that served in the newly formed United Nations Emergency Force in Egypt. Other squadrons served in the same force during the periods of February 1961 to February 1962 and February 1963 to February 1964.

2.   In 1964/65, Reconnaissance Squadron served a six-month tour of duty with the United Nations Forces in Cyprus (UNFICYP). The entire Regiment later served in Cyprus in a dismounted peacekeeping role from April to October 1972, from September 1979 to April 1980, and from August 1988 to March 1989. In addition, a reconnaissance troop of Lynx was attached to the Canadian Airborne Regiment during the months of July to December 1974 as a result of the Turkish invasion of Cyprus. Another troop also served as the Reconnaissance Troop with Third Regiment Royal Canadian Horse Artillery as part of UNFICYP in 1982.

Figure 8 – Reconnaissance Squadron Ferrets on Patrol in Cyprus, 1964/65 (Regimental Museum Archives)

3.   The Regiment also played major parts in other peacekeeping missions. Twenty-eight Strathconas deployed on Operation MARQUIS to Cambodia in 1993 as part of the United Nations Transitional Authority in Cambodia (UNTAC). The following year, the Regiment deployed as a Battle Group to the Former Republic of Yugoslavia where it served as part of the United Nations Protection Force (UNPROFOR) in Bosnia-Herzegovina on Operation CAVALIER (Rotation 3) between April and October 1994.

4.   The Regiment deployed to Bosnia and Herzegovina in April 1994 with the Cougar Armoured Vehicle General Purpose (AVGP), a vehicle that was originally procured as a tank trainer in 1978/79. There, they encountered frequent small arms, mortar and anti-tank fire during their patrols of 120 km of conflicted borders in the vicinity of Visoko. For his actions under fire during the Regiment's UNPROFOR tour in Bosnia, Sergeant Tom Hoppe earned the Military Service Cross and the Medal of Bravery. He is the only Canadian to be awarded two medals for bravery on a United Nations mission. The Regiment returned in October 1994.

ARTICLE 1107 - <u>POST COLD WAR OPERATIONS</u>

1.   After spending 50 years with its home garrison in Calgary, the Regiment was moved from Harvey Barracks to the former RCAF Namao site of the Edmonton Garrison in July 1996. The site was later named Steele Barracks in the honour of Major-General Sir Samuel Benfield Steele, KCMG, CB, MVO on 11 May 2000.

2.   Shortly after the Regiment's move to Edmonton, A Squadron deployed to Bosnia Herzegovina on Operation PALLADIUM (Rotation 0) as the Reconnaissance Squadron of the Second Battalion Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry (PPCLI) Battle Group of the NATO Stabilization Force (SFOR) between January and July 1997. Throughout this period, A Squadron, equipped with the Cougar AVGP, was stationed in Zgon. The remainder of the Regiment later served as the Canadian SFOR Battle Group for Operation PALLADIUM (Rotation 1) in Bosnia between July 1997 and January 1998. Battle Group

Headquarters was located in Coralici with squadrons and companies in Coralici, Zgon and Drvar. Of particular note was the fact that, once again in its history, the Regiment rerolled 120 of its soldiers to form one of three infantry companies during the tour. B Company (made up mostly of former Reconnaissance and B Squadron soldiers) honourably served as a mounted infantry company in Drvar.

Figure 9 – Harvey Barracks, 1996 (The Military Museum Archives)

3.   On short notice, Reconnaissance Squadron was deployed to Kosovo on Operation KINETIC to act as the Reconnaissance Squadron for the 4th Armoured Brigade (UK), and later the 19th Mechanized Brigade (UK), as part of the NATO Kosovo Force (KFOR) between June and December 1999. Reconnaissance Squadron, equipped with the Light Armoured Vehicle Reconnaissance (Coyote), was one of the first units into the Kosovar Province as the Serbian troops pulled out following the four-month NATO air campaign. Reconnaissance Squadron was awarded the Deputy Chief of the Defence Staff Unit Commendation for its "exceptional resolve, teamwork, and proficiency while employed in the province of Kosovo…."[24] Also, for the first time since Korea, the Canadian government agreed to deploy tanks overseas. Third Troop, C Squadron (with an Administration Troop and Battle Group Liaison Troop) deployed to Kosovo with Leopard 1C2 tanks as part of the 1 PPCLI Battle Group between August and December 1999.

4.   The Regiment's operational deployments continued at a fast pace. A Squadron served as a Reconnaissance Squadron equipped with Coyote in Bosnia (Operation PALLADIUM Rotation 6) with the 3 PPLCI Battle Group (SFOR) between February and September 2000. B Squadron assumed the same role with the 2 PPCLI Battle Group for Rotation 7 from September 2000 to March 2001.

ARTICLE 1108 – <u>AFGHANISTAN</u>

1.   On 11 September 2001, terrorist attacks against the United States resulted in a US-led mission to Afghanistan to remove the terrorist friendly Taliban government. Strathcona soldiers first deployed with Reconnaissance Squadron to Kandahar, Afghanistan with the 3 PPCLI Battle Group as part of the US Task Force Rakkisan on Operation APOLLO between January and July 2002.

2.   The Regiment contributed two Reconnaissance

Figure 10 – Leopards on patrol, Afghanistan, 2009

---

[24] Deputy Chief of Defence Staff Unit Commendation signed by Lieutenant-General R.R. Henault on 12 May 2000.

Squadrons for the initial deployments to Afghanistan. During Operation APOLLO which deployed in 2002, and in 2004 Roto 2 deployed as part of Operation ATHENA.

3.   The Regiment continued to support the mission in Afghanistan, supplying troops to fulfill tasks as needed. Operation ATHENA resulted in a changing commitment by the Regiment. The first complete tank squadron deployed since Korea, arrived in Afghanistan in October 2006. B Squadron deployed with the Leopard C2 tank. The Regiment continued to provide tanks and personnel, rotating squadrons for each tour until January 2011, for a total of eight consecutive rotations. The initial vehicle deployed was the Leopard C2. The age of these vehicles was apparent during this mission and resulted in the purchase and lease of several Leopard 2 variants: the Leopard 2A6 and the Leopard 2A4M. Once the combat mission was complete these vehicles were refitted in Germany and replaced the Leopard C2 as the main battle tank in the Strathcona arsenal.

5.   Strathcona soldiers served with excellence during the conflict, receiving numerous commendations and medals, though their success did not come without great cost. On 24 September 2007, Corporal Nathan Hornburg of the King's Own Calgary Regiment (attached to B Squadron as an augmentee) was killed when a recoilless rifle round penetrated the Armoured Recovery Vehicle he was driving during a recovery under fire. During his deployment with C Squadron, Trooper Michael Hayakaze was killed on 2 March 2008 by an Improvised Explosive Device while driving on a resupply mission. Many Strathconas were wounded while deployed, however the exact number and nature of their injuries remains classified.

6.   The Regiment received a Chief of Defence Staff Unit Commendation in 2008 for efforts during the conflict. Colonels Jamie Cade, Roy Forestell, and Charles (Spike) Hazleton, Lieutenant-Colonel Trevor Cadieu, and Major Trevor Gosselin received Meritorious Service Medals for their actions in Afghanistan. Warrant Officer T.W. Hopkin and Corporal E.R.G. Morley both received the Medal of Military Valour for outstanding bravery and courage. The highest award granted to a Strathcona during Afghanistan was the Star of Military Valour, awarded to Master Warrant Officer R. Stacey in 2011. Foreign awards received by Strathconas include the US Legion of Merit (Degree of Officer) awarded to Brigadier-General Craig Hilton, the US Bronze Star received by Lieutenant-Colonel Scott Long, and the US Meritorious Service Medal awarded to Lieutenant-Colonel Steve Kelsey.[25]

7.   Throughout Operation ATHENA, Strathcona soldiers continued to fulfill other mission roles at the individual level. The final major contribution of the Regiment in Afghanistan was a large contribution to Operation ATTENTION. This mission was focused on mentoring and developing the Afghan National Army.[26]

ARTICLE 1109 - DOMESTIC OPERATIONS

1.   The Red River Flood of 1997 was the most severe Manitobans had seen in almost 100 years, causing $3.5 billion in damage and the evacuation of 28,000 people from the area and flooded over 2,500km^2. The CF responded to the request for aid from the province with over 8,600 personnel, helping with evacuation, sandbagging and emergency dikes, bridging and transportation of potable water. Operation ASSISTANCE was the largest deployment of Canadian Armed Forces personnel since the Korean War, and saw the entire Regiment deploy to Winnipeg on 21 April before spreading to Elm Creek, Niverville, Landmark, Isles de Chene and Transcona to provide assistance in these small communities. Here they spent a total of 12 days working tirelessly before finally heading back to Wainwright on 10 June

---

[25] Secretarial Note: Honour and award recipients are currently being researched to ensure all are included.
[26] Editorial Note: Research into the names of casualties, command teams, and award recipients is currently ongoing. Future edits to the Regimental Manual will include this information.

to continue pre-deployment training for Operation PALLADIUM Rotation 1.

2.   In 1998 a severe ice storm hit Eastern Ontario, Southern Quebec and parts of Nova Scotia causing severe damage to infrastructure leading to 35 fatalities. 16,000 members deployed to Ontario and Quebec on Operation RECUPERATION. A Squadron was deployed on 13 February to the St-Jean-sur-Richelieu area shortly after returning from Bosnia. There, they were sent out on various infrastructure repair and aid relief roles, including assisting emergency crews in clearing debris, working in food kitchens, and splitting and delivering over 7,000 cords of wood to heat homes without power. After nine days A Squadron returned to Edmonton.

3.   For the G8 summit held in Kananaskis, Alberta, Operation GRIZZLY was planned as the CF's role for security and assistance to the RCMP and DFAIT from 19 June to 28 June 2002. This operation required C Sqn to re-role from a tank squadron to Coyotes, providing 16 vehicles and 80 personnel. Overall, the CF committed 5,000 troops to create an 80 nautical mile air exclusion zone during the summit. Strathconas were employed in Observation Posts (OPs) and coordinated with Griffons, Air Defense Anti-Tank Systems (ADATS), and CF-18s to successfully enforce the security area, and ensure the safety of the foreign dignitaries.

4.   Operation PEREGRINE, from 4 August to 17 September 2003, was the CF's response to over 800 separate forest fires within BC that the provincial fire services could not manage on their own. Days after BC's request for federal assistance over 2,600 CF personnel, mainly from 1 CMBG and LFWA Reserve units, were given basic forest fighting training before being sent to the Kamloops, Kootenay and Okanagan Valleys. While Recce Squadron, as the Brigade Immediate Reaction Unit, was the first and longest deployed squadron of the Regiment, the entire Regiment deployed shortly thereafter at squadron level. This deployment was unique in that Land Forces Western Area (LFWA) formed a series of mixed Task Forces with sub-units from multiple units. The Regiment was therefore completely decentralised throughout the interior of BC with squadrons and RHQ/HQ Squadron (as a Task Force HQ) deployed to Barriere, Westbank, Kelowna, Cranbrook and Chase. Over a period of almost two months, Strathconas helped forestry services fight the rapidly spreading fires threatening communities before rain eventually ended the state of emergency.

5.   Operation PODIUM saw the Canadian Armed Forces participate in the RCMP-led Integrated Security Unit during the 2010 Vancouver Olympic and Paralympic Games in February 2010. This comprehensive Operation saw military units conduct rigorous training to ensure they were adequately prepared with any non-conventional situations that might arise, as well as to solidify our partnership with civilian counterparts. Several exercises were conducted to provide realistic training scenarios, coupled with professional development aimed at educating soldiers on the specifics of domestic operations. Joint Task Force Games (JTFG) was assembled specifically to oversee the training, deployment and operations of 4,500 CF personnel during the Winter Olympic Games. The Strathcona's were sent to Camp Cyprus Bowl, where they rotated through OP on three day shifts, conducted patrols or Quick Reaction Force (QRF) tasks over a period of 73 days.

6.   2011 saw the Red River flood again along with the Assiniboine, to which Strathconas responded to aid in sandbagging of essential infrastructure and aid in the evacuation of vulnerable populations. Operation LUSTRE, from 9-26 May, saw 100 Strathconas from A and Recce Squadrons with some Regimental Headquarters (RHQ) and Headquarters Squadron elements quickly reorganize without notice from participating on Exercise MAPLE GUARDIAN to a 14 hour road move to Portage la Prairie and parts of the Assiniboine River. With very little sleep and long work days, Strathconas persevered through 12 days of relentless flood mitigation, and managed to protect over 130 homes.

7.   Operation LENTUS 13-01 was the Canadian Armed Forces' response to a request for assistance by the Province of Alberta in June 2013 to provide support for Humanitarian Assistance and Disaster Response (HADR) operations due to major flooding in Southern Alberta. This was part of the military contingency plan that outlines the joint response to provide support for HADR to provincial and territorial authorities in the case of a major natural disaster that overwhelms their capacity to respond. On 22 June 2014, approximately 2,300 CAF personnel were deployed to help with flood mitigation and assist with the evacuation of civilians. They worked for five days in concert with local civilian authorities to help prevent further damage and to repair existing infrastructure, including water purification, dyke repairs and route clearance. Strathcona's were heavily involved in the Kananaskis area, working in concert with helicopter support to help evacuate over 250 trapped civilians. The Regiment was also involved in Canmore, Alberta where they worked to bring the regional hospital back to operational functionality.

Figure 11 – Strathconas evacuate civilians from William Watson Lodge

CHAPTER 2 - GENERAL CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS

SECTION 1 - REGIMENTAL DESIGNATION

ARTICLE 2100 - GENERAL

Most regiments have a geographical or numerical designation or are named for members of the Royal Family. For those units named after an individual, Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) is unique in the Canadian Forces as it bears the name of a person not of the Royal Household or one of its representatives.

ARTICLE 2101 - TITLE AND ABBREVIATION

1.   His Majesty King Edward VII awarded the prefix "Royal" to A Squadron Canadian Mounted Rifles in 1903. In 1909, The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles were re-designated Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) (see page 1-3). Two years later, on 1 May 1911, the prefix "Lord" was added to the name (see page 1-3).

2.   The authorized abbreviation is LdSH(RC) as suggested by His Majesty King George VI following his inspection of the Regiment on 24 May 1942. His Majesty felt that the abbreviation L.S.H. used by the Regiment could too easily be confused with those of several British units. He also pointed out the proper abbreviation for "Lord" was "Ld." The Regiment adopted LdSH(RC) and has maintained it ever since (see page 1-6).

3.   The complete Regimental designation is "Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)."[1] "The" is not part of the title "Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)" or "LdSH(RC)."

ARTICLE 2102 - STRATHCONA'S AND STRATHCONAS

1.   The term "Strathcona's" is a short form of the full title.[2] "Strathcona's" is used informally in writing, as a name for sports teams and on parade as a precautionary word of command by the Commanding Officer, Regimental Second in Command, Adjutant, and Regimental Sergeant Major.

2.   A member of the Regiment is referred to as a "Strathcona" whereas several members are "Strathconas," that is without the use of an apostrophe.

ARTICLE 2103 - SQUADRON DESIGNATIONS

1.   The current recipient squadron of the Prince of Wales Trophy will be designated "The Prince of Wales Squadron," but will retain their original letter designation for the purpose of identifying vehicles and for using field call signs. See ARTICLE F300 - THE PRINCE OF WALES TROPHY FOR THE AWARDING OF THE TROPHY.

2.   The term "Sabre" is used to indicate a squadron or troop of the fighting echelon. Sabre Squadrons are assigned an alphabetical prefix commencing with the letter "A." Sabre Squadrons precede Reconnaissance and Headquarters Squadrons when assigning letters and when listed in order of precedence. The designated Prince of Wales Squadron, however, will always be first in the order of precedence.

---

[1] Canadian Army Order 76-2, Supplement to Issue Number 602/1958 dated 19 May 1958.

[2] Letter from Headquarters L.S.H. (R.C.) Calgary, Alberta to Headquarters Military District No. 13, 5 Oct 1921.

3.   When the Regiment contains a Reconnaissance Squadron, its letter designation follows that of the last sabre squadron. Reconnaissance Squadron may be identified as "Recce Squadron" in correspondence and on parade in accordance with ARTICLE 8202 - ADDRESSING SUB-UNITS.

ARTICLE 2104 - TROOP DESIGNATIONS

1.   Within squadrons, sabre troops are assigned a numerical prefix commencing with the number one. On correspondence and on parade, the troops are referred to as First, Second, Third, or Fourth Troop (not One, Two, Three, or Four Troop).

2.   Functional and service support troops (e.g. Assault Troop or Administration Troop) are referred to by their activity depending on regimental, corps or army practice at the time.

SECTION 2 - SENIOR APPOINTMENTS

ARTICLE 2200 - GENERAL

1.   The following background to senior appointments in the Regiment is an excerpt from *Always a Strathcona*:

> "The tradition of honorary appointments - such as Honorary Colonel, Colonel of the Regiment, and Colonel Commandant - dates back to the formation of the British regular army in the seventeenth century. In those days the King appointed a person of high standing and wealth to be a colonel to raise a regiment for the Crown; in return the colonel would receive some royal consideration, such as a title or a lucrative position. The Colonel in turn chose an assistant, or Lieutenant-Colonel, to recruit, train, and administer the regiment, and lead it in battle. The regiment bore the colonel's name and he maintained a proprietary interest in it, selecting its officers and distributing the equipment, pay, and rations provided by the government.

> "Changing customs and laws have altered the Colonel's position over the years to the point that it is now primarily an honorary one. A Regiment asks a former officer or other high-ranking individual to accept the appointment as a mark of their recognition and respect for him. The Colonel does not involve himself in the military operation of the Regiment, but is concerned with its ceremonial, social, and 'family' aspects, and lends his prestige to the regiment's activities."[3]

2.   Honorary appointments have evolved to the extent that Honorary Colonels are generally associated with Reserve Force units while Colonels of the Regiment are associated with Regular Force units.[4] Although the Regiment had several Honorary Colonels between 1903 and 1958, the Canadian Army replaced the term Honorary Colonel with Colonel of the Regiment in 1958. The Regiment currently has a Colonel-in-Chief and a Colonel of the Regiment.

---

[3] W.B. Fraser, p. 232.

[4] The authority for honorary appointments is Queen's Regulations and Orders 3.06 (Honorary Appointments) and the rules governing appointments are at Canadian Forces Administrative Order 3-4 (Honorary Appointments and Honorary Ranks).

ARTICLE 2201 - COLONEL-IN-CHIEF

1.   Normally only a member of the Royal Family may hold the appointment of Colonel-in-Chief. The appointment of a member of the Royal Household as Colonel-in-Chief is a significant honour. By doing so, the monarch recognizes the distinguished service provided by that unit to the Crown. Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) was the first Canadian Regular Force regiment to be so honoured.

2.   His Royal Highness, Edward, The Prince of Wales became Colonel-in-Chief of the Regiment on 27 July 1928, and relinquished the appointment when he was crowned King Edward VIII in 1936.

3.   His Royal Highness, Charles, The Prince of Wales was appointed Colonel-in-Chief on 11 June 1977. Through this act of naming her heir as Colonel-in-Chief, Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II paid great tribute to the Regiment. At the same time the Queen also appointed His Royal Highness as Colonel-in Chief of two other Canadian regiments, The Royal Regiment of Canada and The Royal Winnipeg Rifles. These were the first such appointments he assumed with Canadian regiments.[5] He was later appointed Colonel-in-Chief of The Royal Canadian Dragoons in 1985.
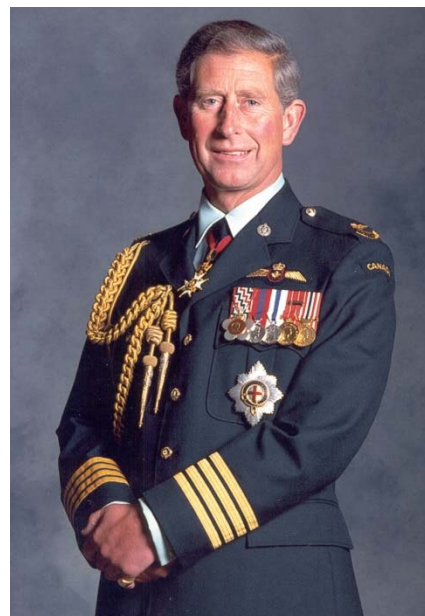
Figure 12 – His Royal Highness The Prince of Wales, Colonel-in-Chief

4.   Following a senior appointments succession review, the Strathcona Society Board of Directors decided in 2013 to maintain the tradition of a member of the Royal Family holding the appointment of Colonel-in-Chief.

 ARTICLE 2202 - HONORARY COLONEL[6]

1.   Major-General Richard Hebden O'Grady-Haly, CB, DSO, was a British officer who acted as General Officer Commanding the Militia from July 1900 to July 1902. He was Honorary Colonel of the Regiment from 13 August 1903 to 8 January 1911 when it transitioned from A Squadron Canadian, Mounted Rifles and The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles to Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians).

2.   The Right Honourable Sir Donald Alexander Smith, Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal, GCMG, GCVO, raised Strathcona's Horse at his own expense in 1900 for service in South Africa. His detailed biography is on page C-1. He was Honorary Colonel from 19 August 1911, until his death on 21 January 1914 while he was the Canadian High Commissioner in England.

3.   Lieutenant-General Sir Archibald Cameron MacDonnell, KCB, CMG, DSO, C de G was twice Commanding Officer of the Regiment, during the periods March 1907 to April 1910 and April 1912 to December 1915. He was Honorary Colonel from 8 May 1922 until his death in January 1942. He retired from the Army in 1925 when he was the Commandant of the Royal Military College holding the rank of major-general and was placed on the Reserve of Officers as a lieutenant-general.

4.   Lieutenant-Colonel Donald Sterling Palmer Howard, 3rd Baron Strathcona and Mount Royal, Sir Donald Smith's grandson was Honorary Colonel from 1943 until his death in 1959. He had an extensive military career in the British Army and served during both World Wars. He sat as a Member of Parliament

---

[5] *About the Prince: Biography*, [Online] Available http://www.princeofwales.gov.uk/about/biography/regiments.html, 4 Dec 00.
[6] W.B. Fraser, p. 233.

(North Cumberland) in the 1920s and later held numerous defence-related positions including Parliamentary Under Secretary of State for War and the Vice-President of the Army Council. His Lordship was the last Honorary Colonel of the Regiment, as the Canadian Army replaced the term with Colonel of the Regiment in 1958.

ARTICLE 2203 - <u>COLONEL OF THE REGIMENT</u>

1.   The Colonel of the Regiment is regarded as the head of the Regimental family and as such is the guardian of Regimental traditions. He has access to senior Canadian Armed Forces officers normally through the serving chain of command and through the Colonel Commandant of the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps. Colonels of the Regiments usually have been former Commanding Officers who have held the rank of Colonel or above on retirement and who have been retired for at least three years at the start of their appointment. The Colonel of the Regiment is traditionally referred to by his retirement rank. In a policy attributed to Lieutenant-General Milroy, should a Colonel of the Regiment be appointed who was not of Colonel or higher rank on retirement, the officer nevertheless will be referred to as 'Colonel'. The Colonel of the Regiment wears the uniform of a Colonel of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)[7]. As such, he wears a black beret with the Strathcona cap badge and Strathcona collar dogs instead of the serving Colonel's green beret with general service cap badge and Colonel's red gorget.

2.   The term of office for Colonels of the Regiment is three years and may be extended under extraordinary circumstances at the request of the Regiment. As the CAF requires that nominations be received by National Defence Headquarters (NDHQ) two years before the appointment expiration date of the incumbent, the selection process for the Colonel of the Regiment is initiated by the Senior Serving Strathcona by Moreuil Wood (March) of the incumbent's first year in office. While all former COs are considered for the position, preference is given to those who have made a significant contribution in time and energy to the Regimental family's well-being. The Regimental Executive Council of serving colonels and generals will have an opportunity to voice an opinion through the Senior Serving Strathcona to the serving and former Colonels of the Regiment who will decide who will be the Regiment's nominee. The nomination will be forwarded by the Regiment through the chain of command to the Chief of Defence Staff for approval and to the Minister of National Defence who authorizes the appointment.

3.   The following officers have held the appointment of Colonel of the Regiment (biographies at Annex C):

a.   Brigadier Frederick (Fred) Maurice Watson Harvey, VC, MC, C de G, CD (1 September 1888-21 August 1980; age 92) joined the Regiment in 1916. He was awarded the Victoria Cross for conspicuous bravery at Guyencourt on 27 March 1917. He commanded the Regiment from 15 December 1938 to 10 July 1940, and was Colonel of the Regiment from 1 September 1958 to 3 June 1966.[8]

b.   Lieutenant-Colonel James (Jim) Malcolm McAvity, DSO, MBE (20 November 1909 – 14 April 2002; age 93) commanded the Regiment from 27 July 1944 to 28 November 1945[9] and was Colonel of the Regiment from 6 June 1966 to 26 March 1971.

c.   Lieutenant-General William (Bill) Alexander Milroy, DSO, CD (25 June 1920- 20 February 2006; age 85) joined the Regiment as a Lieutenant in 1941 and other than a brief post-war stint as 2ic of 3rd Battalion, North Nova Scotia Highlanders, he remained a Strathcona throughout his career. In 1972, he became Commander of Mobile Command.

---

[7] *Canadian Forces Dress Instructions*, (Ottawa: Department of National Defence, 1995), Article 114.
[8] W.B. Fraser, p. 233.
[9] Ibid. p.233.

He was Colonel of the Regiment 26 March 1971 until 11 November 1978.[10]

d.   Major-General James Charlton Gardner, CD (1920-29 October 2007; age 87) served with the Regiment as Second in Command in 1956, was the Commanding Officer of the Fort Garry Horse and later served as Commander 4 Canadian Mechanized Brigade Group in Germany with the Regiment under his command. He was Colonel of the Regiment during the period 11 November 1978 to 11 November 1982.

e.   Major-General Phillip (Phil) A. Neatby, CD (25 May 1928 -) was Commanding Officer during the period August 1966 to 31 July 1968 when the Regiment was deployed to the Federal Republic of Germany. He assumed the appointment of Colonel of the Regiment on 11 November 1982 and relinquished it on 11 November 1986.

f.   Lieutenant-General René Gutknecht, CMM, OstJ, CD (July 23, 1930 - January 2, 2011; age 81) commanded the Regiment during the period 31 July 1968 to 5 June 1970 while it was deployed in the Federal Republic of Germany. He was the Colonel of the Regiment between 11 November 1986 and 11 November 1992.

g.   Lieutenant-General James (Jim) Arthur Fox, CMM, CD (6 December 1920 – 29 October 2007) commanded the Regiment from June 1971 to September 1973. In 1972, he took the Regiment to Cyprus with the United Nations Force in Cyprus. He was the second Strathcona to Command Mobile Command which he did from 1986 to 1989. He served as Colonel of the Regiment between 11 November 1992 and 18 July 2003.

h.   Lieutenant-Colonel I.D. Mark Egener, CD (3 July 1938 -) commanded the Regiment between August 1973 and August 1975. He served as Colonel of the Regiment between 18 July 2003 and 30 June 2006.

i.   Colonel John E.N. Roderick, CD (17 November 1939 -) commanded the Regiment between August 1981 and July 1983. He served as Colonel of the Regiment between 30 June 2006 and 26 June 2010.

j.   Major-General H. Cameron (Cam) Ross, CMM, CD (8 February 1949 -) commanded the Regiment from July 1989 to August 1991 and served as Colonel of the Regiment from 26 June 2010 until 20 June 2015.

h.   Colonel Greg Hug, CD (24 December 1952 -) commanded the Regiment from August 1991to July 1993. He was appointed Colonel of the Regiment on 20 June 2015.

ARTICLE 2204 – SENIOR SERVING STRATHCONA

1.   The recognition by the Regiment and the Regimental Society of the Senior Serving Strathcona (SSS) has been a standing practice for decades. As the title suggests, the Senior Serving is exactly that; the senior ranking officer of the Regiment on active service within the Canadian Armed Forces. In most instances, this is straightforward and easily established. However, in instances where more than one officer shares the same senior rank, be that General Officer or not, the officer who is determined to hold seniority in that rank (i.e. serve in the rank for the longest period of time) shall be recognized as the Senior Serving.

2.   On those occasions when the Senior Serving Strathcona is not a General Officer, the Colonel so designated will not normally fulfill the additional responsibilities of the Regimental Colonel.

---

[10] Ibid. p.233 – 234.

3.   The principal responsibility of the Senior Serving is to represent the interests of the Regiment at the senior levels of the Army and the CAF. In this respect, the Senior Serving has no official standing within the Army chain of command, nor must the Senior Serving act in deliberate contradiction to the chain of command. The Senior Serving should, as necessary, ensure that the facts and issues are clearly known and understood by the chain of command, in all matters of importance affecting, or likely to affect, the Regiment.

4.   Likewise, where the Senior Serving is a General Officer, he will also represent the interests of the Regiment as a member of the RCAC Senate, the advisory council chaired by the Senior Armoured Advisor to the Commander, Canadian Army. The exception to this situation would be in that instance where the Senior Serving was appointed the Senior Armoured Advisor, when it might be considered more appropriate to nominate a separate (Regimental) member to the RCAC Senate.

5.   The Senior Serving will counsel and advise the Commanding Officer, the Regimental Colonel and the Colonel of the Regiment, as appropriate, where the sharing of such perspective is deemed by the Senior Serving to be constructive. Additionally, the Senior Serving may be called upon by the Colonel of the Regiment to provide perspective on Army and CAF matters, to the Society Directors at the Annual Board of Directors Meeting, or similar extraordinary Society Executive meetings.

6.   In matters of career succession planning, the Senior Serving will advise and assist the Regimental Colonel as appropriate. Further, the Senior Serving will counsel and advise all serving Colonels in their career planning and requirements, including discussions as deemed necessary with the Senior Armoured Advisor, and/or other senior CAF appointments.

7.   In the matter of Colonel of the Regiment succession, the Senior Serving will act in the role of Confidential Secretary on behalf of the former Colonels of the Regiment. The Senior Serving will prepare and present the list of potential candidates, and act as intermediary between the former Colonels of the Regiment and the selectee. Also, the Senior Serving will monitor the approval process through the chain of command and ensure a successful and timely result.

8.   The Senior Serving Strathcona is a unique appointment in the Regimental Family and well-placed to advise and assist the leadership within the Serving Regiment and the Society. By virtue of appointment, the Senior Serving's perspective will be both long and valuable - some of which is shared annually in his contribution to the Strathconian.

ARTICLE 2205 – REGIMENTAL COLONEL

1.   Effective career management is a collaborative effort between a number of key stakeholders to ensure that the best interests of the CAF, Corps and Regiment are satisfied while attempting to address personal (individual) goals.

2.   In order to enhance CAF career management the Army has implemented its own Army Succession Planning (ASP). The general aim of ASP activities is to place the most suitable person, in the right position, at the right time. It addresses gaps between the current competencies and future needs, enables better organizational capability and maximizes the employment of highly skilled leaders and individuals.

3.   Within the Army, the Deputy Commander Canadian Army (DCCA) leads the ASP in cooperation and advice from Regiments, Corps and Branch Directors. The intent of ASP is to:

      a.   influence short and long term development of people in order to enable the success of the CAF;

     b.   select individuals for command, senior, key and staff appointments for the short-term success of the Army (strategic, operational and tactical leadership of the institution), and to develop key individual competencies such as RSM/CO (personal development); and

     c.   assess long term potential with a view to successful long-term strategic leadership.

4.   The Director Armour (D RCAC) is responsible to DCCA for ensuring effective/coherent succession planning and development of all Armour Officers and Non-Commissioned Members within the Corps. Regimental Colonels are appointed by the Regimental Senior Serving Officer to assist D RCAC in the execution of his duties and responsibilities.

5.   The role of the Regimental Colonel is to work closely with the Regimental Commanding Officer, Regimental Sergeant Major and Regimental Senior Serving Officer to ensure that all lieutenant-colonels and post sub-unit command/JCSP-qualified majors and NCMs are represented in a coherent and accurate manner consistent with the desires of the individual and the requirements of the Regiment, Corps, Army, and CAF.

6.   Specific responsibilities of the Regimental Colonel include the following:

     a.   represent the Regiment at all Armour Corps succession boards and other like meetings convened by the Director of Armour;

     b.   chair the Regimental succession board in the fall to review/endorse the Regimental short/long term succession plans;

     c.   present the Regimental succession plan to the Senior Serving Strathcona for approval;

     d.   communicate on a regular basis with Senior Serving Strathcona. Seek advice as required and engage Senior Serving Strathcona to engage with DCCA on Regimental matters that require his intervention. This applies specifically to post-command lieutenant-colonels /chief warrant officers and colonels;

     e.   develop the command appointment plan for eligible lieutenant-colonels for submission to D RCAC prior to all ASBs;

     f.   develop the Regimental succession plan for all Regimental CWO/MWO;

     g.   communicate on a regular basis with all Regimental lieutenant-colonels/post sub-unit command/JCSP-qualified majors and chief warrant officers. Provide advice and guidance as necessary. This must be done in a honest manner without building false expectations;

     h.   maintain the Regimental Colonel data base with assistance from the CO;

     i.   communicate with the Colonel of the Regiment on a regular basis to keep him apprised of key personnel succession plans and issues;

     j.   work closely with the career manger/D RCAC on postings and promotion plans for Regimental lieutenant-colonel/major/chief warrant officer; and

     k.   maintain currency with personnel and training matters within the Regiment.

ARTICLE 2206 – REGIMENTAL EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

The Regimental Executive Council (REC) includes serving Strathconas who are Colonels and General Officers. A Strathcona-only entity, the REC provides advice to the Colonel of the Regiment, Senior Serving Strathcona, and the Regimental Colonel on all matters affecting the Regiment but especially regarding succession planning. Initially suggested at the Board of Directors meeting in 2012, the REC met for the first time on 25 Jan 2013.

ARTICLE 2207 – REGIMENTAL SECRETARY

The Regimental Secretary is responsible for attending all Society Board of Directors meetings in order to keep accurate minutes. They are also responsible for the seal of the Society, for all correspondence to and from the Society, the keeping of membership records, notifying members of meetings and the collection of society dues.[11]

SECTION 3 - REGIMENTAL OBSERVANCES

ARTICLE 2300 - GENERAL

1.   The Regiment celebrates two special events annually: Moreuil Wood and Strathcona Day. Moreuil Wood is commemorated as a memorial service while Strathcona Day is a celebration of the Regiment's accomplishments.

2.   The Regiment also participates in Remembrance Day ceremonies, an annual Junior Ranks' Christmas dinner, an annual "At Home" during the Christmas season, as well as Regimental reunions.

ARTICLE 2301 - REGIMENTAL BIRTHDAY

1.   The issue of the actual birth date of the Regiment has created very interesting debates over the years. Although the name of the Regiment originates from the forming of a special corps for service in South Africa on 1 February 1900, the formal lineage begins with the establishment of A Squadron, Canadian Mounted Rifles as a new unit on 1 July 1901. To further complicate the issue, many early Regimental customs were directly linked to the heritage of the School of Mounted Infantry, which originated in Winnipeg in 1885. This lineage, and heritage, is shown pictorially at ANNEX A - LINEAGE OF THE REGIMENT.

2.   In 1934, the Commanding Officer of the day, Lieutenant-Colonel L.F. Page, DSO, requested that the Regimental birth date be officially recognized as 20 July 1885, the date when the School of Mounted Infantry was raised by General Order 21/1885.[12] Even though the Regiment was authorized this "lineage," and in fact celebrated its 50th birthday in 1935 and continued to celebrate the 20 July 1885 date until 1957, Director History later revoked the decision in 1958.

3.   The lineage of a regiment is awarded on the basis of formal changes to designations and organizations as published in General Orders. A review of General Orders, which was later published in *The Regiments and Corps of the Canadian Army* in 1964, identified that the 1885 date had been incorrectly authorized.

4.   The lineage of the Regiment after 1909 has never been in dispute. Prior to 1909, however, the

---

[11] Editorial Note: A list will be developed in time with the names of Senior Serving Strathconas, Regimental Colonels, members of Regimental Executive Councils, and the Regimental Secretaries. In conjunction with the Regimental Historical Committee, it will be decided whether such lists should be included in the Regimental Manual or elsewhere.

[12] General Order 21/1885, 20 July 1885.

Regiment's lineage has two apparent roots: that of A Squadron, Canadian Mounted Rifles and that of Strathcona's Horse. Strathcona's Horse, which was raised in 1900 for special service in South Africa, was disbanded upon return to Canada in March 1901. A Squadron, Canadian Mounted Rifles, however, was established as a new Permanent Force unit in Winnipeg on 1 July 1901 by General Order 102/1901.[13] In 1903, the unit was designated "The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles" when the title "Royal" was awarded and "A Squadron" dropped from its designation (General Order 153/1903).[14]

5.   In 1909, the name of The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles was simply altered to that of "Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)" (General Order 111/1909)[15] to perpetuate "the striking example of patriotism by Lord Strathcona" and the service of the corps raised by him for service in South Africa.[16] The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles in Winnipeg was chosen because it was a unit of the Permanent Force and, although the unit did not individually represent any unit that served in South Africa, many of the officers and men of the Regiment did serve with Strathcona's Horse. It was also the only appropriate Permanent Force unit that could be so designated: the others had longer histories. The lineage of the Regiment is therefore that of A Squadron, Canadian Mounted Rifles. This perpetuation, but not formal lineage, of the original Strathcona's Horse was further guaranteed when the Regiment was awarded the Battle Honour "South Africa 1900 – 1901" in 1912.

6.   The issue of the 1885 birth date discussion is complicated by the fact that many of the original personnel who formed A Squadron, Canadian Mounted Rifles in Winnipeg in 1901 were "posted in" from the Dragoons. B Squadron, The Royal Canadian Dragoons, who had been previously been amalgamated with the School of Mounted Infantry, had been stationed in Winnipeg in various designations until they were moved to Toronto in 1901 (Militia Order 110/1901). The discussion of lineage in 1934 mentioned that "Permanent Force Mounted Troops have been stationed at Winnipeg, and while they have had various designations, they have eventually evolved into the present Lord Strathcona's Horse, [sic] (Royal Canadians)."[17] The presence of mounted troops in Winnipeg, however, amounted to personnel transfers from one unit to another. In reality, many officers, men and horses of the Dragoons stayed in the same location to establish the new unit, thus appearing to be the same unit with the 1885 lineage. While personnel transfers do not constitute formal changes to the origins of the Regiment, they certainly add to the Regiment's unique and rich Western Canadian mounted heritage.

7.   The official birth date of the Regiment is 1 July 1901. The Regimental Birthday, however, is considered to be 1 February 1900. The Regimental birthday is not celebrated in any special way.

ARTICLE 2302 - MOREUIL WOOD

1.   In 1926, Lieutenant-General MacDonnell, then Honorary Colonel of the Regiment, proposed that a day be set aside for commemoration and thanksgiving. The intent was to have a full dress inspection, followed by a church parade, a sports day and a Regimental dance. The day was to be shared by all Strathconas, serving and former serving.

2.   Although most members of the Regiment preferred to set aside a day in the summer for the annual celebration, camps, courses, and training commitments to the Militia dictated an earlier time be selected. The Regiment chose to honour the Battle of Moreuil Wood because of the courage shown by Strathconas

---

[13] General Order 102/1901, 1 July 1901.
[14] General Order 153/1903, October 1903.
[15] General Order 111/1909, October 1909.
[16] Colonel F.L. Lessard, Adjutant General Canadian Militia, Letter to the D.O.C. Military District No. 10, Winnipeg, Manitoba, 3 March 1909, The Military Museums Archives, Calgary. The letter explained that no increase to the Permanent Force could be made that year.
[17] Cover letter to Lieutenant-Colonel Page's request signed by Brigadier H.H. Matthews, District Officer Commanding, Military District # 13, May 23, 1934.

on that day and because the battle established the hallmark for future members of the Regiment. The first commemoration of the Battle of Moreuil Wood was held 30 March 1927.

3.   The Regiment commemorates the Battle of Moreuil Wood annually on the day closest to 30 March; however, training or operational commitments often force a slightly earlier or later date. For decades, Moreuil Wood celebrations were held on weekends. However, it has been the recent practice to hold the parade and accompanying activities during the week. This scheduling recognizes the fact that often the Regiment has been in the field just before Moreuil Wood and that the Alberta school spring break often occurs immediately after.

4.   As with the original intent of Lieutenant-General MacDonnell's proposal, the Regiment participates in inter-mess sports and a memorial parade. In addition, the Officers' Mess and Warrant Officers' and Sergeants' Mess usually hold mess dinners or mixed mess dinners when in garrison. Events normally extend over a two or three-day period rather than being restricted to a single day. For many years an all-ranks dance was held during Moreuil Wood. More recently, this dance has been de-linked from Moreuil Wood to more convenient times of the year.

ARTICLE 2303 - STRATHCONA DAY

1.   The first Strathcona Day was celebrated on 3 June 1950. The purpose was to commemorate the battles in which the Regiment had taken part during three wars: the South African War, the First World War and the Second World War. The day commenced with a track and field competition for all Strathconas attending, serving and former serving alike, and a series of mounted competitions, including bareback wrestling, musical chairs on horseback and tent pegging. The day closed with an all-ranks dinner held in Harvey Hall at Currie Barracks.

2.   For unknown reasons, Strathcona Day was not celebrated routinely before 1957. Furthermore, there was some conflict between Strathcona Day and Moreuil Wood as to which was the Regimental celebration. In due course, Strathcona Day evolved mainly as a sports competition in order to celebrate the Regiment's accomplishments without the sombre mood generally associated with the memorial services of Moreuil Wood. In addition, the day eventually chosen for the annual celebration was moved to 24 May to honour the Regiment's successful action at the Melfa River.

3.   Strathcona Day has evolved into a sports competition that pits the messes against each other in a series of conventional sports. Following the awarding of trophies and prizes, the members of the Regiment hold an all ranks' supper or barbecue to close out the day's events. The day of celebration normally is on or close to the 24th of May which coincides with the Battle of Melfa River.

ARTICLE 2304 - JUNIOR RANKS' CHRISTMAS DINNER

1.   The Regiment normally holds a traditional Christmas dinner for the soldiers just prior to the commencement of Christmas holidays. The dinner, formerly known as the "Men's Christmas Dinner," is now known as the Junior Ranks' Christmas Dinner. The dinner may or may not be preceded by a parade or church service depending on opportunity. As with many regiments, this custom originated when the Regiment was deployed at war and was held on Christmas Day. The Regiment maintains the custom when deployed on operations as circumstances allow.

2.   At the dinner, the soldiers are paraded in and seated by squadrons. As is the custom, the youngest soldier in the Regiment is appointed as the Commanding Officer for the dinner while the oldest corporal is appointed as the Regimental Sergeant Major for the duration of the dinner. Prior to grace the four individuals involved exchange tunics. Following grace and the carving of a symbolic turkey by the Commanding Officer(s) and Regimental Sergeant(s) Major, the officers, warrant officers and senior non-

commissioned officers serve the soldiers their dinner. Once this is done, they themselves may eat.

3.   Following the dinner, the newly appointed Commanding Officer terminates the occasion with a Christmas message and usually grants a stand down to signify the start of the holiday season.

ARTICLE 2305 - AT HOMES

1.   Each year, normally following the Junior Ranks' Christmas dinner, the officers, warrant officers and senior non-commissioned officers retire to one of the two Messes for an "At Home." The location of the function alternates each year between the two institutes.

2.   The social function provides a rare opportunity for all to share each other's company in a relaxed atmosphere prior to the start of the Christmas season. The event usually centres on a series of competitions such as pool, darts and card games. The losing Mess, as is the custom, is awarded the "Horse's Ass" trophy which is to be retained and displayed by that mess until competed for again the following year.

ARTICLE 2306 - REUNIONS

1.   The Regiment's first reunion was not held until April 1970. Although there had been reunions to mark specific events such as the 18 May 1946 reunion to commemorate the Battle of the Melfa River (24 May 1944), no reunion had previously been held to honour all Strathconas or Strathcona achievements.

2.   Reunions are now normally held every five years under the auspices of the Regimental Association, with the assistance of the Regiment. The last reunion organized by the Association was in Edmonton in 2010. Planning is underway regarding a possible reunion in 2018 (associated with the 100th anniversary of the battle of Moreuil Wood) and/or in 2020

SECTION 4 - REGIMENTAL AFFILIATIONS

ARTICLE 2400 - ALLIED REGIMENT

1.   Officially, the affiliation between Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) and the Lancers dates from 1925. The very origin of the 17th Lancers, however, provides an older link with Canada. In 1759, when the news of the death of General Wolfe at Quebec was brought to His Majesty King George II, he directed a regiment of light dragoons be raised in memory of the death of his heroic friend. This Regiment was designated the 17th Lancers.

Figure 13 – Regimental Officer's Cap Badge of the Royal Lancers

2.   The Regiment and the Lancers came to know one another in the South African War and again when they both served in the Cavalry Corps on the Western Front in 1918. After the First World War, links between British and Dominion regiments were encouraged, in part to assist in the great human problem of resettlement of wounded and unemployed ex-servicemen. At the same time that a request was received from the Lancers (who by then were the 17th/21st Lancers since amalgamations in 1922) the Regiment was also considering establishing ties with three other British regiments. 5th Dragoon Guards, 4th/7th Dragoon Guards and The King's Own Hussars had all approached Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) on the subject of an alliance.

3.   When the 17th/21st Lancers contacted Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), the alliance was quickly sealed with the approval of His Majesty King George V on 25 July 1925. In the words of the Strathcona's Commanding Officer of the day, Lieutenant-Colonel C.E. Connolly, DSO "there is no regiment with which we should be so proud to be affiliated…." The overriding consideration in choosing

the Lancers was the close battlefield ties between the two units. In making the final proposal the Regiment used the argument:

> "during the whole period during which this Regiment was serving in the Cavalry Corps during the late war, we were constantly in close touch with the 17th/21st Lancers, being always in the same Cavalry Division and often fighting alongside of that Regiment, or rather the 17th Lancers – the 21st Lancers serving in India and on the frontier, during the war. It would be a source of great pride and pleasure to all ranks of Lord Strathcona's Horse (RC) if the proposed affiliation could be carried into effect."[18]

4.   Since the establishment of the affiliation, each unit has taken advantage of every opportunity to strengthen the bonds between regiments. Shortly after the approval of the affiliation, the Regiment was honoured with a visit from Field Marshal Earl Haig of Bemersyde, the Honorary Colonel of the Lancers and a Lancer himself.

5.   The first Strathcona on exchange with the Lancers in Tidworth, England was Captain Gianelli in 1927. He remained with them until the Lancers deployed to Egypt in September 1928 and then to India until summer 1939. There is no record of the Lancers reciprocating during this period. Since the spring of 1957, the regiments provided an officer to each other on exchange duty normally for a period of two years at a time. A list of officers who served on exchange with the Lancers is at Table 1. Exchanges between the regiments continued until 1997 when the Canadian Army reduced the number of exchange positions as a cost-saving measure. Nevertheless, close ties are maintained as individuals and delegations from both regiments continue to visit each other frequently. Gifts are customarily exchanged between the units to mark the occasions when the two regiments formally meet.

6.   The 17th/21st Lancers were amalgamated with the 16th/5th Lancers on 25 June 1993 and became The Queen's Royal Lancers.[19] On 2 May 2015, the Queen's Royal Lancers amalgamated with the 9th/12th Royal Lancers to become the Royal Lancers, and retained the 17th Lancer motto of 'Death or Glory'.

Table 1 – List of Exchange Officers who served with/came from the Lancers[20]

Strathcona Exchange Officers (Captains)	Lancer Exchange Officers (Captains)
D.A. Nicholson (1957-1959)	C.C. Bashford (1957-1959)
Lancers in Hong Kong – No Exchange (1959-1963)	Lancers in Hong Kong – No Exchange (1959-1963)
C.G.G. Bristowe (1963-1965)	J.E.B. Hills (1963-1965)
D.W. Johnson (1968-1969)	C.B.R. Hale (1968-1969)
Doug Dobson (1968-1969)	J.F. Doble (1968-1969)
Walt Reid (1969-1970)	C.F. Edwards-Collins (1970-1972)
Bill Logan (1971-1973)	Jeremy Groves (1972-1974)
Bruce Jeffries (1974-1976)	Stephen Cobb (1974-1976)
Harry White (1976-1978)	Harry Downes (1977-1978)

---

[18] Lieutenant-Colonel C.E. Connolly, Commanding Officer Lord Strathcona's Horse (RC), Letter to Headquarters Military District No. 13, 7 April 1925, The Military Museums Archives, Calgary.

[19] Canadian Forces Administrative Order 99-7 (Alliances and Affiliations) states that the affiliation with The Queen's Royal Lancers is the Regiment's only officially recognized affiliation.

[20] C.N. Nicolay, ed. *Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Newsletter* (Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Regimental Society, 1999), Vol. 14, No. 2, p. 9 and The Military Museums Archives.

Greg Hug (1978-1979)	Antony Barkas (1979-1981)
Sterling Kierstead (1979-1982)	Robin Goldsmith (1981-1983)
Craig Hilton (1982-1984)	Alan Woodbridge (1983-1984)
Roy Forestell (1984-86)	R.N. Wertheim (1984-1986)
Charles (Spike) Hazleton (1986-1988)	Tim Garforth-Bles (1986-1988)
Jim Ellis (1988-1990)	Mark Harding-Rolls (1988-1991)
Vince Fagnan (Lieutenant) (Long-term Visit 1990)	
Chris Rankin (1990-1992)	Wade Bostock (1991-1993)
Andrew Payne (1992-1994)	P. Barlow (1993-1995)
Robin Steward (1994-1997)	R.C. Gaussen (1995-1996)

ARTICLE 2401 - THE ROYAL WESTMINSTER REGIMENT (THE WESTIES)

1.   The Regiment's association with The Royal Westminster Regiment is not an official one. The relationship is largely unnoticed in this day and age; it is, however, noteworthy and deserves recognition.

2.   The Regiment's first encounter with the Westies took place in Camp Borden when units of the 1st Canadian Armoured Brigade concentrated for the first time in 1941. The association was the start of many groupings with each other, most being on the battlefield in the upcoming campaigns. The most famous but by no means the only action involving the units was the crossing of the Melfa River on 24 May 1943. In this action, Lieutenant Perkins and his small Reconnaissance Troop clung to a bridgehead until eventually reinforced by a company of the Westies, then under command of the Regiment. Such was the value of the position and the ferocity of the fighting that Lieutenant Perkins was awarded a Distinguished Service Order, Sergeant C.N. Macey received the Distinguished Conduct Medal and Trooper J.K. Funk a Military Medal. Major J.K. Mahony of the Westies was awarded the Victoria Cross for his part in the battle.

Figure 13 – Regimental Badge of The Westminster Regiment

3.   Actions such as the crossing of the Melfa River, which are reported in *A Record of Achievement* by Lieutenant-Colonel J.M. McAvity, created an exceptional bond between both units that could not be duplicated or shared with any other unit with whom they fought. In his book, Lieutenant-Colonel McAvity proposed a toast (also see Table 6 – Mess Dinner Toasts):

"As my last order in the capacity of Commanding Officer of the 2nd Canadian Armoured Regiment, I would say to all Strathconas: let not time nor space sever this chain; wherever you go, carry with you the memory of those days when the mere presence of the Westminsters meant so much to us, so that succeeding generations shall not forget; meet with them at every opportunity for in them you will find friends; when-ever you gather,

do as I ask you now to do – charge your glasses and drink a toast."[21]

4.   Time has, to some degree, eroded the relationship that was formed during the hardship of war and regrettably allowed to fade in the years of peace. The Westies were returned to the Militia order of battle in 1946 and were moved back to their garrison in New Westminster, British Columbia. The Westies were awarded the designation "Royal" in 1967.

ARTICLE 2402 – <u>OTHER AFFILIATIONS</u>

1.   During the Regiment's service in the Federal Republic of Germany in the period December 1965 to June 1970 as part of Canada's NATO brigade, Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) established two unofficial affiliations as part of the NATO twinning programme. The two units with which the Regiment enjoyed numerous professional and social exchanges were the 5th Belgian Lancers, then stationed in Ludenscheid and since removed from the order of battle, and the Bundeswehr's 204 Panzer Battalion from Hemer, also no longer in the order of battle.

2.   From time to time other unofficial affiliations with other serving units are established to foster esprit. One such affiliation was established in November 1989 between the Regiment and Her Majesty's Canadian Ship Kootenay, an Esquimalt-based Restigouche-Class destroyer, which has since been decommissioned. The Regiment and the Kootenay conducted several small unit exchanges.

3.   Another unofficial affiliation was with the 2nd Battalion of the 116th US Cavalry Brigade (National Guard) based in Camp Gowen Field in Boise, Idaho. This affiliation began with the introduction of the Canadian-American (CANAM) Cup tank gunnery competition in September 1997. The competition was a biannual event conducted at the troop level. A Squadron won the inaugural cup in 1997, and the US team won the second competition in 1999. The affiliation expanded to include joint training opportunities, including the conversion of C Squadron of the Regiment to the M1A1 tank in January and February of 1999. As well, C Squadron twice made the trip to Boise to make use of the SIMNET tactical simulators in both 1998 and 1999. Reciprocating, the 116th Brigade sent M1A1-equipped tank platoons and a tank company to join the Regiment for spring exercises, including Exercise TOTAL RAM 99 in Wainwright, Alberta.

4.   A more recent affiliation exists between Reconnaissance Squadron and Longknife Squadron of the 3rd Cavalry Regiment (nicknamed the 'Brave Rifles'). This relationship began in 2012 when a group of Strathconas went to the United States Reconnaissance Symposium in Fort Benning, Georgia, and met with Lieutenant Colonel Foley, the CO of the 3rd Cavalry Regiment at the time, who invited Reconnaissance Squadron for a Reciprocal Unit Exchange. This led to a team of Strathconas travelling to Fort Hood, Texas to complete the Spur Ride. This consists of a number of reconnaissance based challenges designed to push soldiers to their limits to prove their worth as a cavalry soldier. The tradition has carried on after horses were traded for armoured vehicles, and is still required to be completed by individuals before they are allowed to wear their spurs. The successful completion of the Spur Ride by the Strathcona team has since seen several visits of Strathconas to Fort Hood, and Longknife soldiers to participate in Exercise STEELE SABRE.

5.   The Polish 10th Armoured Cavalry Brigade has maintained its association with the Regiment since Lieutenant-General Skrzypczak, Commander of Polish Land Forces, visited Canada in August 2008 and a strong connection was forged with the Strathconas. Both Canadian and Polish soldiers have since made numerous visits. The Leopard 2 tanks and a common standard of excellence have helped to create a strong working relationship. The Polish Brigade has fielded the Leopard 2A4 for many years, providing the Regiment with expertise in both garrison and field exercise employment allowing for a seamless

---

[21] Lieutenant-Colonel J.M. McAvity, p.13.

integration of the new tank. The Strathconas are the sole unit to have combat experience with this tank and have provided insight and advice to the Poles. At the time this relationship was being cultivated, the Regiment was fortunate to have Polish speaking officers on strength who provided a Polish toast to our associated unit. The toast is "Ladies and Gentlemen, Chciałabym wznieść toast za Dziesiątą Brygadę Kawalerii Pancerney " (pronounced: "ke-chow bym v-z-n-yeska toast za ji-shown-ta Brigadeh Kavalery-y Panzer-knee"). This translates as "I wish to propose a toast to the 10th Armoured Cavalry Brigade. The response is, "the Polish Brigade"

CHAPTER 3 - REGIMENTAL FAMILY

SECTION 1 - BACKGROUND

The Regimental Family consists of many different elements which include Strathconas serving on regimental and extra-regimental employment, retired Strathconas, members of the Regimental Association, the Strathcona Society Troops (the Museum Troop, the Strathcona Mounted Troop, the Strathcona Pipes and Drums, and the Historical Vehicle Troop). The various Strathcona Cadet Corps have an arms-length affiliation. The Regimental Society oversees many of the activities of the extended Regimental Family. All the above elements of the Regimental Family are discussed in this Chapter.

SECTION 2 - REGIMENTAL SOCIETY

1.   The formation of the Regimental Society grew from the concerns of those serving and friends of the Regiment during the unification of the Canadian Forces in the early 1970s and the subsequent changes in policies relating to unification and centralization. A particular concern was the loss of control over funds and assets acquired over a long period of time through considerable effort by Strathconas and their friends. External policies were making it increasingly difficult to foster and maintain Strathcona style and spirit and to retain discretion in the conduct of Regimental affairs.

2.   The Regimental Society was, therefore, established on 15 November 1974 as a registered charity under the Societies Act of Alberta in order to oversee and guide the affairs of the extended Regiment.

ARTICLE 3201 - SOCIETY OBJECTIVES

1.   The original objectives of the Regimental Society are:

      a.   to further the traditions and heritage of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians);

      b.   to hold, preserve, and maintain artifacts, memorabilia and belongings of the Society;

      c.   to establish, maintain, and operate the museum of the Society and Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians);

      d.   to establish, maintain, and operate horse riding facilities; and

      e.   to collect and disseminate information of interest and relevance to members of the Society.[1]

2.   Today, the Society:

      a.   increasingly supports the soldiers and more particularly the soldiers' families when they are deployed on operations;

      b.   preserves the heritage of the Regiment through the ownership, protection, maintenance, display and enhancement of art and memorabilia, collections, histories and other artefacts. The Military Museum is one of the principal operations in this regard;

---

[1] These objectives are the original objectives of the Society as registered with the Province of Alberta on 15 November 1974. The objectives and constitution of the Society are currently under review by the Board of Directors.

     c.   sustains the Strathcona Mounted Troop, which represents the unit's cavalry roots to its soldiers and Canadian communities. Activities include the ownership of the horses, tack and equipment, supply of feed, farrier and veterinary services;

     d.   fosters improved links to the community through the Historical Vehicle Troop and the Pipes and Drums Band; and

     e.   promotes communications between Strathconas through its Newsletter, website, the Strathconian and through the personal contacts afforded by the Association Branches, reunions and other special events.

ARTICLE 3202 - OFFICERS OF THE SOCIETY

1.   The LdSH (RC) Regimental Society Bylaws of 197 have be amended to reflect the changes to the Society governance outlined below. The Board includes 17 Directors; 12 of whom each have one vote. The President (CO) will act as the tie-breaker should the need arise. Some of the Board members are representatives of their cohort and are expected to consult with their group on key issues. The Board composition is as follows:

     a.   Voting members:

         (1)   The Colonel of the Regiment (Chairman);
         (2)   A former Colonel of the Regiment representing all of the former Colonels of the Regiment;
         (3)   TheSenior Serving Strathcona (the senior serving Colonel or General);
         (4)   The Regimental Colonel (serving Colonel) representing all of the Colonels/Generals in the Regimental Executive Council;
         (5)   The Commanding Officer (President);
         (6)   A former Commanding Officer (former unit CO of LdSH, Armour School, CDTC, etc) representing Strathconas who were former COs;
         (7)   The Second-in-Command (1st Vice President);
         (8)   The RSM (2nd Vice President);
         (9)   Three former RSMs (serving or retired; at least two of the three would be former RSMs of LdSH) representing all of the serving and retired Strathcona CWOs and soldiers; and,
         (10)   The leader of the fundraising organization (to be formed by the President).

     b.   Non-voting members:

         (1)   The Society Secretary;
         (2)   The President of the Association; and,
         (3)   Three professionals (former military or civilian lawyer (1), accountant (1), and businessperson with a financial, banking, or investment background (1).

2.   The three professionals provide the Board with a depth of experience and diversification that the Board did not have previously. The decision to include them as Board members is to encourage a long-term commitment and investment in their positions.

3.   The following Directors listed below are elected for a term of three years and can be re-elected for multiple terms. Care will be taken to avoid large turnovers of Directors in the same year.

     a.   1 x former Colonel of the Regiment;

     b.   1 x former Commanding Officer;

     c.   3 x former Regimental Sergeant Majors; and,

     d.   3 x professionals.

4.   The Society Advisory Council (SAC) will be a new entity and will include all former COs, former RSMs, Regimental Secretaries, and Presidents of the Association. The SAC members can provide advice to the Board on an as desired basis and can be members of the various standing and special committees.

ARTICLE 3203 - <u>SOCIETY MEMBERSHIP</u>

1.   Membership in the Regimental Society includes all of those who have served with the Regiment or are currently serving. Also, provision is included for others to be included through honorary membership, which is discussed below. Membership of the Regimental Society comprises three types of members, namely regular, associate, and honorary members as follows:

     a.   <u>Regular Members</u>. Regular members of the Society include:

          (1)   The members of the Board of Directors;
          (2)   Incumbent Officers Commanding Squadrons;
          (3)   Incumbent Squadron Sergeants Major;
          (4)   President of the Regimental Association;
          (5)   Editor of the Newsletter; and
          (6)   Presidents or Vice-Presidents of the Mess Committees of the Officers' Mess, Warrant Officers' and Sergeants' Mess, and the Junior Ranks' Club if on the posted strength of the Regiment;
          (7)   Former Colonels of the Regiment
          (8)   Former Strathcona Commanding Officers of other units
          (9)   Serving and retired Strathcona Generals, Colonels, and Chief Warrant Officers
          (10)   Serving and former Society Secretaries

     b.   <u>Associate Members</u>. Associate members of the Society are:

          (1)   all officers and non-commissioned members on posted strength of the Regiment;
          (2)   extra-regimentally employed members of the Regiment;
          (3)   former members of the Regiment; and
          (4)   members of the Branches of the Regimental Association; and

     c.   <u>Honorary Members</u>. Honorary members are appointed when a majority of the regular members wish to acknowledge an individual for their contribution to the Regiment or the Regimental Society.

ARTICLE 3204 - <u>SOCIETY FUNDING</u>

      Full details for funding of the Regimental Society may be found in the published minutes of the

Annual General Meetings, which were usually held as part of annual Moreuil Wood celebrations but as of 2015, are held in June. In general, Society funds are necessary to publish and distribute the Newsletter and *The Strathconian*, operate the Regimental Museum, maintain Society property, supplement Regimental sports teams, and conduct special events and exercises (e.g. All Ranks' Dance, Children's Christmas Party, Regimental history books, Historical Vehicle Troop, etc). The Strathcona Mounted Troop is funded separately – see ARTICLE 3504 - <u>CEREMONIAL MOUNTED TROOP FOUNDATION</u>. In order to help achieve its objectives, the Regimental Society relies heavily on fund-raising and donations (e.g. general donations, donations in kind for the Newsletter and individual pay allotments to "Y006").

ARTICLE 3205 - <u>SOCIETY BY-LAWS</u>

   The by-laws of the Regimental Society are registered with the Province of Alberta in accordance with the Societies Act of Alberta and are maintained as a separate document by the Regimental Second in Command.

SECTION 3 - <u>REGIMENTAL ASSOCIATION</u>

ARTICLE 3300 - <u>ASSOCIATION COMPOSITION</u>

1. Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Regimental Association is a group constituted of:

  a. former and serving members of the Regiment;

  b. former members of the Canadian Cavalry, the Canadian Armoured Corps, or the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps; or

  c. any member of an associated unit who has been attached to or carried on the strength of the Regiment.

ARTICLE 3301 - <u>ASSOCIATION OBJECTIVES</u>

1. The objectives of the Regimental Association are:

  a. to perpetuate and foster the esprit de corps, comradeship and sense of service in accordance with the high traditions of the Regiment;

  b. to maintain a close liaison with the Regiment wherever it may be stationed;

  c. to make arrangements for caring for and rendering such assistance as the resources of the Association may permit on behalf of members who are in need of the same;

  d. to assist in a like manner the dependants of any deceased member;

  e. to promote and encourage the mutual enjoyment of good fellowship among all Strathconas, their families and friends by sponsoring annual or other celebrations commemorating regimental achievements and activities; and

  f. to cooperate with other branches of the Regimental Association so the above mentioned purposes and objectives may be attained.

ARTICLE 3302 - ASSOCIATION BRANCHES

1.   Association Branches are formed in various areas to help meet the objectives of the Association in those areas where members have chosen to work and retire. Some of these branches have established leadership and conduct regular meetings while others are less formal. Branches may or may not require their members to pay branch dues. However, the Association bylaws require an ordinary member of the Regimental Association to pay yearly dues.

2.   The Regimental Association HQ is currently located in Calgary and its executive oversees the Strathcona Association in accordance with the Association Constitution and Bylaws. The Association has six branches located in Calgary, Edmonton, Victoria, Kingston, Ottawa and Oromocto.

SECTION 4 - THE MILITARY MUSEUMS

Figure 15 - The Military Museums, Calgary, Alberta

ARTICLE 3400 - MUSEUM BACKGROUND

1.   Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Regimental Museum first came into being in the spring of 1950 when Warrant Officer Class I, R. (Dick) Cunniffe (the Regimental Sergeant Major between April 1951 and May 1953), found an old metal box which was labelled "Strathcona's Orderly Room Correspondence." The vintage of the box was 1900-1901. Strathcona's Horse had used it in the South African War.   The contents included an old North West Mounted Police uniform complete with pillbox hat, sabretache and binoculars dated around the 1880s.

2.   Dick Cunniffe, a dedicated soldier and Strathcona, had a very high regard for Regimental tradition and history, and was consequently instrumental in starting the Regimental Museum. His call for help to the Regiment and former serving Strathconas across the nation (through the pages of *The Strathconian*, contacts with other Regiments and advertisements in monthly newspapers and annual magazines) brought in artefacts and items of every type and description from Strathconas and veterans around the world.

3.   Over the years, as the museum began to flourish, the Regimental Museum found several homes and was bounced between very modest accommodations in Currie and Sarcee (later Harvey) Barracks. The Regimental Archives was incorporated into the museum in the late fifties. Today the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Regimental Museum has several thousand items and artifacts on display or stored in its collection for research and future use. The Archives holds books, records, documents, orders, albums and diaries dating from 1873 to the present.

4.   Since 1990, the Regimental Museum has been housed in The Military Museums (formerly called the Museum of the Regiment) in the former Sir Sam Steele School in Currie Barracks, Calgary. The Military Museums maintains seven galleries – one for each of the founding Regiments (LdSH(RC), PPCLI, KOCR, and Calgary Highlanders) plus one for each of the Royal Canadian Navy and the Royal Canadian Air Force. The Regimental Museum is one of the seven autonomous museums within the Military Museums and maintains one of the permanent galleries in the museum with the help of the University of Calgary. The Military Museums project was made possible through the generosity of the citizens and corporate members of Calgary as well as the City of Calgary and the Alberta Provincial and

Federal Governments and is supported in part by the Military Museums Foundation.

ARTICLE 3401 - <u>MUSEUM AUTHORITY</u>

The formation of the Regimental Museum was not officially authorized until 9 March 1964, at which time Alberta Area Order 1615-1 (A) provided authority for the museum, retroactive to 1 April 1963. The Museum was operated in accordance with Queen's Regulations (Army) 27.01 and Canadian Army Orders 143-8. The museum is currently established and operated as a Canadian Armed Forces-accredited museum.[2] The Regimental Society and Canadian Armed Forces grant funds to the Regimental Museum.

ARTICLE 3402 - <u>MUSEUM PURPOSE</u>

The purpose of the Regimental Museum is to collect, preserve, study, and exhibit those objects that will serve to illustrate the story of the Regiment in Canadian history, and more specifically, Canadian military history.

ARTICLE 3403 - <u>MUSEUM GOVERNANCE</u>

The Policies and Procedures Manual of the Regimental Museum details the Regimental Museum responsibilities to the Regimental Society. The manual is maintained by the Regiment under the authority of the Regimental Society and is held as a separate document by the Regimental Second in Command.

<div align="center">SECTION 5 - <u>STRATHCONA MOUNTED TROOP</u></div>

ARTICLE 3500 - <u>GENERAL</u>

1.   Originally formed in 1923 as a musical ride, the Mounted Troop performed routinely in Western Canada and the United States until it ceased to exist in 1939 when the Regiment became a mechanized armour regiment. At that time, the famous musical ride became the sole responsibility of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police. During this same early period, members of the Regiment frequently participated in a variety of equestrian competitions and activities throughout the West.

2.   The Ceremonial Mounted Troop, as the Troop was called, was reformed in 1974 under command of Lieutenant Cam Ross and MWO Bob Wallace in order to prepare for the Regiment's seventy-fifth and the City of Calgary's one-hundredth anniversaries held in 1975. In preparation for its first public display at Rodeo Royal, the Troop practised at the then new facilities at Spruce Meadows thus forging a vibrant partnership that has lasted over forty years. Lacking sustainment funding, the Troop was disbanded in early 1976 and the horses disposed by returning them to the original donors or through public sale.

3.   In the winter of 1977, money to support a troop was again raised by the Regiment, primarily through Mr. Alan Graham and the good graces of the generous citizens of Calgary. The Ceremonial Mounted Troop commenced training under Lieutenant Mark Hutchings and Warrant Officer George Gardiner early in the spring. The Troop made its first major appearance in Calgary as the escort to Prime Minister Pierre Trudeau in the Stampede Parade and Official Grandstand Opening Ceremonies in July.

---

[2] Canadian Forces Administrative Order 27-5 (Canadian Forces Museums).

Figure 16 – B Squadron Musical Ride circa 1925 (The Military Museum Archives)

Figure 17 – Ceremonial Mounted Troop Leader in 1987 (The Military Museums Archives)

4.   The Troop was renamed the Strathcona Mounted Troop in 1991. The Troop is maintained by the Regimental Society to perpetuate the Regiment's proud service as a cavalry unit and to emphasize the Regiment's heritage in Western Canada and its affiliation with the horse. As part of the Regiment's Celebration 2000 activities, the Troop retraced the original journey across Canada to Halifax where the Regiment embarked for South Africa in 1900. The Troop also mounted the Queen's Life Guard at Buckingham Palace in September 2000. This was the first time a unit other than the Household Cavalry or the King's Troop, Royal Horse Artillery, provided a mounted guard in London.

5.   The Troop acts as a recognizable symbol of the Regiment and conducts ceremonial duties, reinforces ties to the community, and maintains the cavalry culture, tradition and heritage. The Troop also provides a unique and challenging employment opportunity for soldiers of the Regiment.

ARTICLE 3501 – <u>MOUNTED TROOP DESCRIPTION</u>

1.   The Troop normally consists of a troop leader, troop sergeant and four sections of three to four horses each. Personnel and mounts permitting, a fourth section is added for better symmetry in the performance. The Troop's display includes a musical ride, a tent pegging display and, on occasion, a jumping display.

2.   Horses are selected for size, colour, markings and temperament. Preferred colours are chestnut or sorrel with a height range of 15.1 -

15.3 hands. A notable exception was Crossbell, who was skewbald in colour and stood 15.1 hands. The Blood Indians presented Crossbell to the Colonel-in-Chief of the Regiment, His Royal Highness The Prince of Wales, in 1977. The Troop took care of Crossbell on behalf of the Colonel-in-Chief. The Troop Riding Master rode Crossbell until 1991 when he was retired and returned to pasture with the Blood Indians.

Figure 18 - Endless Summer Weekends – Heritage Park – Summer 1983

3.   Riding tack for the Troop consisted of 1912 Universal- Pattern saddles (steel-arch) and military reversible Portsmouth bits mounted on a polo bridle. In 1995, the saddles were replaced with Stubins Revolutionary General Purpose saddles. Each horse is also equipped with a leather breastplate mounting the Regimental badge, a standard saddle blanket in Strathcona colours with Regimental appliqué and saddle rolls to carry the rider's slickers. In most aspects of the Troop performance the Troop Leader and Troop Sergeant carry 1912/1908-pattern cavalry sabres while troop riders are equipped with bamboo or ash cavalry lances.

4.   Horses manes are pulled evenly four to six inches to the right with a bridle path clipped into it. In addition, the Troop Leader's mount has a horsehair throatlatch tassel, which historically distinguished officers on the battlefield.

ARTICLE 3502 - <u>MOUNTED TROOP DRILL</u>

        Sword and Lance drill used by the troop are described in ANNEX K - <u>SWORD DRILL</u> and ANNEX L - <u>LANCE DRILL</u>. The programme and drill for the musical ride are held separately by the Troop.

ARTICLE 3503 - <u>MOUNTED TROOP AUTHORITY</u>

        The Canadian Armed Forces formally recognizes the Strathcona Mounted Troop as its only

"Authorized Alternate Voluntary Ceremonial Sub Unit."[3] The Troop is formed under the authority of the Commanding Officer and receives limited support from the Department of National Defence. This support allows the soldiers to participate in troop training activities and public performances and other commitments, ensures coverage for the soldiers in the event of injury and permits limited support in the form of finances and other resources, when available. In return, the Troop performs for Department of National Defence-sponsored activities from time to time. The Strathcona Mounted Troop helps to maintain good public relations and increases the visibility of the Canadian Forces.

ARTICLE 3504 - CEREMONIAL MOUNTED TROOP FOUNDATION

1.   Through the efforts of many dedicated Strathconas and the generosity of its close friends, the Regiment established the Ceremonial Mounted Troop Foundation on 26 November 1984. The Foundation was registered as a Charitable Association under the Companies Act of Alberta. The Foundation is operated as a separate entity from the Regimental Society. The Mounted Troop is funded in part through public grants, private donations and honorariums for performances. The Department of National Defence provides limited financial support. The annual interest from the Foundation investments helps to meet the Troop's yearly operating costs.

2.   The objective of the Ceremonial Mounted Troop Foundation is:

> "to act as a charity to benefit the community as a whole by preserving and supporting the operation of the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Ceremonial Mounted Troop and thereby making it available to Western Canadian communities and providing colour and fostering interest in and respect for our national heritage."[4]

Figure 19 – Mounted Troop Early 1970s (The Military Museums Archives)

---

[3] Canadian Forces Administrative Orders 61-17 (Alternate Voluntary Ceremonial Sub-Units).
[4] The Companies Act Memorandum of Association of LdSH(RC) Ceremonial Mounted troop Foundation, 22 November 1984.

ARTICLE 3505 – <u>STRATHCONA MOUNTED TROOP LEADERS AND RIDE MASTERS</u>

YEAR	TROOP LEADER	RIDE MASTER
1974	Lt. Cam Ross	MWO Bob Wallace
1975	Lt. Cam Ross	MWO Bob Wallace
1976	Lt. Greg Hug (until disbandment in Jul '76) ?	?
1977	Lt. Mark Hutchings	WO George Gardner
1978	Lt. Mark Hutchings	WO George Gardner
1979	Capt. Brian Cameron	WO Joe Egan
1980	Capt. Peter Hauenstein	WO George Gardner
1981	Capt. Craig Hilton	WO George Gardner
1982	Lt. Chuck Fournier	WO George Gardner
1983	Capt. Chuck Fournier / Capt. Tom Copplestone	Sgt Gary Lee
1984	Capt. Tom Copplestone	Sgt Gary Lee
1985	Capt. Rod Babiuk	MWO Bill Murray
1986	Lt. Don Cushman	MWO Bill Murray
1987	Lt. John Schneiderbanger	MWO Bill Murray
1988	Lt. John Sheldon	Sgt Lee Taylor
1989	Lt. Robert Stoney	Sgt Lee Taylor
1990	Capt. Robert Stoney	Sgt Lee Taylor
1991	Capt. James Clelland	Sgt Lee Taylor
1992	Capt. Gary Basson	Sgt Steve MacMillan
1993	Capt. Scott Lundy	Sgt Steve MacMillan
1994	Lt. Clayton Fifield	Sgt Chris Seefried
1995	Capt. Mike Rogers	Sgt Chris Seefried / Sgt Jim McKaig
1996	Capt. Mike Rogers / Lt. Jay Janzen	Sgt Jim McKaig
1997	Lt. Jay Janzen	Sgt Jim McKaig
1998	Lt. Tom Hughes	WO Chris Seefried
1999	Capt. Tom Hughes	WO Chris Seefried
2000	Capt. Tom Hughes	WO Chris Seefried
2001	Capt. Chris Hunt	WO Chris Seefried / Sgt Art Wiggins
2002	Capt. Ross Prokopy	Sgt Art Wiggins
2003	Lt. Faith Rhodes	Sgt Art Wiggins
2004	Lt. Clayton Gardner	Sgt Art Wiggins
2005	Lt. Jason Martin	Sgt. Art Wiggins
2006	Lt. M.A. McMurachy	WO Chris Seefried
2007	Capt. Darryn Gray	Sgt Wade Alexander
2008	Lt. Peter Beitz	Sgt Wade Alexander
2009	Capt. Liz England / Lt. Charles Prince	Sgt Wade Alexander / Sgt James Clarke
2010	Capt. Dan Gray	WO James Clarke
2011	Capt. Phillip Buckingham	WO James Clarke
2012	Capt. Corey McLean	WO James Clarke
2013	Capt. Corey McLean	Sgt Paul Kruhlak
2014	Capt. Brandon Frizzell	Sgt Paul Kruhlak
2015	Capt. Andrew Tardiff	Sgt Paul Kruhlak

<u>Note</u>: The 1974 SMT archival list, held in Edmonton, has the following names but no ranks. *Ray Sidebottom, R.W. Wagg, B. Decaux, George Gardner, Bill Murray, F. Sutter, G. McKay and ? Nichols.* The information gaps or conflicts (as indicated by the '?' marks) are being investigated by the Regimental Museum.

SECTION 6 - REGIMENTAL BAND

ARTICLE 3600 - HISTORY OF REGIMENTAL BANDS

1.   Musical bands have played an important part in the Regiment. Over the years, the Regiment has seen a variety of bands, both official and unofficial. Each band, or at times individual musicians, carved out special roles for themselves. The bands not only helped promote the spirit of the Regiment, but also became an important part of its unique history. In all cases, the success of the band was directly related to a high degree of personal commitment on the part of the director(s) and the individual soldiers who, for the most part, were volunteers.

Figure 20 – Regimental Band, Late 1960s (The Military Museums Archives)

2.   A full history of past Regimental bands would be a relatively large undertaking. Further research would be required to capture effective dates, physical complements and the important contributions that each of the Regimental bands has made over the years. The Regiment had an official band of approximately fifty to seventy professional musicians between 1956 and 1968. In the wake of the disbandment of the official band, a voluntary drum and bugle band was established under the direction of Warrant Officer A. (Mucker) Langan, CD in 1971. The primary duties of the volunteers were with Assault Troop. Both of these bands wore the Full Dress uniform; the later band did so until the uniforms were transferred to the Ceremonial Mounted Troop in 1974.

3.   The current band "The Pipes and Drums Band of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)" is largely a result of the efforts of Warrant Officer P.O. Peters, CD who, from 1980 acted as the unofficial Regimental piper at parades, mess dinners, weddings and funerals. In 1998, when the official Land Force Western Area band was unavailable, Warrant Office Peters quickly formed a pipe band of seven Strathconas to perform at a Regimental function. Since then, the Regiment and the Regimental Society have maintained the Pipes and Drums Band.

4.   The Pipes and Drums Band has since played across Canada and around the world in numerous events in support of Regimental and Canadian Armed Forces activities. Most notable were the events of

Celebration 2000 where band members found themselves everywhere between South Africa, Holland and Ottawa. In 2002, the Pipes and Drums Band played for the Queen's Diamond Jubilee Celebrations.

5.   In 2008, the operational tempo of the Regiment resulted in the decision to stand down the Pipes and Drums Band. It should be noted that pipers served on almost all the deployments and paid tribute to their fallen comrades during the ramp ceremonies at Kandahar Airfield. Under Pipe Major (Warrant Officer) Marvin MacNeill, the Pipes and Drums Band was reconstituted in 2011.

ARTICLE 3601 - <u>BAND PURPOSE</u>

The purpose of the Pipes and Drums Band is to promote the Regiment through musical and ceremonial performances and to provide a recognizable link to the community. The existence of the Band also affords volunteer soldiers a unique opportunity to participate and contribute in Regimental and extra-Regimental functions. The Regimental Band gives the Regimental Society and the Regiment the flexibility of ensuring a band presence at any Regimental function it so chooses, especially when an official Canadian Forces Band would otherwise be unavailable or ineligible to support the Regiment. The band also plays an important role in promoting the Regiment at public venues in much the same manner as the Strathcona Mounted Troop.

ARTICLE 3602 - <u>BAND DESCRIPTION</u>

1.   The Pipes and Drums Band is comprised mainly of Regimental soldiers but occasionally involves other volunteers. The band was initially established for a minimum of fourteen members: nine pipers, three side drummers, one base drummer and one drum major. The band maintains the appointments of Drum Major, Pipe Major, Drum Sergeant and Pipe Sergeant. A member's official rank is not worn on their band tunic: band members wear rank according to their particular appointment or band rank as assigned by the Drum or Pipe Major based on their playing ability and commitment to the Band.

Figure 21 – The Pipes and Drums Band, 1998

2.   The uniform chosen for the band was a departure from those of previous Regimental bands. The need to maintain a cavalry tradition was weighed against the cost and lack of availability of sufficient full dress uniforms for the band and the fact that the full dress uniforms were seen to be associated with the Strathcona Mounted Troop. The Regiment authorized a hybrid uniform more appropriate for a pipe band. The band uniform consists of a patrol jacket, kilts (trews were worn between 1998 and 2001) and a Glengarry. The debate surrounding the choice of tartan for the trouse, kilt and embellishments centred on the unsuitability of Lord Strathcona's tartan due to its colour. Instead, the MacKenzie tartan was chosen based on its looks, the fact that Sir Donald's family lineage contains the MacKenzie name and, more appropriately, the MacKenzie tartan is officially recognized as a military tartan.

3.   The patrol jacket for the band is as described in ARTICLE 9601 - <u>UNDRESS/PATROLS</u> except that bottom front of the jacket is cut away per highland tradition. The jacket is worn with appropriate Regimental devices and the black Regimental web belt (see CHAPTER 9 - <u>REGIMENTAL DRESS INSTRUCTIONS</u>). Rank and qualification badges are worn on the upper right arm and are embroidered in white and silver thread. A plain black Glengarry is worn with a swatch of McKenzie tartan behind the Regimental badge. The Glengarry is not removed on parade, in church or in a mess when the pipes are

playing. The sporran is similar to that of the Royal Tank Regiment Pipes and Drums: the sporran is of white horse hair with two black horsehair tassels (one for the Regiment and one for the Armoured Corps). A Scottish thistle is worn on the centre facing the sporran. In the case of the Base Drummer's sporran, the thistle is fallen in remembrance of fallen comrades. Hose flashes protruding from the fold represent the Regiment's Victoria Cross Winners: two scarlet flashes for lieutenants Harvey and Flowerdew and one myrtle green flash for Sergeant Richardson. A Skhin Dhu (black knife) is authorized for wear such that it protrudes from the top right side of the hose. White spats are worn over black oxford shoes.

ARTICLE 3603 - <u>BAND AUTHORITY</u>

The Pipes and Drums Band is operated under the authority of the Regimental Society and the Commanding Officer. The band is an unofficial (Canadian Armed Forces) voluntary band.

ARTICLE 3604 - <u>BAND FUNDING</u>

The Regimental Society funds the Pipes and Drums Band, who are also supported in part through private donations, personal commitment from the volunteer band members and honorariums for musical performances.

Table 2 – Pipe and Drums Band Appointments

Drum Majors	Pipe Majors
WO B. Talty 1999-2002	WO P. Peters 1998-2002
WO K. Hepburn 2002-2004	Cpl N. MacNeill 2002-2003
WO R. Stacey 2004-2005	MCpl C. Campbell 2003-2004
WO J. Hapgood 2005-2007	Sgt M. MacNeill 2004-2008
WO A. Batty 2007-2008	Disbanded 2008-2011
Disbanded due to Operational Commitment 2008-2011	WO M. MacNeill 2011-2013
Sgt P. Stoyko 2012-2013	WO C. Boland 2013-Present
Sgt C. Eady 2013-Present	

SECTION 7 - <u>HISTORICAL VEHICLE TROOP</u>

ARTICLE 3700 - <u>HISTORICAL VEHICLE TROOP BACKGROUND</u>

1.   In the decade leading up to Celebration 2000, the Regimental Society began to pursue a series of projects for the celebration. One of these projects, initiated by the Master Corporals of the Regiment and under the direction of Master Corporal Jim Rice, was to restore a Sherman tank. The tank was restored and used for parades and special events for Celebration 2000 activities along with other historical vehicles that the Regiment had acquired over the years.

2.   The work on the Sherman and other restored vehicles lead to the formation of the Historical Vehicle Troop, which was formed by volunteers mostly on Regimental strength. With funding and assistance from the Regimental Society and other supporters, the Vehicle Troop successfully restored and operated a number of historically significant vehicles. Thanks to the Vehicle Troop, a Stuart tank, a Sherman tank, a Centurion tank, four Ferret scout cars and a Lynx reconnaissance vehicle, all in working condition, were used during Celebration 2000. Most of these vehicles were crewed by retired Strathconas during the events during Reunion 2000. An ongoing project is the restoration of an Israeli Sherman to the original M4A4 variant, as was used by the Strathconas.

3.   The Vehicle Troop quickly obtained a world-class collection of historical vehicles and an excellent reputation, allowing them to act as a collection point of expertise and of vehicles, parts and equipment. Shortly after Celebration 2000, the Troop began to focus its efforts on providing and maintaining a fleet of fighting vehicles used by the Regiment and select support vehicles. A variety of restoration projects, however, have been undertaken as fund-raising ventures to facilitate the acquisition of vehicles within the Troop's mandate.

ARTICLE 3701 - <u>HISTORICAL VEHICLE TROOP PURPOSE</u>

        The purpose of the Historical Vehicle Troop is to promote the Regiment by preserving a working collection of regimentally significant historic vehicles and by providing a tangible connection to the community. The Historical Vehicle Troop provides soldiers of the Regiment with a unique opportunity to build on their crewman skills while restoring and maintaining historical vehicles and while participating in Regimental and community events. As with other elements of the Regimental Society, the Historical Vehicle Troop plays an important role in promoting the Regiment at public venues by connecting with civilians in the various communities. In select cases, the Troop provides certain charities the opportunity to fund-raise.

ARTICLE 3702 - <u>HISTORICAL VEHICLE TROOP AUTHORITY</u>

        The Historical Vehicle Troop is operated under the authority of the Regimental Society and the Commanding Officer. The Vehicle Troop does not have any official Canadian Forces status.

ARTICLE 3703 - <u>HISTORICAL VEHICLE TROOP FUNDING</u>

        The Regimental Society funds the Historical Vehicle Troop. They are largely supported through private donations, personal commitment from the volunteer troop members and honorariums for participation at special events.

Table 3 - Historical Vehicle Fleet

Vehicle	In Service	Photo
Sherman M4A2 E8	1943 – 1952 World War II and Korea	

REGIMENTAL MANUAL

Centurion Mark 3	1952 – 1979	 'Alberta'
Bedford 1500 WT 52	1940 – 1960s World War II	
¾ ton Dodge WC	1941 – 1945 World War II	
Ferret Scout Car (x4)	1954 – 1979 Egypt and Cyprus	 'Drumheller' 'Dagger'

		'Dictator' 'Dieppe'
Lynx AFV	1968 – 1996	
Cougar AVGP	1979 – 1999 Somalia, Bosnia and Herzegovina	
5 ton Wrecker	1982 – 2010	

M113	1983 – 1987	
Israeli Sherman	1956 - 1983	

SECTION 8 - AFFILIATED ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADET CORPS

ARTICLE 3800 - GENERAL

1.   "The Strathcona's Horse Cadet Squadron" (Number 258) was raised in Winnipeg and affiliated with the Regiment in 1910.[5] The Corps was not active during the war years. An attempt to reactivate the Corps in 1946 failed because of competition from The School Cadet Corps and the fact that A Squadron had been removed from its station in Winnipeg to join the Regiment in Calgary in 1936.

2.   A Calgary cadet corps, originally designated the Alberta Military Institute Cadet Corps, was formed on 22 March 1926.[6] Following the Second World War, the Corps was renamed the "The Alberta United Services Institute Squadron (Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians))" on 17 May 1947. In 1950, the Corps was incorporated into 2376 Calgary Garrison Cadet Corps as A Squadron of the Battalion where it remained until 1955. The affiliation to the Corps remained active as the Regiment continued to directly sponsor A Squadron during this time. Originally only fourteen strong, the strength of the Squadron rose to almost sixty cadets when it was reformed as 1292 Royal Canadian Army Cadet Corps (Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)) on 8 February 1955.

ARTICLE 3801 - AFFILIATED CADET CORPS

1.   Today the Regiment sponsors five corps of the Royal Canadian Army Cadets (also see ARTICLE 6403 - AFFILIATED ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADET CORPS FLAGS):

---

[5] Militia Order 288/1910.
[6] Militia Order 253/1927.

a.   1292 Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) located in Calgary, Alberta. The history of the Corps's affiliation is detailed in the article above. A Squadron currently sponsors the Calgary Corps;

b.   1813 Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) located in Cranbrook, British Columbia. The Corps was initially formed in 1941 and has been affiliated with various local units. The Regiment's affiliation with 1813 Army Cadet Corps relates to the raising of the original C Squadron of Strathcona's Horse in Cranbrook in 1900: Fort Steele, British Columbia, near Cranbrook, was the place of enrolment for First Troop, C Squadron in 1900.[7] The Cadet Corps became formally affiliated to the Regiment in 1983. Reconnaissance Squadron currently sponsors the Cranbrook Corps;

c.   2860 Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) located in Fort Simpson, Northwest Territories. The Fort Simpson Corps became affiliated with the Regiment in March 1990 as a result of B Squadron's visit to the Northwest Territories during the Papal Visit in 1987. B Squadron normally sponsors the Fort Simpson Corps;

d.   2716 Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) located in Mayerthorpe, Alberta. The Mayerthorpe Corps was initially formed in 1962 as 19th Alberta Dragoons. Besides 19th Alberta Dragoons, the Corps had also been sponsored by the Canadian Airborne Regiment. The Corps' members currently come from the Mayerthorpe, Whitecourt, Sangudo and Evansburg areas. The regimental affiliation with 2716 Army Cadet Corps was authorized in 1997 shortly after the Regiment's move to Edmonton. A Squadron exercised in the Mayerthorpe area in 1996 prior to deploying to Bosnia. B Squadron currently sponsors the Mayerthorpe Corps;

e.   3066 Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) located in Golden, British Columbia is a recent addition to the list of affiliated cadet corps. Originally a platoon of 2458 Rocky Mountain Rangers Cadet Corps of Revelstoke, British Columbia since 1 December 2000, the Corps was officially formed as a separate, affiliated corps on 1 September 2001. It is interesting to note that Third Troop, C Squadron of the original Strathcona's Horse was recruited from the Golden, Revelstoke and Vernon areas in 1900[8]. Reconnaissance Squadron sponsors this Cadet Corps;

f.   3070 Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) located in Evansburg, Alberta. In 2003, the Regiment began to sponsor the Evansburg Corps, which used to be a troop of Mayerthorpe Corps, and is affiliated with A Squadron; and

g.   2756 Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) located in Invermere, British Colombia, began as a satellite of 3066 RCACC until it grew large enough to become its own independent corps. Accordingly, Recce Squadron now maintains a sponsorship with this corps.

---

[7] Militia Order 26/1900.
[8] Ibid.

SECTION 9 - <u>REGIMENTAL HISTORICAL RECORDS</u>

ARTICLE 3900 - <u>GENERAL</u>

Numerous accounts of the Regiment's history, official and unofficial, exist as do a significant number of Regimental documents and records, most of which are maintained in the archives of the Regimental Museum. Furthermore, the Department of National Defence, specifically the Directorate of History and Heritage, maintains the Regiment's War Diaries and the Annual Unit Historical Reports.[9] Key sources of Regimental historical records that are available consist of both published and unpublished books, routine orders, videos, yearbooks and newsletters. Despite the many accounts of Regimental history, however, the periods involving Korea, NATO and United Nations missions are unfortunately not well documented. See ANNEX P - <u>BIBLIOGRAPHY</u> for useful published and unpublished accounts of Regimental history, Canadian Forces Publications, other references, videos and Internet links pertaining to the history of the Regiment.

ARTICLE 3901 - <u>THE STRATHCONIAN</u>

1.   *The Strathconian* is the Regiment's annual journal. Although two editions were produced in 1914, *The Strathconian* was not published again until 1927. Throughout the years, the frequency of publication has often changed and the format varied from a journal to that of a newspaper. In May 1959, the annual journal format was resumed and has since continued. Special editions have been produced from time to time to mark activities such as deployments on United Nations peacekeeping operations.

Figure 22 – Cover of *The Strathconian* Number 1, November 1914

2.   *The Strathconian* is published under the authority of the Commanding Officer and is funded by the Regimental Fund (Non-Public Fund), the Regimental Society and advertising revenue. *The Strathconian* is distributed to all members of the Regiment, Strathconas serving away from the Regiment, registered members of the Regimental Association, special friends of the Regiment and others on request.

ARTICLE 3902 - <u>THE NEWSLETTER</u>

The Newsletter is published semi-annually by the Regimental Society. The Newsletter reports on activities of the Association Branches and former serving Strathconas in addition to covering regimental activities. It is intended to compliment *The Strathconian.* The Newsletter was first published in 1986 due to the efforts of the late Major C.N. (Nic) Nicolay, MC, CD (Retired) who remained the Newsletter's Editor until 1999. The late Master Warrant Officer Allan (Mucker) Langan, CD (Retired), worked with

---

[9] Canadian Forces Administrative Order 71-7 (Unit Histories and Historical Records).

Major Nicolay as his Assistant Editor and, when Major Nicolay stepped down, he continued as the editor for many years. The success of the Newsletter was also attributable to the outstanding financial support of the Blockberger family. The objectives and policies of the Newsletter are at ANNEX G - REGIMENTAL NEWSLETTER. The current editors and co-editors are kept anonymous to ensure that articles are sent to the Regimental Secretary for tracking purposes.

ARTICLE 3903 – STRATHCONA ENEWS

1.   The Society maintains a database of e-mail addresses for currently serving and retired Strathconas for the purpose of issuing electronic announcements via ENews.

2.   The content of ENews announcements must generally fall under at least one of the following categories:

      a.   Notice of events hosted by the Regiment, Society, or any of the Associations;

      b.   Prestigious honours and awards received by serving or retired Strathconas. An example of this is the Meritorious Service Medal;

      c.   Senior appointments, such as Colonel of the Regiment, Senior Serving Strathcona, or Regimental Colonel;

      d.   Retirement announcements for those Strathconas who have attained the rank of Master Warrant Officer or higher as an NCO, or Major and higher as an officer;

      e.   Obituaries for ex-Strathconas; or

      f.   Any other announcement that the Society deems is appropriate.

3.   In order to submit an ENews announcement, the interested party should first ensure that the announcement falls within the above-mentioned guidelines. Subsequently, the draft E News announcement can be sent electronically to the Adjutant or the Commanding Officer's Secretary for review before it is transmitted. Obituaries will not be posted for the families of deceased Strathconas or for deceased Canadian Armed Forces members who have not served as Strathconas.

CHAPTER 4 - <u>HONOURS, AWARDS AND MEMORIALS</u>

SECTION 1 - <u>GENERAL</u>

This chapter discusses the Regiment's major honours, awards and memorials. In particular, Battle Honours, memorials, Freedom of the City, regimental commendations and awards, and gifts and presentations are discussed in the following sections.

SECTION 2 - <u>BATTLE HONOURS</u>

ARTICLE 4200 - <u>GENERAL</u>

1.   "The Canadian battle honour system draws on the rich heritage of the British Forces. British battle honours originated with the army, which granted its first honour in 1695 and subsequently recognized honours as early as 1513 to the Corps of Gentlemen-at-Arms."[1] Battle honours are awarded to units as a public commemoration of a battle or campaign. They give just recognition for outstanding achievements in battle.

2.   Battle honours were awarded to Canadian and British units in South Africa (with year dates as appropriate between 1899 and 1902). Later, army battle honours were awarded for:

      a.   First World War – theatres, groups of battles, battles and actions;

      b.   Second World War – theatres, battles, actions and engagements; and

      c.   Korea – for the overall campaign with year dates.

3.   To qualify for approved battle honours the Regiment must have been actively committed against enemy ground troops in the prescribed locality and time limits of the operation. Normally, Regimental Headquarters and at least half of the squadrons must have been present to qualify for the honour.[2]

ARTICLE 4201 - <u>REGIMENTAL BATTLE HONOURS</u>

1.   The Battle Honours awarded to Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) are:

      a.   *South Africa*: SOUTH AFRICA 1900-1901;[3]

      b.   *First World War*: FESTUBERT, 1915; SOMME, 1916, '18; Brazentin; Pozières; Flers-Courcelette; CAMBRAI, 1917, '18; ST. QUENTIN; AMIENS; HINDENBURG LINE; ST.   QUENTIN CANAL; BEAUREVOIR; PURSUIT TO MONS; FRANCE AND FLANDERS, 1915-18;[4]

      c.   *Second World War*: LIRI VALLEY; MELFA CROSSING; TORRICE CROSSROADS; GOTHIC LINE; POZZO ALTO RIDGE; CORIANO; LAMONE CROSSING; Misano Ridge; Casale; Naviglio Canal; Fosso Munio; ITALY, 1944-1945; IJSSELMEER;

---

[1] *Flags, Ensigns, Colours, Pennants and Honours for the Canadian Forces*, (Ottawa: Department of National Defence, 1980), Chapter 6, Section 1.

[2] Ibid. Chapter 6, Section

[3] General Order 230/1912, December 1912.

[4] General Order 88/1931, 1 July 1931.

NORTH-WEST EUROPE, 1945;[5] and

d.   *United Nations Operation – Korea*: KOREA, 1951-1953.[6]

e.   *South-West Asia* – AFGHANISTAN.

2.   The Battle Honours shown above in capital letters are emblazoned on the Guidon (see ARTICLE 5200 - THE REGIMENTAL GUIDON). As of March 2015, the Guidon will be paraded with the Afghanistan battle honour at a still to be determined future date.

SECTION 3 - <u>MEMORIALS</u>

ARTICLE 4300 - <u>GENERAL</u>

1.   Over the years the Regiment has both collected and donated an interesting array of memorials commemorating the Regiment's heroic acts or honouring the perseverance of individual Strathconas. Many of these memorials are dedicated to the memory of fallen Strathconas. Others, dedicated by different organizations, also include the Regiment or Strathconas due to the nature of the event or events they are commemorating. These memorials are of a variety of forms and can be found throughout Canada and around the world.

2.   Two special memorials maintained by the Regiment are the Memorial Gong and the Roll of Honour. These two memorials are described in the following articles. A detailed list of other memorials dedicated to the Regiment or its members can be found at ANNEX E - <u>MEMORIALS</u>.

ARTICLE 4301 - <u>THE MEMORIAL GONG</u>

1.   The Memorial Gong was unveiled at Calgary on Moreuil Wood Day 30 March 1930. The Memorial, which was purchased with funds subscribed by all ranks since the time of the First World War Armistice, consists of a bronze gong suspended by bronze chains from a mounting formed of four service lances. The heavy wooden base carries a bronze plate inscribed with the words "TO THE MEMORY OF THOSE MEMBERS OF THE REGIMENT WHO GAVE THEIR LIVES FOR KING AND EMPIRE DURING THE GREAT WAR 1914 – 18."

Figure 24 – The Memorial Gong on Parade

2.   The Gong was originally constructed so as to be transportable and always with Regimental Headquarters. The intention was to place the Gong at the entrance to the guardroom where it would be used to sound the hours throughout the day. Although this particular practice is no longer kept, if indeed ever instituted, the Gong is always present on Memorial Parades and is struck at the eleventh hour of the eleventh day of the eleventh month if the Regiment parades at that time.

3.   On the occasion of the annual parade to commemorate the Battle of Moreuil Wood, a vigil is mounted to guard the Memorial Gong. The vigil is synonymous with paying respect to those who have made the ultimate sacrifice in service to Canada. By combining a

---

[5] Canadian Army Order 33-1, Part "A" Supplement to Issue Number 611/1958, 1 September 1958.
[6] Canadian Army Order 33-1, Part "A" Supplement to Issue Number 634/1959, 9 February 1959.

vigil with the Memorial Gong on parade, it is a visual reminder to the Regiment of the sacrifices that Strathconas have made in previous conflicts across the globe.

4.   Majors Mike Tanguay, CD and John Russell, CD presented a replica of the Memorial Gong to the Officers' Mess in 1987. Chief Warrant Officer C.H. Shadbolt, CD also presented a replica of the Memorial Gong to the Warrant Officers' and Sergeants' Mess in 1990 on his departure as Regimental Sergeant Major. At dinners in the respective messes, the replica is placed in front of the individual responsible for toasting our Fallen Comrades.

5.   Miniatures of the Memorial Gong are given as gifts to outgoing Commanding Officers and Regimental Sergeants Major (See ARTICLE 4702 - <u>MINIATURE MEMORIAL GONG</u>). No other miniature gongs may be presented as gifts to individuals under any circumstances.

ARTICLE 4302 - <u>ROLL OF HONOUR</u>

1.   The Roll of Honour is a hand-scribed book detailing the names of all Strathconas who died in the service of their country. Strathconas who were serving on Regimental duty during Celebration 2000 presented the Roll of Honour as a gift to the Regiment with the wish that the book be displayed in a public place to perpetuate the memory of fallen Strathconas.

2.   The main page of the Roll of Honour reads:

> *"Recorded upon these pages are the names of those Officers, Non Commissioned Officers and Soldiers of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) who made the ultimate sacrifice for their Country and Sovereign. This book stands as a memorial to their valour, courage and perseverance."*

3.   The Roll of Honour was signed by Her Excellency the Right Honourable Adrienne Clarkson, C.C., C.M.M., C.D., Governor General of Canada on 17 May 2000. The book is displayed publicly in the main entrance of the Harvey Building in Edmonton. The Regimental Orderly Officer turns the pages of the Roll of Honour daily.

<div align="center">SECTION 4 - <u>FREEDOM OF THE CITY</u></div>

ARTICLE 4400 - <u>GENERAL</u>

1.   In ancient times, armies were not welcome within the walls of towns. This stemmed from an aversion by the people towards large standing armies, the war-like appearance of bodies of troops in the streets disturbing the civil repose, and the often-real threat of infringement on civil rights. In addition, at one time recruiting was conducted by a time-honoured method of "beating the drum," a press gang like procedure. Consequently, it became an honour and great distinction for a town to grant a particularly trusted military body the freedom for its armed parties to march through the streets with drums beating, colours flying and bayonets fixed.[7]

2.   The granting of the Freedom of the City is the highest honour a municipality can grant a regiment. Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) has been so honoured eight times by: the City of Calgary, Alberta in 1965 (and 1996); the City of Iserlohn, Federal Republic of Germany in 1970; the City

---

[7] E.C. Russell, *Customs and Traditions of the Canadian Armed Forces*, (Ottawa: Minister of Supply and Services Canada, 1980), pp. 91 – 94.

of Cranbrook, British Colombia in 1991; the City of Edmonton, Alberta on 20 May 2000; the City of Winnipeg, Manitoba 28 May 2000; the City of Fort Saskatchewan, Alberta 15 May 2004; the Town of Gibbons, Alberta 2 October 2010; and the City of St. Albert, Alberta 11 June 2011. The Town of Nunspeet, Holland also granted the Regiment an Accolade on 19 April 2000. The proclamations for these occasions are proudly displayed in Regimental Headquarters and are repeated here as a matter of pride.

ARTICLE 4401 - <u>CALGARY, ALBERTA; 1965, 1996</u>

1.   His Worship Grant MacEwan Mayor of the City of Calgary granted the Regiment, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel W.J. Brown, CD the Freedom of the City on 1 October 1965. The proclamation reads:

> *"Citizens of Calgary, recognizing the long and pleasant association of the City and the Regiment would now join with me in paying tribute to the distinguished officers and men of the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) familiarly known as the Strathcona's. The Calgary association goes back to the beginning of the century when Lord Strathcona gave assistance and his name to a new and able body of mounted men for service in the South African Theatre of War. Through the intervening years of war and years of peace Calgary has felt a special claim to the Strathcona's. Now the regiment departs for further service overseas. The people of my city would join with me in saying good fortune and 'will ye no come back again.'*

> *"Therefore, I, Grant MacEwan, Mayor, on behalf of the City and by the authority vested in me do hereby grant Lieutenant-Colonel W.J. Brown CD, Commanding Officer and through him to the officers and men of the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) the Freedom of the City of Calgary, whereby armed parties of the regiment will be allowed to march through the city with bayonets fixed, drums beating and colours flying."*

Figure 25 – Freedom of the City Parade, Calgary, May 1996 (The Military Museums Archives)

2.   This Freedom of the City was last exercised on 21 May 1996 on the Regiment's departure for Edmonton, Alberta. The proclamation of the event signed by His Worship Mayor Al Duerr, reads:

"The greatest honour Calgary can bestow upon a military unit is to is to grant the Freedom of the City. This historic tradition signifies great respect and trust by the municipality and the citizens of Calgary in the professionalism and the quality of its resident soldiers and officers. Military units who receive Freedom of the City are granted the right to parade within the city with drums beating banners flying and bayonets fixed the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) is exercising this honour to commemorate its final year in Calgary. Over the years its members have been productive and strong citizens and Calgarians will miss the contributions they have made to our community. However regardless of where the Strathconas travel they will always be welcome in Calgary.

"Whereas: The Freedom of the City was originally granted to the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) in 1965 by Mayor Grant MacEwan.
"Whereas: This is the fifth time the Regiment has exercised its Freedom of the City.
"Whereas: Todays event has special significance because it occurs in the year of the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) departure from Calgary.

"On behalf of the City Council and the citizens of Calgary I hereby give my permission to Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) to exercise Freedom of the City."

ARTICLE 4402 - ISERLOHN, GERMANY; 1970

On May 30, 1970 the Regiment, under command of Lieutenant-Colonel René Gutknecht, CD was granted the freedom of the city by Oberburgermeister Herr Einert of the City of Iserlohn. The proclamation states:

"We, the Oberburgermeister, and the Town Council of Iserlohn, in token of the cooperation and friendship which have existed between the members of the Regiment and our citizens, since the arrival of the Regiment in the town on the eleventh day of December, One Thousand Nine Hundred and Sixty Five.

"Do by these Presents confer upon you the Freedom of Entry into the Stadt of Iserlohn on ceremonial occasions with bayonets fixed, drums beating and colours flying in pursuance of a resolution passed by the Town Council on the twentysixth day of February, One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy.

"In Witness whereof we have caused the Common Seal of the Stadt to be hereunto affixed this thirtieth Day of May, One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy."

ARTICLE 4403 - CRANBROOK, BRITISH COLUMBIA; 1991

On 15 June 1991, the Regiment, under command of Lieutenant-Colonel Cam Ross, CD, was granted the freedom of the city by His Worship Michael Patterson Mayor of the City of Cranbrook. The proclamation states:

"To all men of Goodwill – Greetings – Be it known that, in a meeting assembled this Twenty-second day of April in the Year of our Lord One Thousand, Nine Hundred and Ninety-one. The Mayor and Aldermen of the Council – did –

"Resolve that pursuant to the Powers Vested in them by statue The Freedom of the City of Cranbrook be, and is, hereby conferred upon Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) in recognition of our forefathers contribution to the Regiment under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Samuel B. Steele In January of the year Nineteen

Hundred; forty-nine men who could ride, shoot and fight joined the Fort Steele Troop for service in the South African Boer War.

"And by this resolution I Michael Patterson, Mayor, on behalf of the City and by authority vested in me, do hereby grant Lieutenant-Colonel H.C. Ross and through him the officers and men of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) the Freedom of the City of Cranbrook where by armed parties of the Regiment will be allowed to march through the city with bayonets fixed, drums beating and colour flying."

ARTICLE 4404 - <u>EDMONTON, ALBERTA; 2000</u>

Under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Craig Hilton, CD the Regiment was granted the Freedom of City by the City of Edmonton on 20 May 2000. Freedom of the City was exercised with a mounted and dismounted parade in downtown Edmonton. The Freedom was granted during Reunion 2000. The proclamation given to the Regiment states:

"Garrisoned in Edmonton since 1996, Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) was raised, almost without exception, in the Province of Alberta since 1900.

"Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) has a rich and dynamic history, with service in both World Wars, Korea, NATO and numerous peacekeeping operations, including most recently Bosnia and Kosovo.

"In recognition of the 100th anniversary of the formation of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), the City of Edmonton would like to gratefully acknowledge the services rendered and duty bravely performed by this Regiment's past and current members.

"Therefore, on behalf of the citizens of Edmonton, I, Mayor Bill Smith and members of City Council, do hereby grant Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) the honour of Freedom of the City and the right to march through the streets of Edmonton with bayonets fixed, Guidon flying and drums beating."

ARTICLE 4405 - <u>WINNIPEG, MANITOBA; 2000</u>

The City of Winnipeg presented the Regiment the Freedom of the City on 28 May 2000. The Strathcona Mounted Troop exercised the Freedom while they were in Winnipeg as part of the Troop's Embarkation 2000 tour across Canada. The proclamation reads as follows:

"In recognition of the long association which has existed between the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) and the City of Winnipeg since the Regiment was formed in 1900 and in tribute to the members of the Regiment who have brought distinction to Canadian Arms and for the preservation of peace and security in our nation.

"On May 28th, 2000 the Commanding Officer did present himself and the members of the Regiment, on the occasion of its 100th anniversary, for inspection and to reaffirm the continuing ties between the Regiment and the citizens of Winnipeg.

"Therefore, I, Glen Murray, Mayor of the City of Winnipeg, in honour, do hereby reaffirm and permit the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) to exercise their traditional right of the 'Freedom of the City', and to march through the city with bayonets fixed, drums beating and colours flying.

"In witness whereof, I have hereunto set my hand and cause to be affixed the seal of the City of Winnipeg this 28th day of May, in the year two thousand"

ARTICLE 4406 - NUNSPEET, THE NETHERLANDS; 2000

Nunspeet was the last town to be liberated by the Regiment during the Second World War. On 19 April 1945, the Regiment was called upon by the Dutch Underground to flush out the remains of the occupation forces from the town of Nunspeet, the Netherlands. The Regiment placed a memorial in the town as part of Celebration 2000 (see ARTICLE E204 - NUNSPEET MEMORIAL CAIRN – NUNSPEET, THE NETHERLANDS). At the memorial ceremony on 19 April 2000, the Town of Nunspeet presented the Regiment with an Accolade commemorating their liberation fifty-five years earlier.

ARTICLE 4407 - FORT SASKATCHEWAN, ALBERTA; 2004

Under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Jamie Cade, CD, the Regiment was granted the Freedom of City by the City of Fort Saskatchewan on 15 May 2004. Freedom of the City was exercised with a Guard of Honour and parade of current and historical vehicles, followed by vehicle displays and a Strathcona Mounted Troop ride. The proclamation given to the Regiment states:

"Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) has established deep ties in the Province of Alberta and has earned a reputation for excellence in service and outstanding commitment to the people of Canada.

"Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) has a rich and dynamic history and has represented Canada with great distinction through service during the Boer War, both World Wars, Korea and peacekeeping operations throughout the world.

"In 2003, the City of Fort Saskatchewan became affiliated with Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) with the raising of the Regimental Flag at City Hall. This strong affiliation between our community and Regiment continues to be demonstrated by flying the Regimental Flag in its permanent home in Legacy Park.

"In recognition of this relationship with Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), the City of Fort Saskatchewan would like to gratefully acknowledge the services rendered and duty bravely performed by this Regiment's members.

"Therefore, on behalf of the citizens of Fort Saskatchewan, I, Mayor Ken Hodgins and members of City Council do hereby grant Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) the honour of Freedom of the City and the right to march through the streets of Fort Saskatchewan with 'Drums Beating, Bayonets Fixed and Colours Flying.'"

ARTICLE 4408 - GIBBONS, ALBERTA; 2010

The Town of Gibbons granted the Regiment Freedom of the Town on 2 October 2010. Freedom of the town was exercised with a full parade including the Strathcona Mounted Troop, Historical Vehicle Troop, current vehicles, and a Guard of Honour under parade

Figure 26 – Freedom of the City Parade, Gibbons, October 2010

commander Major John Cochrane. The proclamation reads:

"We the Mayor, Council and Citizens of the Town of Gibbons, In the County of Sturgeon, Province of Alberta, bestow the greatest honour Gibbons can upon a military unit, by granting the Freedom of the Town.

"This historic tradition signifies great respect and trust by the Municipality and the Citizens of Gibbons in the professionalism and quality of its Resident Soldiers and Officers.

"And thereby confer upon you the right, privilege, honour and distinction of marching all or any units, squadrons or detachments through the streets of the Town of Gibbons on all ceremonial occasions with Guidon flying, drums beating and bayonets fixed."

ARTICLE 4409 - <u>ST. ALBERT, ALBERTA; 2011</u>

Under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Trevor Cadieu, CD, the Regiment was granted the Freedom of City by the City of St. Albert on 11 June 2011. Freedom of the City was exercised with a Guard of Honour and parade of current and historical vehicles, followed by vehicle displays and a Strathcona Mounted Troop ride. The proclamation issued to the Regiment states:

"Whereas Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) has established deep ties in the Province of Alberta and has earned a reputation for excellence in service and outstanding commitment to the people of Canada, and;

"Whereas Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) has a rich and dynamic history and has represented Canada with great distinction through service during the Boer War, both World Wars, Korea and peacekeeping operations throughout the world, and;

"Whereas the City of St. Albert wishes to honour the regiment's heroic efforts in Afghanistan and show the appreciation for the many soldiers who contribute to the St. Albert community,

"Now therefore on behalf of all St. Albert residents, I, Nolan Crouse, Mayor of the City of St. Albert, do hereby grant Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) the honour of Freedom of the City and the right to march through the streets of St. Albert with "Drums Beating, Bayonets Fixed and Colours Flying".

ARTICLE 4410 – <u>STRATHCONA COUNTY, ALBERTA; 2013</u>

Under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Paul Peyton, MSM, CD the Regiment was granted Freedom of Strathcona County on 24 August 2013. Freedom of the County was exercised with a Guard of Honour and parade of current and historical vehicles, followed by vehicle displays and a Strathcona Mounted Troop ride. The proclamation given to the Regiment states:

"Whereas Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) has established a well-respected presence in Strathcona County in the Province of Alberta, and has earned a stellar reputation for excellence in service and outstanding commitment to the people of Alberta and Canada, and;

"Whereas Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) has a long and distinguished

history within the Province of Alberta, and has represented Canada with great pride and dedication through its military service by defending our great nation through many wars and conflicts, along with providing invaluable peacekeeping duties throughout the world, and;

"Whereas the citizens of Strathcona County wish to honour the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), known as the "Strathcona's" for its rich history, valiant bravery and ongoing peacekeeping efforts around the world in protecting and preserving our safety in the Province of Alberta, and Canada;

"Therefore I, Mayor Linda Osinchuk, do hereby grant Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) the honour and privilege of the freedom of the County, by presenting the key to the County, and the right to march through the streets of the hamlet of Sherwood Park with "Drums Beating, Banners Flying, and Bayonets Fixed".

<div align="center">SECTION 5 - <u>COMMENDATIONS AND RECOGNITIONS</u></div>

ARTICLE 4500 - <u>GENERAL</u>

Through the creation of several commendations and awards, the Regiment and Regimental Society have recently begun to formally recognize the impact that many individuals have had on the well-being of the Regiment and the Regimental Family. Recognition of this nature was not possible with the traditional individual and group awards and trophies. The following Regimental commendations and awards are presented to individuals who have helped or are continuing to help promote the values of the Regiment in a most significant or enduring way. The Nominations Committee (NC) of the Society's Board of Directors annually presents recommendations to the Board for commendations and awards. The NC is chaired by the Senior Serving Strathcona and normally includes the Regimental Colonel, the Society Secretary and the President of the Regimental Association.

ARTICLE 4501 - <u>THE COLONEL-IN-CHIEF'S COMMENDATION</u>

1.   The Colonel-in-Chief's Commendation is awarded to Strathconas who are recognized within the Regimental Family as having provided exceptional service and selfless dedication in the interests of the Regiment and whose longstanding conspicuous commitment and perseverance have provided great benefit to the Regiment and a lasting contribution to its objectives.

2.   His Royal Highness The Prince of Wales awards and signs the Commendation on the recommendation of the Colonel of the Regiment. The first award of this Commendation was made at the 2002 Moreuil Wood Parade. Recipients of the Colonel-in-Chief's Commendation are detailed at Table 2.

<div align="center">Table 5 – Colonel-in-Chief's Commendation Recipients</div>

2002 - Canon Robert Stuart Harvey Greene	2002 - Major (retired) Clarence Norman "Nic" Nicolay, MC, CD
2002 - Master Warrant Officer (retired) Alan "Mucker" Langan, CD	2003 - Colonel (retired) Desmond Deane-Freeman, CD
2005 - Master Warrant Officer (retired) Don Crossman, CD	2006 - Colonel (retired) Ian Barnes, CD
2010 - Warrant Officer (retired) Dave Cathcart, CD	2010 - Dr Geoff Jamieson
2011 - Honourary Colonel (retired) Stan Milner OC, AOE, MSM, CD, LL.D	2011 - Mr. Ron Southern CBE, CM, LL.D.,BSc, OC, CC
2011 - Mrs. Margaret Southern, CC, LVO, AOE	2011 - Warrant Officer (retired) Howie Owen, CD
2012 - Mr. Fred Balm	

ARTICLE 4502 – <u>COLONEL OF THE REGIMENT'S COMMENDATION</u>

1.   The Colonel of the Regiment's Commendation is awarded to Strathconas or friends of the Regiment who have made a significant, long-term contribution to the Regiment. Recipients may also have undertaken a specific act that has either made substantial impact on or brought great credit to the Regiment or the Society.

Table 6 – Colonel of the Regiment's Commendation Recipients

2006 - Warrant Officer (retired) Dave Cathcart, CD	2007 - Warrant Officer (Retired) Gary Lee, CD
2007 - Mr. Fred Balm	2007 - Lieutenant (retired) John Swanton
2008 - Major (retired) Bill Logan	2008 - Mr. and Mrs. Ron and Marg Southern
2008 - Major (retired) I.D. Mackay, CD	2010 - Colonel (retired) Greg Hug, CD
2011 - Captain (RSM) (retired) Dave Biener	2012 - Lieutenant Colonel (retired) John Stuckart, CD
2012 - Warrant Officer (retired) Albert Barker, CD	2012 - Warrant Officer (retired) Keith Welch, CD
2013 - Captain Chris Kitching	

ARTICLE 4503 - <u>PATRONS AND FRIENDS OF THE REGIMENT</u>

        The Regimental Society has formally honoured special patrons and friends of the Regiment for their significant contribution in helping to preserve the customs and traditions of the Regiment by bestowing upon them the title of Patron of the Regimental Society, Patron of the Ceremonial Mounted Troop Foundation or Friend of the The Military Museums. The Board of Directors of the Regimental Society approves all appointments of Patrons and Friends of the Regiment. To date the Regiment has been most pleased to honour the Patrons listed at Table 3. An up-to-date list of Friends of The Military Museums is displayed at the entrance to the Museum.

Table 7 – Patrons of the Regiment

Patrons of the Regimental Society	
Mr. Dick Blockberger	Major Roy Farran, DSO, MC, L of H, COG, LOM
Mr. Alan Graham	Master Warrant Officer Helen Kozicky, CD
Major-General William (Bill) Howard, CMM, CM, CD, QC[8]	
Patrons of the Ceremonial Mounted Troop Foundation	
Mr. Alfred Balm	Mr. Alan Graham
Master Warrant Officer Helen Kozicky, CD	

---

[8] Honorary Member.

ARTICLE 4504 - <u>COMMANDING OFFICER'S COIN</u>

1. In 2003, the Commanding Officer, Lieutenant-Colonel James Cade, CD, initiated a Commanding Officer's Coin. A record of the details for each presentation shall be maintained by the Adjutant and forwarded to the The Military Museums. The Commanding Officer's Coin is a means of putting in place a simple, yet noteworthy method of recognizing individuals within the Regiment who have performed exceptionally well. The purpose of the coin is to recognize achievements with ease and to fill holes left by established honours and awards. The Commanding Officer's Coin is only awarded with the approval of the Commanding Officer.

2. The original coins were pewter in colour and four centimetres in diameter. The reverse contains the Regimental name and the word "PERSEVERANCE" around the outside and the cross-lance logo with a background of enameled regimental colours. The obverse of the coin contains a regimental badge and with the words "PRESENTED BY THE COMMANDING OFFICER… FOR OUTSTANDING SERVICE" around the outside.

Figure 27 – The Commanding Officer's Coin

3. A new Commanding Officer's Coin was created in June of 2012, on exhaustion of the supply of the original design. The new coin is pewter and black in colour and four point five centimetres in diameter and features the original Regimental cap badge and mounted soldier on the front face and a Leopard 2A6M on the rear, effectively spanning the entire history of the Regiment to date. Each coin is serialized.

<center>SECTION 6 - <u>AWARDS AND TROPHIES</u></center>

  A quick look around the hall of squadron or Regimental lines or a read of past editions of *The Strathconian* will indicate that the Regiment has been presenting awards and trophies to individuals and groups for professional conduct, dedication or performance in sport since the very beginning. The nature of some of these awards and trophies may have changed somewhat over the years with certain trophies, for example, being resurrected and renamed to suit the current trend or sport. What has remained constant, however, is the fact that competition and recognition are important and integral parts of regimental life. Due to the number of awards and trophies that are currently presented by the Regiment, they are detailed separately at ANNEX F - AWARDS AND TROPHIES.

<center>SECTION 7 - <u>GIFTS AND PRESENTATIONS</u></center>

ARTICLE 4700 - <u>GENERAL</u>

1. The Regiment acknowledges the relinquishment of special appointments and honours distinguished service and contributions to the Regiment through a series of special awards and presentations. To ensure the significance of the award is maintained, it is prohibited to present the award to individuals or groups other than those noted as being the intended recipients.

2. When an award has been presented previously to an individual or group, the Commanding Officer or award committee may elect to substitute the presentation with another appropriate gift.

ARTICLE 4701 - <u>CEREMONIAL OFFICER STATUETTE</u>

  In 1982 Colonel Andre Gauthier, CD a well-known Canadian sculptor who was serving as an officer in the Canadian Forces Security Branch, was

Figure 28 – Ceremonial Officer Statuette

commissioned by the Regiment to sculpt a statuette of a Strathcona Officer in ceremonial dress. Presentation of the statuette is reserved for Colonels of the Regiment on relinquishing their appointment. Colonel Gauthier holds the mould for these statuettes in trust. Major-General J.C. Gardner, CD received the first of these statuettes on relinquishing the appointment on 11 November 1982. The Second in Command is responsible for maintaining the stock of statuettes.

ARTICLE 4702 - <u>MINIATURE MEMORIAL GONG</u>

Presentation of a miniature Regimental Memorial Gong (see ARTICLE 4301 - <u>THE MEMORIAL GONG</u>) is reserved for presentation to outgoing Commanding Officers and Regimental Sergeants Major. The Second in Command is responsible for maintaining the pattern and stocking this gift.

ARTICLE 4703 - <u>REGIMENTAL SHABRACK</u>

In 1977, Lieutenant-Colonel Jim Ellard, CD initiated a practice whereby outgoing Seconds in Command (if he has not received one as a squadron commander), Squadron Commanders and Squadron Sergeants Major are presented with a shabrack on departure. As a consequence, the shabrack is not sold in the Kit Shop. If the Second in Command has already received a shabrack as a squadron commander, then he is presented with a large embroidered regimental badge on a black banner. The Second in Command is responsible for maintaining the pattern and stocking these gifts.

Figure 29 – Replica of the Memorial Gong

Figure 30 – Regimental Shabrack

Figure 31 – Embroidered Regimental Badge on Banner

ARTICLE 4704 – <u>RETIREMENT CERTIFICATE OF SERVICE</u>

Members of the Regiment, regardless of their branch or trade, or Strathconas on extra-Regimental employment who retire after twenty years of service in the Canadian Armed Forces are presented with a Regimental Certificate of Service. The certificate is signed by the Colonel of the Regiment and the Commanding Officer and is normally presented by the Commanding Officer. The Second in Command is responsible for maintaining a stock of these certificates. Members who have served less than 20 years receive a certificate signed by the CO and RSM.

ARTICLE 4705 - REGIMENTAL BRANDING IRON

The Regimental Branding Iron, which was approved by the province of Alberta on 19 May 1983, consists of an iron with the Regimental Brand in the form of an "L" over a lazy "S" mounted on a wooden plaque[9]. A brass plate describing the circumstances of any presentation is mounted on the plaque. The branding iron is given on behalf of the Regiment to individuals to recognize their special effort benefiting the Regiment and to honour distinguished visitors. The branding iron is only awarded with the approval of the Commanding Officer.
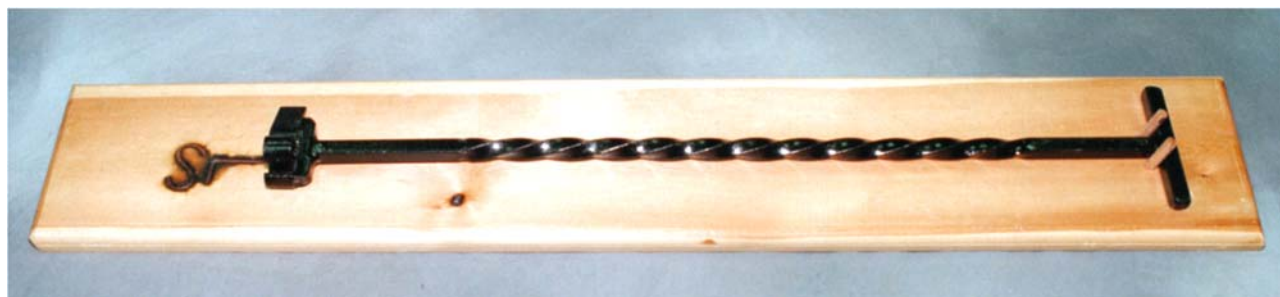
Figure 32 – Regimental Branding Iron

ARTICLE 4706 - REGIMENTAL PLAQUE

The Regimental Plaque (Figure 31) is awarded to individuals to commemorate a special occasion or to recognize a particular effort. The plaque will be awarded only with the concurrence of the Commanding Officer. The plaque consists of the regimental badge mounted on, or carved into, a wooden plaque with a metal plate describing the circumstances of the presentation.

Figure 33 – Regimental Plaque

ARTICLE 4707 – 105MM HESH CASING

The 105mm HESH Casing (Figure 32) given as an award is rooted in the tradition of a shell casing being awarded to a soldier on his or her gunnery course when earning the weapon qualification. The 105mm HESH Casing is awarded to individuals to mark a significant contribution to the Regiment. As the Leopard C2 is phased out, fewer of these casings will be available, making this award rare. Recipients have varied from large donors to the Regimental Society to soldiers who have displayed outstanding service while deployed at the Regiment. 105 mm HESH Casings have been turned into components of other gifts ranging from table legs to the basis for a small keg.

Figure 34 – 105mm HESH Casing

---

[9] Province of Alberta, Office of the Recorder of Brands, Alberta Agriculture, Stettler, Alberta. License Number H 18415. The brand was registered for life in 1996.

CHAPTER 5 - THE REGIMENTAL GUIDON AND COLOURS

SECTION 1 - GENERAL

1.   In the days when hand-to-hand battle was the rule rather than the exception, soldiers and their leaders carried public displays of their personal and group achievement in the form of heraldic bearings. These bearings were displayed on shields, jackets and banners. Shields and colourful jackets have gone but the banners remain in the form of guidons, standards and colours. Similarly, the practice of displaying unit achievements remains

2.   The term "guidon" is derived from the Old French word "guydhomme," which designated the banner carrier by the leader of horse. Eventually, the word shifted from the idea of the rank of the officer who bore the guidon into battle to the colour itself.

3.   In the British tradition, Household Cavalry and Dragoon Guards carry standards, which are very large almost square flags while dragoon and cavalry regiments carry a guidon with two broadly shaped points added to the open edge or fly. Normally, colours are not granted to the cavalry, as they are reserved for foot guards and infantry line regiments.[1] Canadian armoured regiments follow these practices.

4.   The Guidon not only symbolizes the Regiment's loyalty to the Crown and to Canada but also commemorates the deeds and sacrifices of those members of the Regiment who have gone before. The Guidon is a scared object and the most prized possession of the Regiment. Consequently, all members of the Regiment, and other servicemen alike, afford the Guidon the greatest respect. Individual officers and soldiers will always salute when passing or being passed by the Guidon. Formed bodies of troops shall also pay appropriate compliments.

Figure 33 – Guidon Party in 1938 (WO2s A.G. Jacobs, H.A. Payne and W. Atkinson) (Carrying the 1932 Guidon) (The Military Museums Archives)

SECTION 2 - THE REGIMENTAL GUIDON

ARTICLE 5200 - THE REGIMENTAL GUIDON

1.   The Regimental Guidon is made of crimson silk damask, embroidered and fringed with gold, mounted on a lance measuring seven feet four inches long. To the top left-hand corner the Guidon are attached ruffles and cords of crimson silk and gold cord mixed. The Guidon itself measures three feet five inches in length (to the ends of the swallowtails) and two feet three inches in depth exclusive of the fringe, which is about two inches in length. The upper and lower corners of the Guidon are rounded off at

---

[1] E.C. Russell, pp. 173 – 174.

twelve inches from the end. The point of the slit is two feet, seven inches from the lance and equidistant from the upper and lower edges. The width of the slit at the point of the swallowtail is 13 1/2 inches.[2]

2.   The central device consists of a portion of the regimental badge encircled by the Regiment's full title and surmounted by the crown. The whole is enclosed by a wreath of autumnal tinted maple leaves denoting more than nine battle honours, joined together at the bottom by a scroll bearing the regimental motto.

3.   In the upper left hand or first corner is the White Horse of Hanover signifying our cavalry origins. This device is repeated in the right hand or fourth quarter.

4.   The Regiment's abbreviated title is found in the second and third quarters.

Figure 34 – The Regimental Guidon

5.   The Guidon displays just some of the Battle Honours that the Regiment has won over the years since only twenty-two can be shown at one time.[3] The Battle Honours are listed in chronological order starting at the top, and alternating from left to right downwards in two columns.

6.   The Regiment received its first Battle Honour "South Africa 1900-1901" in 1912. In 1932, the Regiment received its first Guidon with the following Battle Honours inscribed:[4]

---

[2] Flags, Ensigns, Colours, Pennants and Honours for the Canadian Forces, Chapter 5, Annex A.

[3] Ibid. Chapter 6, Section 3. Limitations placed on the number of battle honours that may be displayed on Colours/Guidon are: prior to 1914 – no limit; First World War – maximum of ten; Second World War – maximum of ten; and Korea – maximum of two.

[4] The Battle Honours were authorized at General Order 230/1912, December 1912 (South Africa) and General Order 88/1931, 1

    a.   South Africa 1900-1901;

    b.   Festubert, 1915;

    c.   Somme, 1916, '18;

    d.   Cambrai, 1917, '18;

    e.   St. Quentin;

    f.   Amiens;

    g.   Hindenburg Line;

    h.   St. Quentin Canal;

    i.   Beaurevoir;

    j.   Pursuit to Mons; and

    k.   France and Flanders, 1915-18.

7.   The Battle Honours Brazentin, Pozières and Flers-Courcelette were omitted due to the limitations placed on the number of battle honours that could be displayed from the First World War.

8.   Second World War and Korean War Battle Honours were added to the second Guidon when it was presented in 1968. A full list of Battle Honours is at ARTICLE 4201 - REGIMENTAL BATTLE HONOURS.

Figure 35 – Guidon Presentation Parade, 17 September 1932, Mewata Armouries, Calgary, Alberta (The Military Museums Archives)

ARTICLE 5201 - GUIDON PRESENTATIONS

1.   The first Regimental Guidon was presented to the Regiment in Calgary by the Governor General of Canada, the Earl of Bessborough, on 17 September 1932. The first Guidon was deposited in Saint

Jul 1931 ('The Great War')

Stephen's Church, Calgary on 30 September 1970 having been replaced by a second Guidon bearing additional Battle Honours for the Second World War and Korea. The second Guidon was presented by Field Marshal Sir Richard Hull, KCB, DSO on 26 July 1968 in Iserlohn, Federal Republic of Germany.

2.   Her Honour, the Honourable Lois Hole, Lieutenant Governor of Alberta, presented the Regiment's third Guidon, which displays the same Battle Honours as the 1968-Guidon, at Steele Barracks in Edmonton on 18 May 2000.

3.   The first Guidon was returned from Saint Stephen's Church to Regimental lines on 25 October 1990 in a ceremony officiated by Donald Euan Palmer Howard, 4th Baron Strathcona and Mount Royal, the great, great grandson of Sir Donald Smith. The first Guidon is now held in The Military Museums. The second Guidon was laid up in the Alberta Legislature on 29 November 2000.

Figure 23 – Presentation of a new Guidon in Fort Beausejour, Iserlohn, Germany, 26 July 1968. The presentation was made by Field Marshal Sir Richard Hull, GCB, DSO who had just retired as the UK Chief of the Defense Staff and whose Regimental service had been in our Allied Regiment, the 17/21st Lancers. The Band of the 17/21st Lancers provided the music for the ceremony; note the Lancer motto on the drum. The Guidon Party included Escort to the Colour, Sgt Juli Levesque, Guidon Bearer, MWO Mike Pushkarenko, and 2nd Escort, Sgt Earl Smith. The Guidon is being adjusted by Capt Darrell Dean who became Colonel Commandant of the RCAC in May 2012.

ARTICLE 5202 - GUIDON BELT

In February 1998, Lieutenant-Colonel Tim Grant, CD and Chief Warrant Officer C.H. Hills, CD presented a Guidon Belt to the Regiment. The eight Battle Honours currently not displayed on the Guidon are now displayed on the front of the Guidon Belt. The belt is displayed with the Guidon in the Harvey Building and is worn by the Guidon Bearer when carrying the Guidon.

ARTICLE 5203 - SAFEKEEPING THE GUIDON

1.   The Guidon used to be displayed in the Officers' Mess until the Regiment's move to Edmonton in 1996 where, until November 2003, it was kept uncased in a secure display in the main foyer of the Harvey Building. The Guidon is now displayed in the Mariner Room (Officers' Rest Area) in Regimental lines. The Guidon is only removed from the case and displayed, on order of the Commanding Officer, under the following circumstances:

Figure 36 – Guidon Belt

      a.   In the Officers' Mess during Regimental functions;

      b.   Permanently in the Officers' Mess if a secure and appropriate display case is provided;

      c.   Behind the head table in the Warrant Officers' and Sergeants' Mess on the occasion of a mess dinner in that Mess;

      d.   At the location of an All Ranks' celebration. When so authorized, an escort to the Guidon will be detailed; or

e.   On such other occasions that the Commanding Officer authorizes.

<div align="center">SECTION 3 - <u>PARADING THE GUIDON</u></div>

ARTICLE 5300 - <u>OCCASIONS FOR PARADING THE GUIDON</u>

1.   The Guidon may be paraded only:

a.   as detailed in the Table of Honours and Salutes Accorded to Important Personages;[5]

b.   on Her Majesty, the Queen's birthday;

c.   at a funeral of a dignitary entitled to a one hundred-man guard of honour;

d.   on a unit ceremonial parade, at the discretion of the Commanding Officer; and

e.   on occasions as directed by National Defence Headquarters.

2.   The Guidon shall not be paired with any other flag or colour when paraded.

Figure 37 – The Strathcona Guidon Party (1996)

ARTICLE 5301 - <u>CARRYING THE GUIDON</u>

1.   Originally, cavalry guidons were carried by a "Coronet of Horse" (roughly equivalent to a second lieutenant but not commissioned by the sovereign) and guarded by sergeants. In due course, presumably with the abolition of the Coronet of Horse rank, the practice of carrying the Guidon evolved (circa. 1822) to the Regimental Quartermaster Sergeant or the senior sergeant major to free officers to remain forward to lead in battle.

2.   This too is no longer the case. The Regimental Quartermaster Sergeant is no longer a unit warrant officer, as is the case in the British Army where the tradition evolved. Today the Regimental Guidon, as with other Canadian armoured regiments, is carried by the Technical Quartermaster Sergeant and is guarded by two warrant officers. A sergeant serves as the Orderly.

ARTICLE 5302 - <u>THE GUIDON PARTY</u>

1.   The composition of the Guidon Party is as follows:

a.   <u>Guidon Bearer</u>. The Guidon Bearer is normally the senior crewman master warrant officer in the Regiment, when available. The Bearer will always be a crewman;

b.   <u>Guidon Escort</u>. Two crewman warrant officers form the escort; and

---

[5] Canadian Forces Administrative Order 61-8 (Military Honours and Gun Salutes), Annex A, Serials 1 to 11 inclusive. Also detailed at *The Honours, Flags and Heritage Structure of the Canadian Forces*, (Ottawa: Department of National Defence, 1999), Chapter 13.

       c.   Orderly. A crewman sergeant serves as the Guidon Party Orderly.

2.   The Guidon Party will wear ceremonial dress. The Bearer wears the Guidon
Belt and a sword, while the escorts wear swords and cross belts.

ARTICLE 5303 - GATHERING AND RETURNING THE GUIDON

1.   When gathering the Guidon from the display in the Harvey Building, the Guidon Bearer orders
the escorts to draw swords. At this time, he joins the upper portion of the pike containing the Guidon with
the lower portion. The Guidon is then cased. Once the Guidon is cased, the Guidon Party then proceeds to
the place of the ceremony, keeping the Guidon under guard at all times. Once in possession of the
Guidon, the Guidon Party does not stand at ease. In addition, since a soldier with sword drawn salutes by
coming to the carry (i.e. the carry is considered a salute), the escort does not execute any other salute at
any time. Return of the Guidon is conducted in the reverse manner.

2.   It is customary for the Guidon Party to be hosted by the Officers' Mess immediately after the
Guidon is returned to its display from parades and ceremonies for safekeeping. The President of the Mess
Committee is responsible to ensure that the Guidon Party is offered an appropriate libation shared with
the Commanding Officer and Regimental Sergeant Major.

SECTION 4 - THE KING'S COLOUR

ARTICLE 5400 - GENERAL

        Traditionally, cavalry regiments carry standards
or guidons and have done so since the time of William the
Conqueror. Normally, colours are not granted to the
cavalry, as they are reserved for infantry regiments.

ARTICLE 5401 - PRESENTATION OF THE KING'S
COLOUR

1.   On 15 February 1901, Strathcona's Horse, in the
presence of Lord Strathcona himself, was presented with
a King's Colour in a ceremony at Buckingham Palace on
the Regiment's return from South Africa. On presenting

Figure 38 – The King's Colours (Replica)

the Colour, His Majesty King Edward VII stated, "it was the intention of my late mother to present you
with this colour. I do so now and ask you to guard it in her name and mine."[6]

2.   It would seem that the Regiment was in a rare position. It is generally thought that the Regiment
could not have colours as it was only entitled to a guidon. Strathcona's Horse in South Africa, however,
was never considered by the British to be cavalry. The decision to grant a colour rather than a guidon was
based on the fact that Strathcona's Horse was "equipped and armed as Mounted Rifles."[7] The Regiment
was equipped with Lee-Enfield rifles (with sword bayonets) and Colt revolvers, not with swords or any
other type of cavalry weapon in use during those days. In South Africa, the Regiment was also employed
primarily as mounted scouts conducting reconnaissance and protection tasks, not as cavalry. Strathcona's
Horse, therefore, appropriately and proudly received the King's Colour, not a guidon.

---

[6] Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), *Strathcona's Horse: South Africa 1900 - 1901*, (Calgary: Bunker to Bunker
    Publishing, 2000), p. 117.
[7] Militia Order 26/1900, 1 February 1900.

ARTICLE 5402 - DESCRIPTION OF THE KING'S COLOUR

1. The King's Colour is a Union Jack mounted on a staff measuring 8 feet 8 inches. A gold crown and lion surmount the colour. The colour itself is 44 3/4 inches wide by 36 3/4 inches high. The flag material is fine silk while the edging is an alternating red and gold spun fringe.

2. The staff is inscribed "Presented by His Most Gracious Majesty The King Emperor to Lord Strathcona's Corps in recognition of services rendered to the Empire in SOUTH AFRICA 1900."

ARTICLE 5403 - SAFEKEEPING THE KING'S COLOUR

1. The King's Colour was turned over to Lord Strathcona's estate when Strathcona's Horse was disbanded in March 1901. It was not until 1928 that the King's Colour was returned to the Regiment, but "being an infantry colour it was not carried on parades."[8] The original is now held in the archives of The Military Museums. The King's Colour has deteriorated over the years to the extent that it can no longer be displayed.

2. A replica of the King's Colour was commissioned by the members of the Warrant Officers' and Sergeants' Mess and was presented to the Regiment by Chief Warrant Officer C.H. Shadbolt, CD during the Change of Command Parade on 27 June 1989. The replica was secured in the Warrant Officers' and Sergeants' Mess in Calgary until the move to Edmonton in 1996, where it is now kept in a display case at the entrance to Regimental Headquarters. The Regiment may parade the King's Colour from time to time, consistent with custom, provided that it is not paired with the Guidon during such occasions.

<p align="center">SECTION 5 - OTHER FLAGS AND BANNERS</p>

ARTICLE 5500 - GENERAL

1. In addition to the Guidon and King's Colour, the Regiment has received other flags and banners. The majority of these were presented during the euphoric period between the founding of the Regiment and its departure overseas for South Africa. Unfortunately, little of the history of these presentations has been recorded or maintained. More regrettably, many of these presentations have been lost over the years and are no longer available to the Regiment. These include an official Battle Flag, which was authorized on 11 January 1917 and an unofficial Regimental Banner presented in 1918 by Lady Strathcona for the March to the Rhine. Both of these flags have been lost.

2. Through the generosity of members and friends of the Regiment, steps are being taken to restore or replicate many of the flags and banners of past years.

ARTICLE 5501 - THE SUDBURY FLAG

1. In order to demonstrate their patriotism and loyalty in a tangible way, the citizens of Sudbury, Ontario presented the Regiment with a flag on 7 March 1900. The flag was supposed to be presented in Sudbury as the Regiment moved through but a manufacturer's delay resulted in it being presented on Ottawa, Ontario. Sudbury's Member of Parliament, Mr. J.B. Klock, addressed the Regiment in the presence of His Excellency the Governor General and Lady Minto, the Minister of Militia and Defence, Dr. F.W. Borden, Sir Charles Tupper Bart, GCMG, CB and several other prominent members of

---

[8] R. Cunniffe, *The Story of a Regiment*, (Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), 1995), p. 172.

Parliament before the flag was presented to the Regiment.

2.   The Sudbury Flag was hand-worked by the ladies of the town. It is a red flag of double silk with a bullion fringe, an ensign in the upper left corner, and "Strathcona's Horse" embroidered in gold lettering. The flag was presented on a polished oak staff with a spearhead made of nickel, on top of which was a gold cord with gold tassels. The flag measures 55 inches by 38 and 3/8th inches including the bullion fringe. The ensign in the upper left corner is 17 and 1/4 inches high and 26 and 1/2 inches wide.

3.   During the Change of Command Parade on 27 June 1989 Mr. George Milne presented a replica of the Sudbury Flag to the Regiment. Mr. Milne, an enthusiastic supporter of the Regiment, was instrumental in researching the history and guiding the

Figure 39 – The Sudbury Flag (Replica)

reproduction of the replica, which is on display in the Sarcee Room. The original Sudbury Flag is held in the archives of The Military Museums.

ARTICLE 5502 - <u>PRESENTATIONS BY OTHER CIVIC GROUPS</u>

Two other flags were presented to the Regiment while en route from Ottawa to Halifax to sail to the South African War. The citizens of Campbellton, New Brunswick presented one while the other was presented in Moncton, New Brunswick. The details of these flags are not available and their whereabouts are unknown.

ARTICLE 5503 - <u>SILK GUIDONS</u>

1.   During the same period that the unit received a number of flags and banners from various cities, it also received four silk guidons or pennants from Mrs. Robert Borden, the wife of the Minister of Militia and Defence, on behalf of the ladies of the Civil Service. The guidons were present at a mounted parade in front of the Parliament Buildings in Ottawa on 8 March 1900. The four guidons, one for the Commanding Officer and one each for A, B and C Squadrons have since been lost or stolen.

2.   The silk guidons were made of red silk with a broad band of white silk down the centre, across which was inscribed the name "Strathcona's Horse" worked in red silk. Lord Strathcona's crest is in the left corner. The crest is oval-shaped and Lord Strathcona's motto "Perseverance" is worked in crimson letters upon the white ground of the garter. The garter is outlined in gold and has a gold buckle. The crest is surmounted by a baron's cornet. In the middle of the garter is a maple leaf embossed in shades of green. On the maple leaf is a beaver, in shades of brown. The designating letters "A.", "B.", "C." or "C.O.", as appropriate, are in the lower corner of each guidon. Each guidon was attached to a lance by four crimson ribbons.

3.   In 1929, the Regiment requested the Royal Canadian Mounted Police (RCMP) to conduct an investigation into the loss of the silk guidons under which it first fought but they were not found. In later years, however, one of the guidons was found in the RCMP Commissioner's office. Presumably because the continued existence of the Regiment was not known, the guidon was sent to the RCMP Centennial Museum in Regina, Saskatchewan. In 1989, the Regiment requested that the "A" Squadron guidon be returned to the Regiment. This request was refused.
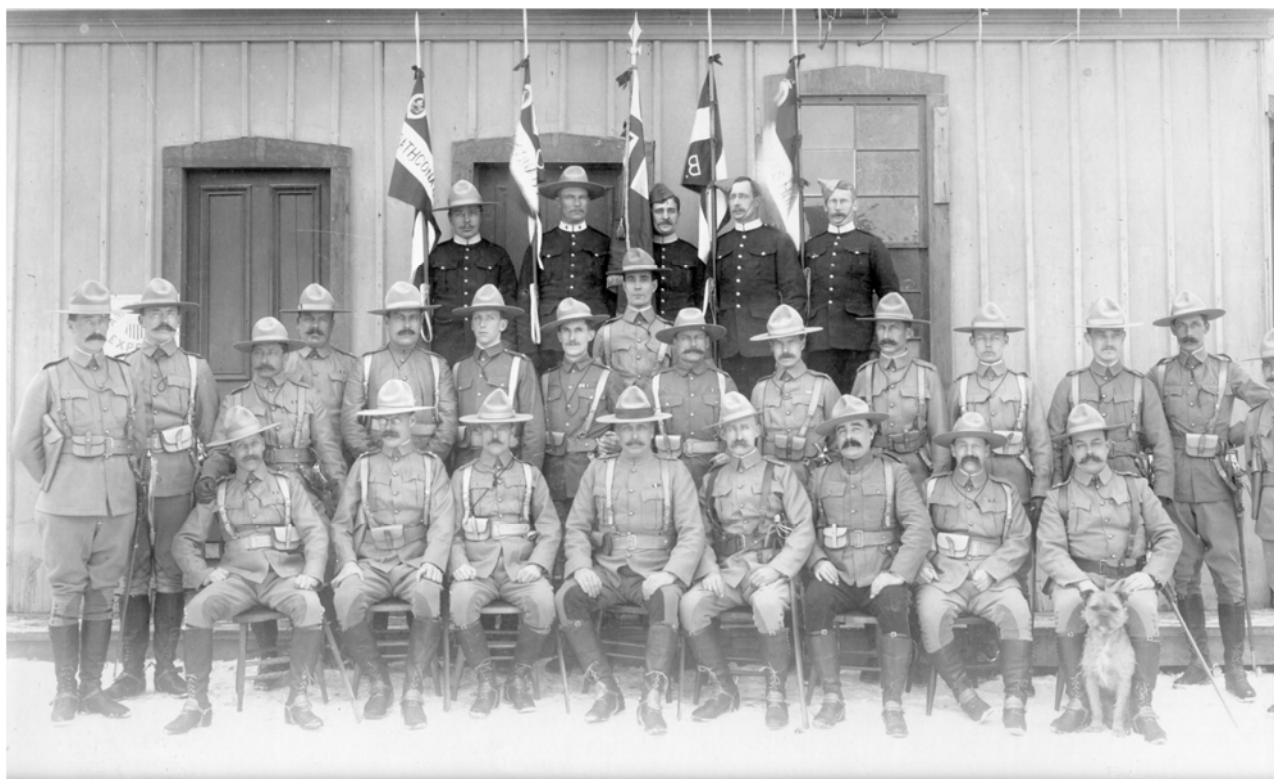
Figure 40 – Officers of Strathcona's Horse Prior to South Africa, Ottawa, 1900 (The Military Museum Archives)

ARTICLE 5504 - <u>THE ROYAL CANADIAN MOUNTED RIFLES BANNER</u>

1.   On 24 September 1904, The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles were presented with a Royal Banner granted to all Canadian regiments that served in South Africa. His Excellency, the Earl of Minto, Governor General of Canada presented the Regimental Banner in Winnipeg on behalf of the British Government.[9] Royal banners are presented on rare occasions as "special marks of Royal favour." They are not consecrated Colours. The design of Royal Banners varies by circumstance and they are not replaced when worn.[10]

2.   The use of the name Canadian Mounted Rifles (CMR) during the period of the South African War can be very confusing. The second contingent that Canada sent to South Africa was comprised of two new units raised specially for the occasion: 1 CMR who were later referred to as The Royal Canadian Dragoons and 2 CMR who were, as a result of the above, simply referred to as the CMR. The fourth Canadian contingent was a unit of mounted rifles known as the 2nd Regiment CMR.[11] To complicate matters both the CMR in 1900 and the 2nd Regiment CMR in 1901/02 were commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel T.D.B. Evans, DSO, who also commanded the Permanent Force unit, A Squadron, Canadian Mounted Rifles later re-designated The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles, in Winnipeg between 1901 and 1907.

Figure 41 – The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles Banner (The Military Museums Archives)

---

[9] Ibid. p. 90.

[10] The Honours, Flags and Heritage Structure of the Canadian Forces, p. 4-7-1.

[11] John Marteinson and Micheal R. McNorgan, *The Royal Canadian Armoured Corps: An Illustrated History*, (Toronto: Robin Brass Studio, Inc., 2000), pp. 23 – 28.

3.   It is believed that when the Royal Banners were being presented in 1904, The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles were chosen to best represent the CMR units who fought in South Africa. Like Strathcona's Horse, all of the overseas CMR units had been disbanded upon their return from the war. Many of the individual officers and soldiers who fought with the CMR units in South Africa, however, ended up in A Squadron, Canadian Mounted Rifles when the unit was formed in 1901. It could be argued that the presentation of the Banner allows the Regiment to perpetuate names of the CMR and 2nd CMR. While the Regiment does not officially perpetuate these two units, the fact that the Banner rightfully belongs to the Regiment does add to its unique heritage.

4.   According to official reports of 1903, Strathcona's Horse, Canada's third contingent the South African War was to receive a Royal Banner in addition to The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles (and The Royal Canadian Dragoons, The Royal Canadian Field Artillery, The Royal Canadian Garrison Artillery and The Royal Canadian Regiment).[12] It is unclear, however, whether a banner was ever produced for Strathcona's Horse and to whom it might have been presented, as the Regiment had been disbanded upon return from South Africa in 1901 and did not remerge until 1909 when The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles were so named.

5.   The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles Banner has an ensign in the upper-left corner. The Banner contains the names of key battles (not battle honours) of the 1st and 2nd Canadian Mounted Rifles (i.e. two of the Canadian units raised for special service in South Africa in 1900 and 1901 respectively).

6.   For many years The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles Banner was displayed in the Officers' Mess of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians). The Banner is now held in The Military Museums Archives, but it has deteriorated to a point where it can no longer be publicly displayed

---

[12] Department of Militia and Defence, *Report for the Year ended December 31, 1903*, Sessional Paper 35, (Ottawa: S.E. Dawson, 1904), p. 42. The Report referred to the Banners as "War Honours of Canadian Regiments" and called them "Colours especially designed for the purpose… in recognition of their valuable services to the Empire."

CHAPTER 6 - REGIMENTAL BADGES AND DEVICES

SECTION 1 - THE REGIMENTAL BADGE

ARTICLE 6100 - GENERAL

1.   Although the Regiment's formation dates back to 1900, the current-day badge did not come into existence until 1912. The Regimental badge is, however, a variant of earlier badges. The Regimental badge is the only official badge of the Regiment.

2.   The Regiment has the distinction of wearing the coat of arms of an individual as part of our Regimental badge. With the exception of the crown, the Regimental name and title and its floral border, the badge is the personal crest and coat of arms Sir Donald A. Smith, Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal, which he had adopted from those of the North West and Hudson Bay Companies.[1]

ARTICLE 6101 – DESCRIPTION

1.   The official description of the current badge is as follows:

> "Lord Strathcona's Coat of Arms (without supporters), being a shield surmounted by a maple tree inclined to the left, and half cut through by a beaver working at the base; in the chief a demi lion rampant; in the centre a railroad spike and hammer crossed; in the base a canoe bearing flag inscribed "N.W.", and containing four men; the whole surrounded by a ribband which is encircled by a wreath of [three] Roses, [four] Thistles, [six] Shamrocks, and [fourteen] maple leaves, and inscribed "LORD STRATHCONA'S HORSE (ROYAL CANADIANS)," surmounted by a scroll bearing the motto "PERSEVERANCE," and the whole surmounted by a Tudor Crown"[2]

Figure 42 – The Regimental Badge[3]

2.   The beaver on the badge represents the industry of Canada, Lord Strathcona's adopted country. It is interesting to note that some have suggested that the leaning maple tree, unlike the straight tree on the original badge, marked the passing of Lord Strathcona in 1914. This change, however, was incorporated in 1912; two years before the death of Lord Strathcona, presumably to more easily depict the

---

[1] The North West Company was incorporated into the Hudson's Bay Company in 1821. The North West Company badge is notable in that it has a banner with the word "PERSEVERANCE" with a maple tree (straight), canoe and a beaver working at the base of the tree underneath the banner. The letters "NWC" are written in script below the canoe.

[2] General Order 2/1912, January 1912.

[3] The Regimental Badge shown here is a copy of the most recent official photo authorized by Director of Ceremonial on behalf of Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II in 1982.

perseverance of the beaver. The demi lion rampant is the Red Lion of Scotland, Lord Strathcona's native land. The railroad spike and hammer represent his connection with the construction of the Canadian Pacific Railway and records the fact that he drove the last spike signifying the completion of this cross-country railroad on 7 November 1885. The canoe bearing the flag with "NW" on it shows his connection with the development of the northwest and the North West Company. The wreath shows Canada's link with the British Isles. The motto is that of Lord Strathcona. The crown surmounting the badge signifies that the Regiment is a "Royal" regiment, an honour granted the Regiment by the sovereign in 1903.[4]

3.   A Tudor Crown (commonly referred to as a "King's" Crown) originally surmounted the badge until 1952 when the crown was changed to an Edwardian ("Queen's") Crown after the coronation of Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II in 1952. The crown on the regimental badge would be changed to that of the reigning sovereign. For interest's sake, the Regimental badge of Strathcona's Horse from 1900 – 1901, shown in Figure 40, is surmounted by a baron's cornet.

ARTICLE 6102 - <u>DUPLICATION</u>

In order to protect the image of the Regiment and ensure the quality of production of items, the Regimental badge will not be duplicated, displayed or used without the express consent of the Commanding Officer and then only in support of a Regimental activity.[5]

Figure 43 – Regimental Badge of Strathcona's Horse (1900 – 1901)

ARTICLE 6103 - <u>THE STRATHCONA BROOCH</u>

1.   In the late fall of 1914, an unknown donor delivered a brooch in the design of the Regimental badge to Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) who were in England. The brooch is made of 15-carat gold. It is interesting to note that 15-carat gold was only used between 1880 and 1918. Heming & Company Limited of London, England made the Strathcona Brooch in 1914.

2.   The donor stipulated the brooch be presented to the wife of the most recently married junior subaltern. After the brooch was presented, it was forgotten in the passage of time. In 1940, the daughter of the subaltern who had received the brooch in 1914 sent it to the Commanding Officer, Lieutenant-Colonel F.M.W. Harvey, VC, MC, C de G. The name of the original recipient and the daughter are not known. It is known, however, that they had asked the tradition to continue and the brooch again was given to the wife of the most recently married junior subaltern. This was done and again the history and circumstance of the brooch were overlooked.

3.   Colonel Des Deane-Freeman, CD being aware of the history of the brooch, took it upon himself to recover it from the family who received it in 1940. With the full agreement of the members of the family, they returned the brooch to the Regiment on 16 July 1987. Lieutenant-General René Gutknecht, CMM, OstJ, CD, Colonel of the Regiment, received the brooch on behalf of the Regiment and, recognizing it as an heirloom, assured all concerned it would be treated as such.

Figure 44 – The Strathcona Brooch

4.   Today the wife of the Commanding Officer wears the brooch at any event she so chooses. The brooch is passed to the wife of the next

---

[4] General Order 153/1903, October 1903.

[5] The reproduction and use of the badge, including restrictions, is governed by Canadian Forces Administrative Order 62-4 (Canadian Forces Badges).

Commanding Officer following change of command parade.

5.   The gold Strathcona Brooch shall not be replicated. However, many similar styles of silver and brass brooches, with or without decorative studs, have been produced in the past. It is acceptable that these brooches be reproduced provided the design and quality of brooch are approved by the Second in Command. Anyone who wishes to wear a regimental brooch may do so.

<div align="center">SECTION 2 - <u>THE REGIMENTAL LOGO</u></div>

ARTICLE 6200 - <u>GENERAL</u>

        In addition to the regimental badge, Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) uses a regimental logo to represent the many aspects of the Regiment. The current logo was first used in 1984 when it was designed for the Ceremonial Mounted Troop trailer as a recognizable symbol for the Mounted Troop. Over the years the Regiment and the Regimental Society have adopted the use of the Regimental logo as a common symbol of the Regiment because of its attractiveness and simplicity. The Regimental logo remains "an unofficial, non-heraldic, identification mark"[6] which may be used to represent the many activities of the Regimental Family, the Regimental Society and the Regiment. The Regimental logo shall not replace the Regimental badge when officially representing the Regiment.

Figure 45 – The Regimental Logo

ARTICLE 6201 - <u>DESCRIPTION</u>

        The regimental logo is Lord Strathcona's coat of arms, as described in SECTION 1 - <u>THE REGIMENTAL BADGE</u>, surmounted by an Edwardian Crown both of which are superimposed over two crossed lances. A banner with the words "STRATHCONA'S" is mounted below the shield. As with the regimental badge, the crown would also be changed to that of the reigning sovereign.

ARTICLE 6202 - <u>DUPLICATION</u>

        As with the Regimental badge, the Regimental logo cannot be duplicated, displayed or used as a device on any item without the express permission of the Commanding Officer and then only in support of a Regimental activity.

<div align="center">SECTION 3 - <u>REGIMENTAL FACINGS AND COLOURS</u></div>

ARTICLE 6300 - <u>GENERAL</u>

1.   The origin of the regimental facings and colours is not well documented. "Green" as one of the Regimental colours can be traced back to the colour of Regimental facings of A Squadron, Canadian Mounted Rifles as early as 1903.[7] It was, however, not until 1929 that the Regimental colour was formally specified as "myrtle green." The origins of the original colours of A Squadron, Canadian Mounted Rifles as well as the reasons for the eventual change to myrtle green are not clear.

2.   Over the years, several theories of the origin of the Regimental colour have been investigated.

---

[6] *The Honours, Flags and Heritage Structure of the Canadian Forces*, p. 6-1.
[7] General Order 140/1903, September 1903, authorized officers of A Squadron Canadian Mounted Rifles to wear green facings.
     General Order 20/1904, 1 February 1904, authorized green facings for all ranks.

One theory has inconclusively suggested that the Regiment adopted the colours of the 5th (Princess Charlotte of Wales's) Dragoon Guards.[8] This theory states that evidence was found in a letter from the then Honorary Colonel, Lieutenant-General MacDonnell, in writing to the Commanding Officer commenting on the proposal to ally with one of three British regiments in the early 1920s. He stated that he favoured 5th Dragoon Guards because "of the similarity of uniform." While it is true that uniforms of 5th Dragoon Guard were scarlet with "green" facings and gold lace, this letter has been incorrectly construed as proof that the Regiment chose the colours of 5th Dragoon Guards. While it is conceivable that A Squadron, Canadian Mounted Rifles chose "green" facings in 1903 because of 5th Dragoon Guards, there are no records to indicate that the Regiment even fought alongside them in any campaign or was otherwise associated with them. Likewise, there is no evidence to support another theory that the "green" facings were chosen because of any association Strathcona's Horse might have had to a particular colour while servicing in South Africa.

3.   Once originally chosen in 1903, the "green" facings remained constant until they were detailed as being "myrtle green" in 1929. Even though the Regiment was designated "The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles" on 1 October 1903, the green facings authorized one month prior were retained in spite of the fact that "blue" facings were normally linked to units who were granted the title "Royal."[9] When The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles were later re-designated "Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)" in 1909, the "green" facings of the Mounted Rifles were retained, as were the scarlet dragoon-style uniforms and mess kits. Although there were relatively major changes to the uniforms in 1912 (i.e. the addition of a metal helmet with a red and white horsehair plume and a new Regimental badge), the scarlet uniform with green facings remained. Interestingly, General Order 2/1912 specified that the edging on the Great Coat and Service Dress Jacket, and the welts and bands on the Forage Cap were to be "olive green" while the facings on the Full Dress uniform and the Mess Kit remained specified as "green." In April 1929 the colour "myrtle green" formally replaced all references to "green" or "olive green" throughout the 1907 dress regulations and the colour has since remained unchanged.[10]

4.   While many other units have "green" specified as the colour of their facing, few have "myrtle green." It appears that the Regiment decided to specify which type of green to formally adopt sometime between 1912 and 1929. The reasons for the change, however, are unknown.

5.   Myrtle green is a relatively uncommon dark-green colour, which can be dated back to 1835[11]. Myrtle is a type of evergreen shrub with shiny blue green leaves, which are strongly scented when crushed. The flowers, bark and berries are also fragrant. Ancient Greeks considered myrtle sacred to the goddess Aphrodite (known to the Romans as Venus).

ARTICLE 6301 - REGIMENTAL COLOURS

1.   The Regimental colours are scarlet and myrtle green. Myrtle green is the colour of the Regimental facings. Dress regulations from 1961 state that the Regiment undertook action to register the colour Myrtle Green with the British Colour Council.[11] No evidence could be found to support this claim.

2.   The Regimental colours are used in camp flags, pennants and other Regimental decoration as well as all non-issue clothing articles such as regimental ties and cummerbunds.[12]

---

[8] 5th (Princess Charlotte of Wales's) Dragoon Guards were amalgamated with 6th (Inniskilling) Dragoon Guards in 1922 to form 5th Royal Inniskilling Dragoon Guards.

[9] Militia Department, *Dress Regulations for the Officers of the Canadian Militia*, (Ottawa: S.E. Dawson, 1907), and General Order 152/1907, September 1907.

[10] General Order 45/1929, 15 April 1929.

[11] *Dress Regulations for Officers*, (Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), 1961), p. J2.

[12] Significant research was undertaken to clarify a standard specification for the colour Myrtle Green. Some online references tend towards a bluish Pantone 5477 (RGB: 58, 86, 79) while others, including recent common usage lean towards a greener Pantone 357 (RGB: 33, 91, 51). Scarlet, on the other hand, seems to be commonly agreed as Pantone 200 (RGB: 196, 30, 58).

ARTICLE 6302 - SQUADRON COLOURS

The Regiment does not recognize any specific colours for individual squadrons.

SECTION 4 - FLAGS

ARTICLE 6400 - GENERAL

The word flag comes from the Anglo-Saxon word "fleogan," which means to float in the wind. The earliest flags were not flags at all but images or badges fixed to the spearhead. It was only later that a standard or banner as we know it today came into use. Traditionally, cavalry unit camp flags reflected the shape of the unit's standard or guidon, which was square for heavy and household cavalry and swallowtail for dragoon and horse.

ARTICLE 6401 - THE CAMP FLAG

1.   A Royal Clothing Warrant of December 1768 directed that camp colours be of a shape similar to that of the unit's standard or guidon, whichever being the case. The Warrant further stated that the camp colours were to be of the facings of the regiment with the rank of the regiment in the centre. The Regimental Camp Flag has evolved from this direction.

Figure 46 – The Camp Flag (with Commanding Officer's Pennant)

2.   The Regimental Camp Flag is flown at or near Regimental Headquarters and is raised at sunrise and lowered at sunset.

3.   The Regimental Sergeant Major holds the sealed pattern of the Camp Flag. The specifications of the Camp Flag are as follows:

a.   The flag is swallowtail in shape, eighty-four centimetres high by 136 centimetres wide. The tail is indented to the vertical centre a distance of forty-four centimetres from the right edge.

b.   The upper half of the field is scarlet and the bottom half is myrtle green.

c.   The regimental badge is located thirty-eight centimetres from the hoist edge and twenty-nine centimetres from the top edge.

d.   The regimental badge is twenty-nine centimetres high by 22.5 centimetres wide.

e.   The colour of the badge shall be yellow in silhouette and the banners red with green fill in:

(1)   the upper reaches of the crown,
(2)   the upper and lower thirds of the shield, and
(3)   the veins of the maple leaves.

ARTICLE 6402 - SQUADRON FLAGS

1.   Individual squadrons only fly a camp flag when deployed independently and away from the Regiment. This normally means squadron camp flags may only be flown on overseas tours or when squadrons are deployed separately from the Regiment for prolonged periods or as a detachment. Only the Commanding Officer shall authorize the flying of squadron flags.

2.   When authorized, squadron flags shall be of the same design as the Regimental camp flag. They shall be mounted with the squadron symbol located fifteen centimetres in from the hoist and fifteen centimetres down from the top edge of the flag. The symbol shall be thirteen centimetres high. The symbols are as follows:

   a.   a triangle for A Squadron;

   b.   a square for B Squadron;

   c.   a circle for C Squadron;

   d.   a lazy "D" for D Squadron (Reconnaissance Squadron if there are only three sabre squadrons. See ARTICLE 2103 - SQUADRON DESIGNATIONS); and

   e.   a diamond for Headquarters Squadron.

ARTICLE 6403 - AFFILIATED ROYAL CANADIAN ARMY CADET CORPS FLAGS

Each affiliated cadet corps flies separate and distinct flags (see ARTICLE 3801 - AFFILIATED CADET CORPS). Specific notes about the affiliated cadet corps flags are:

   a.   1292 Royal Canadian Army Cadet Corps (Calgary). In 1956, a cadet flag was "found" and returned to 1292 Army Cadet Corps. The flag was originally presented to the Corps on 18 May 1949 while it was designated as the Alberta United Services Institute Squadron (Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians). The flag bears the Royal Canadian Army Cadets emblem, the Union Jack, the Strathcona regimental badge, the Alberta Military Institute crest and the cadet corps number on a field of white silk, with red and blue fringing. Immediately below the cadet corps number is a scroll with the letters "AUSI Squadron";[13] and

   b.   1813 Royal Canadian Army Cadet Corps (Cranbrook). In December 1987, the Cadet Corps was presented with a Regimental Camp Flag bearing the Corps number in the upper right hand corner.

SECTION 5 - PENNANTS

ARTICLE 6500 - GENERAL

Pennants, like flags, originated from the medieval practice of flying banners so lords or barons could have some sign by which his followers could distinguish him in battle. Each banner so used was a different, unmistakable colour and carried the respective crests or coat of arms of the leaders. Today this practice is reflected in the use of garrison and vehicle pennants.

---

[13] *The Alberta United Services Institute Journal 1949*, (Calgary: The Alberta United Services Institute, 1949), pp. 30-31 and *The Strathconian*, (Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), 1956), Vol 4 (October), Cover and p. 3.

ARTICLE 6501 - <u>OVERSEAS PENNANTS</u>

1.   Since the Second World War, the Regiment has marked each deployment overseas by the Regiment, squadron or troop by producing a pennant. These pennants are currently displayed in the foyer of the Harvey Building. The details of deployments that have been marked with a pennant are at Table 6 – Deployments Marked with Overseas Pennants.
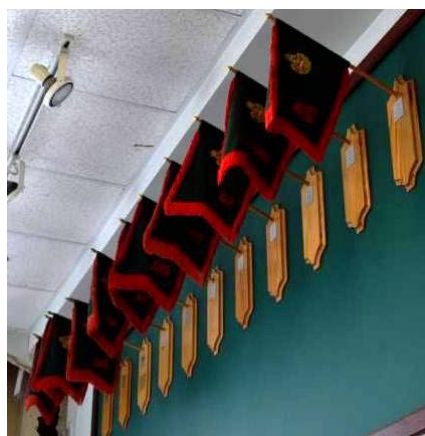
Figure 47 – Overseas Pennants (Harvey Building Foyer)

2.   The pennants, which are swallowtail in shape, measure 38 centimetres by 17.5 centimetres. The tail is indented nine centimetres at the centre. The pennants are myrtle green in colour with a three centimetre red fringe. The lettering, if any, is red seven centimetres high by 8.5 centimetres wide. Each pennant has a ten centimetres by eight centimetres silver-bullion regimental badge with the centre mounted approximately nine centimetres from the top edge and approximately ten centimetres from the hoist edge. The pennants are mounted on a wooden plaque hung on the wall.

Table 8 – Deployments Marked with Overseas Pennants

(no date) RHQ Second World War	19 April 1951 – 20 January 1952 C Squadron, Korea
13 May 1952 – 6 June 1953 B Squadron, Korea	30 April 1953 – 24 May 1954 A Squadron, Korea
November 1953 – November 1955 D Squadron, Germany	February 1957 – February 1958 56 Canadian Reconnaissance Squadron, Egypt
November 1957 – November 1959 Reconnaissance Squadron, Germany	February 1961 – February 1962 Reconnaissance Squadron, Egypt
February 1963 – February 1964 Reconnaissance Squadron, Egypt	September 1964 Reconnaissance Squadron, Cyprus
1965 – 1970 LdSH(RC), Germany	1 April 1972 – 1 October 1972 LdSH(RC), Cyprus
28 July – 11 December 1974 Reconnaissance Troop, Cyprus[14]	24 September 1979 – 10 April 1980 LdSH(RC), Cyprus
25 March – 3 October 1982 Reconnaissance Troop, Cyprus[15]	25 August 1988 – 13 March 1989 LdSH(RC), Cyprus

---

[14] Deployed with the Canadian Airborne Regiment.
[15] Deployed with Third Regiment Royal Canadian Horse Artillery[0].

18 April – 29 October 1994 LdSH(RC), Bosnia Herzegovina	2 January – 17 July 1997 A Squadron, Bosnia Herzegovina
12 July 1997 – 10 January 1998 LdSH(RC), Bosnia Herzegovina	27 May – 21 December 1999 Reconnaissance Squadron, Kosovo Awarded the Deputy Chief of Defence Staff Unit Commendation 12 May 2000
2 August – 21 December 1999 Third Troop C Squadron, Battle Group LO Troop And Admin Troop, Kosovo[16]	1 March – 15 September 2000 A Squadron, Bosnia Herzegovina
10 September 2000 – 4 April 2001 B Squadron, Bosnia Herzegovina	28 January – 28 July 2002 Reconnaissance Squadron, Afghanistan Awarded Commander-in-Chief Commendation 8 December 2003
28 September 2002 – 11 April 2003 B Squadron, Bosnia Herzegovina	12 April – 3 October 2003 C Squadron, Bosnia Herzegovina
28 July 2004 – 18 February 2005 Reconnaissance Squadron, Afghanistan	10 October 2006 – 11 March 2007 B Squadron, Afghanistan
13 March 2007 – 8 September 2007 A Squadron, Afghanistan	8 September 2007 – 9 March 2008 C Squadron, Afghanistan
21 January 2008 – 28 September 2008 B Squadron, Afghanistan	1 September 2008 – 30 April 2009 A Squadron, Afghanistan
1 May 2009 – 27 September 2009 C Squadron, Afghanistan*	28 September 2009 – 06 April 2010 B Squadron, Afghanistan*
27 April 2010 – 13 November 2010 A Squadron, Afghanistan*	

* Indicated Pennants are currently not on display as they are being repaired.

ARTICLE 6502 - <u>COMMANDING OFFICER'S PENNANT</u>

1.   The Commanding Officer's Pennant is flown at or near Regimental Headquarters to indicate his presence. The pennant is raised daily when he first arrives for duty and lowered when he departs.

2.   During change of command ceremonies, the Commanding Officer's Pennant shall be lowered as the outgoing commanding officer signs the Change of Command Scroll. When the incoming Commanding Officer signs the scroll, a new pennant shall be raised. The old pennant shall be presented to the outgoing Commanding Officer.

3.   The Commanding Officer's pennant is a miniature of the regimental flag measuring 22.5 centimetres high and 35.5 centimetres wide with an indentation of 9 centimetres from the right side. A regimental badge measuring thirteen centimetres high by eleven centimetres wide is located in the centre of the pennant.

ARTICLE 6503 – <u>COLONEL OF THE REGIMENT'S PENNANT</u>

1.   The pennant of the Colonel of the Regiment is of the same design as that of the Commanding Officer's pennant except that the rank of a Colonel, in the form of two pips surmounted by a crown (in yellow), is located in the upper left hand corner. The rank is two

Figure 48 – Colonel of the Regiment's Pennant

---

[16] Deployed with First Battalion Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry Battle Group.

centimetres in from the hoist edge and three centimetres down from the top edge.

2.   The pennant of the Colonel of the Regiment is "broken" whenever he arrives on parade.

ARTICLE 6504 - <u>SQUADRON COMMANDERS' PENNANTS</u>

Squadron Commanders are not permitted to fly garrison pennants except when their squadrons are deployed or detached independently. The Commanding Officer shall authorize the use of pennants under such circumstances. In these cases, the pennant shall be a duplicate of the Commanding Officer's pennant with the squadron symbol measuring four centimetres high mounted in the upper left corner. The symbol is positioned two centimetres in from the hoist edge and three centimetres from the top edge.

ARTICLE 6505 - <u>LANCE PENNANTS</u>

1.   The lance pennant used by the Regiment today stems from the British regulation pennant that was in use in the 1800s. The origin of the red and white pennant is coloured by legend, the most popular being the misconception that white cloth was wound around the lance shaft prior to an engagement to stop enemy blood from running down the shaft and making it slippery. When removed after battle, the part nearest the point was red with blood. In actual fact, the original idea of the pennant was to frighten enemy horses. The red and white colours stem from four British Light Dragoon regiments who converted to Lancers in 1816. The colours adopted were that of Polish lancers and coincidentally, the same as those assigned by Royal Prerogative and Proclamation as Canada's national colours on 21 November 1921.

Figure 49 – Lance and Pennant

2.   The lance pennant is swallowtail in shape. Measuring twenty-two centimetres high and seventy-three centimetres long, the pennant is indented fifty-two centimetres from the end. The pennant is mounted directly below the head of the lance.

ARTICLE 6506 - <u>VEHICLE PENNANTS</u>

1.   Current Canadian Armed Forces regulations restrict the use of distinguishing flags on vehicles. They are only permitted based on tradition and if flown according to customary usage. The evolution of the current arrangement for pennants in the Regiment is unclear and over the years the design has changed frequently. The present policy is as follows:

Figure 50 – Vehicle Pennants

        a.   The pennants are triangular in shape measuring 23.5 centimetres high at the hoist and 40 centimetres wide from the centre of the hoist side to the point of the triangle. The upper half of the triangle is red with the lower half being Myrtle Green.

        b.   The squadron tactical sign, which is to be approximately 6.5 centimetres by 6.5 centimetres, shall be mounted on the upper left corner of the flag. The tactical sign will

be located 5.5 centimetres from the hoist side and approximately 5.5 centimetres from the top edge. The call sign numbers and letters shall be 5.4 centimetres high with each stroke being approximately 1.3 centimetres wide. They will be centred on a point, nineteen centimetres from the centre of the hoist edge.

c. Commanders only shall fly the pennants. Specifically pennants are limited to the:
(1) Commanding Officer;
(2) Squadron Commanders;
(3) Seconds in Command;
(4) armoured fighting vehicle commanders; and
(5) the Maintenance Troop Leader.

d. Pennants are only flown during ceremonial occasions. They should not be flown in the field under tactical or non-tactical conditions.

e. The Colonel of the Regiment's vehicle pennant differs from those above in that:

(1) it is the same in design as his garrison pennant; and
(2) the pennant is flown from his vehicle whenever he is in it, whether in garrison or in the field.

<div align="center">SECTION 6 - <u>VEHICLE NAMES</u></div>

ARTICLE 6600 - <u>GENERAL</u>

The origin of the practice of naming tanks and other vehicles in the Regiment or in the Army is not clear. The only record of such a practice is found in *A Record of Achievement* written by Lieutenant-Colonel McAvity in collaboration with the officers and men of the Regiment. To this day the practice of naming vehicles continues in the Regiment using the tank histories of the Second World War as a guide. The Second World War tank histories as recorded in *A Record of Achievement* are repeated at ANNEX H - <u>VEHICLE NAMES</u> along with new additions for the sake of interest and as a matter of pride.

CHAPTER 7 - <u>REGIMENTAL MUSIC</u>

ARTICLE 7100 - <u>GENERAL</u>

1.   Music has long been a part of military tradition and activities and its use has been extremely varied. From conveying messages and passing orders to animating soldiers in battle, music has been used to advantage by commanders throughout the ages.

2.   Although predominantly ceremonial in nature today, the sounding of reveille, retreat, tattoo and exercising the freedom of the city were originally necessary practices. Similarly, even marching to music originated from the need to accurately establish the time by which known distances would be covered.

ARTICLE 7101 - <u>REGIMENTAL CALL</u>

A regimental call is a musical composition played on either a trumpet or bugle that specifically identifies a regiment. The Regimental Call is used as a precautionary "word" of command before other orders are sounded.   The authorized Regimental Call for Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) is shown at Figure 48.[1] The bugle was generally only used when mounted while the trumpet was used when dismounted. Although the only official reference to the authorized call for the Regiment was published in *Regimental Trumpet and Bugle Calls for the Canadian Army* in 1961, there is evidence that the Regiment used a regimental call since it was formed. The exact origin of the Regimental Call, however, is unknown. Except for ceremonial occasions, the Regimental Call and general bugle/trumpet calls are no longer used.

Figure 51 – The Regimental Call[2]

ARTICLE 7102 - <u>REGIMENTAL MARCH</u>

1.   The Regiment adopted *Memories Charms* as its Regimental March in 1932. Captain A. James of the Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry Band in Winnipeg composed *Memories Charms*. At the time, the Regiment was still mounted on horses and the march complemented the marching trot of a cavalry unit. In 1956, recognizing that *Memories Charms* was not suitable for a vehicle-mounted unit and that it was extremely difficult to march to, the Commanding Officer, Lieutenant-Colonel R.J. Graham, DSO, CD chose *The Soldiers of the Queen* as the Regimental March.

2.   *The Soldiers of the Queen* was authorized as the Regimental March in 1956.[3] Not only

---

[1] Authorized calls can also be found at *Canadian Forces Band Instructions*, (Ottawa: Department of National Defence, n.d.).

[2] *Regimental Trumpet and Bugle Calls for the Canadian Army*, Ottawa: Canadian Army, 1961.

was *The Soldiers of the Queen* well-suited to marching on foot, it was a popular patriotic tune during the South African War and aptly reflected the circumstances and actions of the Regiment at its founding. *The Soldiers of the Queen* was written and composed by Thomas A. Barrett (1866-1928), known professionally as Leslie Stuart. The music for *The Soldiers of the Queen* is at ANNEX I - REGIMENTAL MARCHES AND SONGS.

3.   The original music for *Memories Charms* has recently been uncovered. The song currently exists as hand-written song sheets for each instrument. The Pipes and Drums Band are in the process of transferring the music into a single song sheet, which will be included as an annex in a future edition. For interest's sake, a copy of the original song sheet for trumpet, signed by Captain James, is at Figure 49.

Figure 52 – Memories Charms (1st B Flat Horn) (The Military Museums Archives)

ARTICLE 7103 - REGIMENTAL SONGS

1.   Over the years the Regiment has had a number of songs dedicated to it by composers intent on honouring the Regiment and marking its accomplishments. Among these are:

     a.   Strathcona's Horse: Regimental Song.   The Regimental song was dedicated to Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal. The song was written and composed by Lieutenant A.L. Harrington Kyle "on the Battlefield" and published in Cape Town, South Africa (date unknown). The music and verse for *Strathcona's Horse: Regimental Song* is at ANNEX I - REGIMENTAL MARCHES AND SONGS.

---

[3] Canadian Army Orders 32-5, Part "A" Supplement to Issue Number 490, 7 May 1956 and Canadian Forces Administrative Order 32-2 (Band Marches and Calls).

b.   A Song for Canada. *A Song for Canada*, by Percy Semon, was published in 1909 in London. This song too was dedicated to Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal.

c.   Strathcona March. Written by Ludwig Waizmann *Strathcona March* was dedicated "by special permission to Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal." J.L. Orme and Son of Ottawa published the march sometime between 1900 and 1903 (when Waizmann left Ottawa for Toronto).

d.   Strathcona's Horse or Mount Royal. Published by John Blair in Grimsby, Ontario in 1900. The music was written by J.H. Hyde and the words by John Blair.

CHAPTER 8 - <u>DRILL AND CEREMONIAL</u>

SECTION 1 - <u>INTRODUCTION</u>

The drill and ceremonial procedures used by Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) are as described in *Canadian Forces Manual of Drill and Ceremonial*. The purpose of this chapter is to amplify the procedures in the drill manual that are deemed incomplete and to identify those procedures that the Regiment perpetuates by custom and choice.

SECTION 2 - <u>PARADES</u>

ARTICLE 8200 - <u>FALLING OUT THE OFFICERS</u>

Whenever the Regiment parades, ceremonial occasions or otherwise, on the order "Officers Fall Out" by the Second in Command, the officers will march forward towards him and form a semicircle. On the order "HUP" by the Adjutant, all officers will salute the Second in Command and be briefed or given further orders by him, if necessary. Once the Second in Command has completed his briefing, he will dismiss the officers. On the order "HUP" from the Adjutant, officers will salute, pause, make a left or right turn as appropriate towards the outside of the semicircle and then march directly to the front of the parade square in line before carrying on with their duties.

ARTICLE 8201 - <u>ADDRESSING SUB-UNITS</u>

1.   <u>Addressing Squadrons</u>. On parade only the flanking squadrons are addressed using the word "Squadron." All others are addressed by using only their alphabetical prefix or other designation (i.e. the term "The Prince of Wales Squadron" or "Headquarters Squadron" is used when the squadron is on the right or left flank but the term "B" or "Recce" are used when neither is the case).

2.   <u>Addressing Troops</u>. The practice adopted for flanking and non-flanking squadrons applies to troops within a squadron as well.

SECTION 3 - <u>DRILL</u>

ARTICLE 8300 - <u>GUIDON DRILL</u>

Detailed drill required when parading the Guidon is at ANNEX J - <u>GUIDON DRILL</u>.

ARTICLE 8301 - <u>LANCE DRILL</u>

Lance drill is detailed at ANNEX L - LANCE DRILL.

ARTICLE 8302 - <u>DRILL WITH CROP, CANE OR PACE STICK</u>

1.   Pace sticks and drill canes are authorized accoutrements for warrant officers and sergeants as outlined in ARTICLE 9303 - <u>PACE STICKS</u> and ARTICLE 9304 - <u>DRILL CANES</u>.

2.   Officers and the Regimental Sergeant Major no longer carry crops, as they have in past years. The drill for the crop, however, is included in the manual as a matter of history. Drill with crop, cane or pace stick is detailed at ANNEX M - <u>DRILL WITH CROP, CANE OR PACE STICK</u>.

CHAPTER 9 - REGIMENTAL DRESS INSTRUCTIONS

SECTION 1 - INTRODUCTION

ARTICLE 9100 - REGIMENTAL ORDERS OF DRESS

Canadian Armed Forces Dress Instructions provides all ranks with the policy and detailed instructions for the wearing of all uniforms of the Canadian Armed Forces. The Regiment will adhere to the regulations contained therein, except where Regimental differences are permitted and described in the following dress instructions. The only distinctive items of Regimental dress permitted are those authorized and described herein.

ARTICLE 9101 - GENERAL DRESS REGULATIONS

1.   The dress and appearance of officers and all ranks shall, on all occasions, reflect credit on the Regiment. Soldiers of the Regiment shall not remove articles of clothing other than gloves, headdress, overcoat or raincoat in public. Buttons and zippers on tunics or jackets shall not be undone nor ties loosened.

2.   Extra-regimentally employed officers, warrant officers, non-commissioned officers and junior ranks shall conform to the dress regulations of the Regiment. If authorized and directed, accoutrements of other units or formations, such as the Armour School badge, may be worn.

3.   The wearing of part uniform and part civilian clothes is prohibited. Regimental buttons, for example, shall not be worn on any garments other than those authorized in these regulations.

4.   When attending a social function as an official representative of the Regiment or the Canadian Armed Forces, a uniform is normally worn. The appropriate uniform may also be worn at civil social functions at the discretion of the member with the approval of the Commanding Officer.

ARTICLE 9102 - FUNDING

Most items of Canadian Armed Forces clothing and accoutrement are provided through the supply system or on an initial-issue, cash-replacement basis. All other regimental accoutrements and uniforms such as mess dress are provided at the individual's own expense or, in the case of Ceremonial Dress for the Guidon Party and the Strathcona Mounted Troop, at regimental expense.

SECTION 2 - REGIMENTAL DEVICES

ARTICLE 9200 - REGIMENTAL CAP BADGE

1.   The design for the officers' and Chief Warrant Officers' cap badge is as detailed in Chapter 6 - SECTION 1 - THE REGIMENTAL BADGE. The cap badge is made of sterling silver and measures four centimetres high and 3.5 centimetres wide. The cap badge for all ranks of master warrant officer and below is the same as that of the officers except it is made of brass.

2.   The metal cap badge is worn on all authorized headdress except the combat hat, ceremonial headdress, Yukon hat, toque and when on United Nations duty. Separate hat badges are available for these other orders of headdress. The cap badge is worn on the beret with the base of the badge one centimetre above the leather/silk band.[1] Cap badges will be kept highly polished.

---

[1] *Canadian Armed Forces Dress Instructions*, Chapter 3, Section 3 and Appendix 1, Annex D.

ARTICLE 9201 - <u>REGIMENTAL COLLAR BADGES</u>

1.   The design of the collar badges or collar dogs is the same as for the cap badge but measures only three centimetres high and 2.5 centimetres wide. As with the cap badge, the collar badges worn by officers and Chief Warrant Officers are made of sterling silver while those for the other ranks are made of brass. The collar badges will always be worn with a brilliant shine.

Figure 53 – Regimental Cap Badge and Collar Badges for Non-commissioned Members

Figure 54 – Regimental Cap Badge and Collar Badges for Officers

2.   Collar badges are worn on the lapels of Canadian Armed Forces service dress jackets and mess dress. In the case of the service dress jacket, the collar badges are worn centred on the stitching of the lapel seam with the seam passing diagonally under the centre of the collar badge. The badges are worn on mess dress jackets so that they are centred horizontally on the collar with the top of the badge between 9 and 12.8 centimetres from the point where the shoulder seam meets the edge of the collar. In both cases the base of the badges are parallel to the ground when worn.[2]

Figure 55 – Officer's Collar Dogs on DEU Tunic

Figure 56 – Officer's Collar Dogs as Worn on Mess Dress Jacket

ARTICLE 9202 - <u>METAL SHOULDER TITLE</u>

1.   Current regulations require all ranks to wear the same style of shoulder title regardless of previous regimental traditions. The metal shoulder title is designed with the word "STRATHCONA'S" in an upward curve. The letters are 3.8 centimetres in height and 3.3 centimetres wide and made of brass.

Figure 57 – Metal Shoulder Title

---

[2] Ibid. Chapter 3, Section 3 and Appendix 2, Annex D.

2.   The shoulder title is worn on the epaulette of the service dress jacket so that the lowest point of the title touches the seam between the epaulette and the shoulder. The shoulder titles will continue to be worn by those on extra-regimental employment.[3]

ARTICLE 9203 - CLOTH SHOULDER TITLE

1.   The cloth shoulder title is a rectangular badge with the letters "STRATHCONA'S" in gold thread on rifle green Melton cloth. The title is two centimetres tall and six centimetres wide. Current regulations direct all ranks to wear the same style cloth shoulder title; prior to unification, however, other ranks wore the full title.

2.   The shoulder title is sewn to the base of the green shoulder slip-on which is in turn worn on the epaulette of all linden green service dress shirts for distinctive environmental uniform (DEU) orders of dress 1 and 3 including sweaters (DEU 3C), raincoats, overcoats and the CANEX jackets and parkas.[4]

Figure 58 – Officer's Cloth DEU Slip-on

ARTICLE 9204 - CLOTH COMBAT RANK TITLE

1.   The combat shoulder title is a rectangular badge with the letters "LdSH(RC)" embroidered in white thread on Canadian Armed Forces "CADPAT" pattern cloth. The title is two centimetres high and six centimetres wide.

2.   The combat shoulder title is sewn to the base of all combat slip-ons and worn on the epaulettes of all applicable combat clothing (jackets, parkas, raingear, fleece, and shirts).[5]

ARTICLE 9205 – PIPS AND CROWNS

Figure 59 – Warrant Officer's Combat Slip-on

        As of late 2014, the Canadian Army restored Officer's rank to the traditional pips and crowns. The DEU pips and crowns are made of brass and painted with enamel. They are pinned three millimetres above the metal shoulder title, and 2 millimetres between one another, centred on the epaulette[6]. The mess kit has the pips and crowns sewn on 13 millimetres above the bottom seam, and two millimetres between each.[7]

Figure 60 – Mess Kit Pips and Crowns

Figure 61 – Captain's Pips as Worn on Mess Kit Jacket

Figure 62 – Lieutenant's Pips as Worn on DEU Tunic

---

[3] Ibid. Chapter 3, Section 3 and Appendix 3, Annex E.
[4] Ibid. Chapter 3, Section 1 and Annex A.
[5] Ibid.
[6] Canadian Army Pinning-On Diagram for Service Dress Jacket
[7] Canadian Army Mess Kit Diagram

ARTICLE 9206 – <u>FORMER RANK</u>

After unification in 1968, all officers wore bars to signify their rank. In late 2014, the Canadian Army officially reverted to the use of Pips and Crowns to replace Officer's bars.

ARTICLE 9207 - <u>REGIMENTAL BUTTONS</u>

Figure 63 – Ring style Officer's Cloth DEU Slip-on

1.   The design on the regimental button is Lord Strathcona's Coat of Arms without supporters. Below the Coat of Arms is the motto "PERSEVERANCE." The inscription "LORD STRATHCONA'S HORSE RC" encircles the button. The material for the buttons is commonly plastic with a metallic coating. It is permissible for the buttons to be anodized.

2.   Button dimensions and uses for each uniform are shown in Table 7.

Table 9 – Description and Use of Regimental Buttons[8]

Description of Button	Worn With	Where Worn
30-Ligne	Service Dress Jacket	Front Closure*
	Regimental Blazer	Front Closure
	Patrol Jacket	Front Closure
26-Ligne	Service Dress Jacket	Breast Pocket Closure and Shoulder Strap Fastening
	Mess Dress Jacket	Shoulder Strap Fastening
	Mess Dress Jacket (M-1)	Jacket Closing and Sleeve Facing
	Regimental Blazer	Cuffs
	Patrol Jacket	Breast Pocket Closure and Cuffs
20-Ligne Number 2	Mess Dress Waistcoat	Waistcoat Closure*
	Mess Dress Side Hat	Front Closing/Chin Strap
	Forage Cap (Patrols)	Chin Strap

Figure 64 – Regimental Buttons (Left to Right: 30-Ligne, 26-Ligne and 22-Ligne Number 2)

---

[8] Ibid. Chapter 3, Section 3 and Appendix 3, Annex D and *Dress Instructions for Officers of the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps*, (Ottawa: Department of National Defence, 1953), Paragraph B5.17.

ARTICLE 9208 - <u>BADGES OF RANK</u>

1.   Badges of rank for all orders of dress except Ceremonial Dress are specified in *Canadian Armed Forces Dress Instructions*.[9] Rank insignia for officers is described in ARTICLE 9205 – <u>PIPS AND CROWNS</u>.

2.   In addition to the orders of dress prescribed in the Canadian Armed Forces Dress Instructions, the miniature metal rank insignia for other ranks shall be attached to the point of the right collar of the regimental coveralls.

ARTICLE 9209 - <u>TROUSER BELT AND BUCKLE</u>

1.   The approved design for the trouser belt and buckle is of a black nylon web belt three centimetres in width with a metal tip and buckle. The buckle is four by 3.5 centimetres. A collar badge is mounted on the centre of the buckle – both the collar badge and metal parts are silver for officers and Chief Warrant Officers and brass for other ranks.

2.   The trouser belt and buckle is worn with all orders of service dress as detailed in the Canadian Armed Forces Dress Instructions.[10]

Figure 65 – Trouser Belt and Buckle (Non-commissioned Members)

ARTICLE 9208 - <u>BLACK GLOVES</u>

1.   Although brown gloves matching the pre-unification brown oxfords and Sam Browne belts were worn, the current Canadian Armed Forces-issue black gloves are now worn with all orders of service dress.

2.   Furthermore, officers and Chief Warrant Officers will wear black gloves, when on parade in DEU 1, less 1B, and DEU 3 orders of dress. Either the Canadian Armed Forces-issue black glove or unlined black leather, wrist-length gloves with or without a single fastener (pattern to be approved by the Regimental Second in Command) will be worn in winter and shall be worn in lieu of white parade gloves.

ARTICLE 9210 - <u>REGIMENTAL TIE</u>

      The Regimental tie has a red background with diagonal myrtle green stripes, 1.1 centimetres wide and 2.5 centimetres apart. The stripes run downwards from the left shoulder to the right hip when worn. The tie may also be worn as appropriate with civilian attire, but it is the only tie authorized for wear with the Regimental blazer.[11]

ARTICLE 9211 - <u>REGIMENTAL ASCOT</u>

      The regimental scarf or ascot is of the same material as the regimental tie. The ascot is worn with civilian attire as appropriate.

Figure 66 – Regimental Tie

---

[9] *Canadian Armed Forces Dress Instructions*, Chapter 3, Section 1 and Annex A. It is customary for regimental officers who have served on exchange with the Lancers to wear an equivalent-sized Lancer button as the bottom button on their service dress tunic and mess dress waistcoat. The origin of this convention is unknown.

[10] Ibid. Chapter 5.

[11] *Dress Instructions for Officers of the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps*, Paragraph B5.97.

ARTICLE 9212 - <u>REGIMENTAL CUMMERBUND</u>

The Regimental cummerbund is made of "myrtle green viscose satin. It is 4 ⅜th inches wide at the widest point and then tapers gradually to a width of 2 inches at each end; pleated in front, the overall length of the pleats, 19 inches. The two upper pleats are approximately 1 inch width, the bottom pleat 1 3/16th inches wide at the centre and tapering gradually to a width of ½ inch at each end; on the back of the pleated portion 3 ½ inch wide pocket; on the left end, a centre bar slide buckle."[12] When worn the open sides of the pleats are up. The cummerbund is worn with mess dress or formal black dinner jacket.

SECTION 3 - <u>REGIMENTAL ACCOUTREMENTS</u>

ARTICLE 9300 - <u>BLACK WEB BELT AND PISTOL HOLSTER</u>

1.   The black web belt, and black pistol holster when authorized, is worn in lieu of the Canadian Armed Forces-pattern white web belt and holster.[13] The belt is a blackened 1937-pattern web waist belt with Regimental brass buckle and keepers. The 1990-pattern garrison dress black web belt is also acceptable.

2.   The locket-pattern buckle was introduced in 1955. "On the annulus is the designation "LORD – STRATHCONA'S - HORSE (RC)" [around the top] and the motto "PERSEVERANCE" [on the bottom]. On the central medallion is the Regimental cap badge, less the motto and designation. The height of the buckle is 2 ¾ inches; the diameter of the annulus is two inches; the width of the buckle is four inches; the diameter of the medallion is 1 1/8th inches; the height of the regimental badge is one inch."[14] The buckle is worn with two flat 1937-pattern brass buckle keepers, ⅜ inch wide.

Figure 67 – Buckle for Black Web Belt

3.   The black waist belt is worn with DEU 1 order of dress for guards of honour and other ceremonial occasions. The belt is also worn with the black coveralls for ceremonial occasions. The belt is normally removed when entering a mess.

ARTICLE 9301 - <u>SWORDS, SCABBARDS, SLINGS AND BELTS</u>

1.   The sword pattern for all armoured units is that approved for the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps – a 1912-pattern cavalry officers' sword.[15] Soldiers traditionally carry the 1908-pattern cavalry troopers' sword.

2.   The scabbard for the officers' sword when dismounted is made of nickel-plated steel, which has two bands with loose rings brazed on three and eleven inches respectively from the top of the mouthpiece. The scabbard for the 1908-pattern sword is made of steel, with two rings for sling suspension when mounted.

3.   The sword knot is a gold cord with acorn and sliding keeper (the overall length is 18 inches; the acorn is 2 ½ inches and the keeper ½ inch in length). The knot is attached to the hilt of the sword by pushing the loop end of the sword knot through the hole in the basket from outside to the inside of the hilt and then pulling it to the left (as viewed when the sword is in the

Figure 68 – 1912 Pattern Cavalry Officer's Sword

---

[12] *Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Dress Instructions,* (Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), 1970), Part 3, p. 6.d.

[13] *Canadian Armed Forces Dress Instructions*, Chapter 3, Section 6.

[14] *Dress Instructions for Officers of the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps*, Paragraph B5.15.

[15] *Canadian Armed Forces Dress Instructions*, Chapter 3, Section 6.

scabbard, guard forward as per the position of attention). Pass the acorn end of the knot through the loop end and tighten. Slide the keeper tightly into position against knot. When the sword is in the hilt and at the side, allow the sword knot to hang freely on the left side of the sword (away from the body). The knot is tied with a small offset loop to permit the hand to pass through when drawing the sword from the scabbard.[16]

4.   The sword belt is worn under the tunic. The burgundy waist belt is 1 ¾ inches wide, strengthened at points strain with burgundy dyed leather. Buckle, dees and sword hook are of brass. "The dee to which the long sword sling is attached is affixed to a movable loop so that the sling may be adjusted to its proper position at [the centre of] the wearer's back. The dee for the short sword sling may be fixed. The sword hook is attached to the dee of the short sling. "[17]

5.   The sword sling is unadorned black leather, one inch wide, with fittings and studs of polished brass. The long sling, when attached to the sword belt is twenty-nine inches in length; the short sling, twelve and one half inches. The top of the long sling is at the centre of the wearer's back. "The top of the short sling is at a point in line with the centre of the stripe on the overalls…. [When the sword slings are worn without the sword] the slings are looped together so that the short sling lies [flat along the leg and the long sling's point and buckle face the front [with the tab of the short sling outside that of the long one]."[18]

ARTICLE 9302 - LANCES

1.   The Regiment has never been issued lances or used them as weapons. The Regiment has, however, maintained lances solely for tent pegging and use during ceremonial activities including rides and displays by the Mounted Troop.

2.   The lance used by the Regiment is the 1868-pattern British cavalry lance. The lance is approximately three metres in length with a thirty-centimetre long brass tip and thirteen-centimetre long brass base. The staff is made of bamboo (or ash) stained brown with a black leather band approximately fifty-two centimetres long wound around the centre of the lance. The band secures a white webbed sling about twenty-six centimetres long. The pennant, when attached, is secured directly beneath the brass tip with the red over white (See ARTICLE 6505 - LANCE PENNANTS).

ARTICLE 9303 - PACE STICKS

1.   The Regimental Sergeant Major and master warrant officers within the Regiment carry pace sticks as a badge of office, except in the case of the Regimental Sergeant Major during Moreuil Wood Day. The pace stick is an aid used for drill training. Its purpose, other than being a badge of office, is to measure the distance, interval and length of a pace. The pace stick may be carried in the open or closed positions during drill training, but is otherwise kept in the closed position.[19]

2.   Pace sticks, which are made of wood, are to be painted gloss black.

ARTICLE 9304 - DRILL CANES

1.   Warrant officers and sergeants carry drill canes as a badge of office. The drill cane, which is approximately 90 centimetres long, is made of wood and painted gloss black. The drill cane has a 7.9

---

[16] *Dress Instructions for Officers of the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps*, Paragraph 4.71.

[17] Ibid. Paragraph 4.69.

[18] Ibid. Paragraph 4.73.

[19] *Canadian Armed Forces Dress Instructions*, Chapter 3, Section 6.

centimetre long brass head with the regimental badge engraved on it. The shoe is also made of brass and is eight centimetres long.

2.   The Regimental Sergeant Major's drill cane was carved from a tree from Moreuil Wood and was presented to the Regiment by Reconnaissance Squadron in 1959. The Regimental Sergeant Major carries the cane on Moreuil Wood Parade. The drill cane is kept in the Regimental Sergeant Major's office.

ARTICLE 9305 - <u>ORDERLY OFFICER'S LANYARD</u>

The Regimental Orderly Officer wears the regimental lanyard (see ARTICLE 9602 – <u>REGIMENTAL LANYARD</u>) on the left shoulder when in DEU or combat order of dress.

SECTION 4 - <u>CEREMONIAL DRESS</u>

ARTICLE 9400 - <u>GENERAL</u>

1.   Ceremonial or Full Dress (DEU 1B) uniform is still authorized by the Canadian Armed Forces as "an optional uniform which may be worn at no expense to the public."[20] Currently, regimental ceremonial uniforms and accoutrements are obtained at the expense of the Regimental Society only for members of the Guidon Party, the Strathcona Mounted Troop, vedettes and markers on ceremonial parades.

2.   The Regimental Full Dress uniform is a dragoon-style uniform, similar to the Full Dress uniform that was also adopted by The Royal Canadian Dragoons in 1892. A Squadron Canadian Mounted Rifles adopted a dragoon-style uniform when they were formed in 1901. The uniform was modified slightly in 1903 when green facings were authorized. The first Full Dress uniform was a:

> "Scarlet tunics of Dragoon pattern with two rows of three buttons at the back, and Austrian knots of yellow braid on the sleeves. The brown leather waist belts had a leather pouch at the rear and the bandoliers were of brown leather. The blue trousers show a cavalry strip of yellow and jack spurs were worn. White helmets with a brass spike were worn with regimental badge (the Royal Cipher) on the front of the puggaree."[21]

3.   With the publication of General Order 2/1912, along with several other minor modifications, the regimental ceremonial uniform changed from the white Canadian-pattern helmet with brass spike and chin chain to the brass helmet with red and white horsehair plume.[22] The 1912 Full Dress uniform is still worn today.

ARTICLE 9401 - <u>TUNIC AND OVERALLS</u>

1.   The Full Dress tunic is:

> "scarlet cloth [doeskin]; with collar and cuffs the colour of the regimental facings [myrtle green].… The collar ornamented with 1-inch lace round the top. The cuffs 2 inches deep at the point and 1 1/4 inches at the back, edged with round-back gold cord forming a single Austrian knot, 7 3/4

---

[20] Ibid. Chapter 5.

[21] R. Cunniffe, p. 99. (Uniform of October 1909). Also see the colour plate "Officer Undress and Private Review Order The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles, 1909," between pages 128 and 129 of *Always a Strathcona.*

[22] General Order 2/1912, January 1912.

inches deep. Eight buttons in front, and two at the waist behind; a three pointed scarlet flap on each skirt, behind, with three buttons, and edged with round-back gold cord, traced inside and out with gold Russian braid. The front edged with the same material and colour as the facings, and the skirts lined with white. Plaited gold shoulder cord, lined with scarlet; a small button at the top."[23]

2.   The overalls (trousers) are midnight blue cloth with a 1 ¾-inch yellow stripe down each side seam.[24]

ARTICLE 9402 - HELMET AND PLUME

1.   The helmet is "brass, bound round the edge. At the top a crosspiece base and a plume socket, 4 inches high from the point of insertion in the base. A laurel wreath above the front peak and a laurel band up the back. Plain burnished chain, 1 inch wide, mounted on black patent leather lined with velvet, and fastened on each side with a rose ornament."[25]

2.   On the front of the helmet is a twelve-point star 5 inches by 4 ¼ inches in gilt or gilding metal. Centred on the star is a bimetal badge, 1 ¾ inches high "Coat of Arms, ribband and name of corps and Crown, gilt or gilding metal. The scroll and motto and floral wreath in silver or white metal."[26]

3.   The helmet plume is red and white horsehair, which "rises 2 inches from the point of insertion in the socket, and falls as far as the bottom of the helmet. A rose at the top is screwed on to the stem of the plume. Steel stem with screw and fly nuts."[27]

Figure 69 – Full Dress Helmet

ARTICLE 9403 - SWORD

1.   The sword is the 1912-pattern cavalry officers' sword, with a blade not less than 35 inches long. Other ranks use the 1908-pattern cavalry troopers' sword. Also see ARTICLE 9301 - SWORDS, SCABBARDS, SLINGS AND BELTS.

2.   The sword knot for Full Dress is a gold and myrtle green cord and acorn.

ARTICLE 9404 - BELTS AND SLINGS FOR FULL DRESS

1.   The officers' waist belt (girdle) is "gold lace [with maple leaf pattern], not exceeding 2 ¼ inches wide, morocco leather lining, edging of the colour of the facings [myrtle green]."[28] The waist belt plate - "on a frosted gilt rectangular plate, with burnished edges, a [bimetal Regimental badge], but of the following dimensions: height of badge 2 ¼ inches; width of badge 2 inches; height of plate 3 inches;

---

[23] Militia Department, *Dress Regulations for the Officers of the Canadian Militia*, (Ottawa: S.E. Dawson, 1907), as described in David Ross and René Chartrand, *Canadian Militia Dress Regulations 1907: Illustrated, with amendments to 1914*, Saint John: The New Brunswick Museum, 1977, paragraphs 134 – 152 as amended in General Order 2/1912, (pp. 99 - 102).

[24] Ibid. As amended in General Order 2/1912.

[25] General Order 2/1912.

[26] Militia Department, page 44 – 45 as amended in General Order 2/1912.

[27] Ibid. As amended in General Order 2/1912.

[28] Ibid. Paragraph 145.

width of plate 3 ½ inches."[29] The colouring of the Regimental badge is the same as described in ARTICLE 9402 - HELMET AND PLUME.

Figure 70 – Officer's Full Dress Waist Belt with Sword Slings (top) and Shoulder Belt (Bottom)

2.   Officers' sword slings are "gold lace 1 inch wide, morocco leather lining, and edging of the same colour as the facings [myrtle green]."[30] The sword slings are attached to the waist belt.

3.   The officers' shoulder belt is "gold lace [with maple leaf pattern], not less than 2 ¼ inches or more than 2 ½ inches in width, with the same lining and edging as the sword slings; gilt buckle, tip, and slide of regimental pattern." [31] The shoulder belt is worn over the left shoulder.

4.   The pouch at the back of the officers' shoulder belt is "black leather, with gold embroidered edging around the top; solid silver flap, 7 ½ inches long and 2 ¾ inches deep, engraved round the edges. Silver loops and stud."[32] The pouch bears the same bimetal regimental badge as the waist belt plate.

5.   The soldiers' belts and slings used by the Strathcona Mounted Troop today are similar to those described above, but they are made of white leather. The pouch is a black leather pouch with the brass letters "E II R" on the flap and the waist belt buckle is the same as described in ARTICLE 9300 - BLACK WEB BELT AND PISTOL HOLSTER. Pistol holsters are no longer used as part of the ceremonial dress.

ARTICLE 9405 - GAUNTLETS

The gauntlets for Full Dress are made of white leather with white patent leather cuffs.[33]

ARTICLE 9406 - BOOTS AND SPURS

1.   During its early years in South Africa, the Regiment popularized a riding boot that eventually became known as the "Strathcona Boot." The Slater Shoe Company of Montreal produced the field boot,

---

[29] General Order 2/1912.
[30] Militia Department, paragraph 144.
[31] Ibid. Paragraph 148.
[32] Ibid. Paragraph 149.
[33] Ibid. Paragraphs 150 and 346.

which was provided to the Regiment when it was raised in 1900. The boot was different than other riding boots by its laced instep. Strathcona Boots were later adopted by the North West Mounted Police in 1901 and are worn by the Royal Canadian Mounted Police to this day.

2.   In 1907 and later, however, the regulation boot for mounted officers when on mounted duties was described as the butcher boot, a riding boot that was worn with most orders of dress, including Full Dress. "The height [of the butcher boot] will depend upon the length of the leg. The boot should reach to about 4 inches from the top of the knee. The leg of the boot should be jacked sufficiently to prevent it sinking. A spur rest is fixed 2 inches above the top edge of the hell to keep the spur horizontal…. When dismounted. - Wellington boots with boxes for spurs [were worn]."[34] The spurs worn on butcher boots were Jack spurs with straps, buckles and chains while the spurs worn with Wellington boots were swan-neck spurs.

3.   When the Regiment resurrected the Ceremonial Mounted Troop in 1974 a variation of the Strathcona Boot was chosen and adopted as the footwear for the Full Dress uniform of the Mounted Troop. The boots used by the Mounted Troop today are black, knee boots with laced insteps. They are sloped at the back, reaching in front to four inches from the top of knee and at the back to the top of the calf. A spur rest is located two inches above the top edge of the heel. The spurs worn with the Mounted Troop boot are Jack spurs with straps and buckles. The spurs are designed to be used with chains; however these are no longer in use.

ARTICLE 9407 - <u>CEREMONIAL BADGES OF RANK</u>

1.   The badges of rank for ceremonial dress shall be as follows:

    a.   The rank badges for officers will be embroidered pips and crowns of silver on gold-laced shoulder straps.[35]

    b.   Warrant officers and non-commissioned members will wear appropriate gold-embroidered badges of rank on a backing of scarlet on the right sleeve only as follows:

        (1)   the bottom of the Chief Warrant Officers' (coat of arms), master warrant officers' (wreath and crown) and warrant officers' (crown) badges of rank will be ten inches from the bottom of the cuff; and

        (2)   Non-commissioned officers will wear the appropriate chevrons. The distance from the shoulder seam to the top inside point of the chevron is five inches.

<center>SECTION 5 - <u>OTHER ORDERS OF DRESS</u></center>

ARTICLE 9500 - <u>GENERAL</u>

This section must be read in conjunction with applicable articles in SECTION 2 - <u>REGIMENTAL DEVICES</u> for each order of dress.

ARTICLE 9501 - <u>CANADIAN ARMED FORCES SERVICE DRESS</u>

1.   The current service dress regulations are detailed in the Canadian Armed Forces Dress Instructions. This article serves to identify the regimental standard that shall be observed for those items

---

[34] Ibid. Paragraph 4.
[35] Ibid. Paragraph 2.

of Canadian Armed Forces dress described as optional in the Canadian Armed Forces Dress Instructions. For all orders of dress other ranks will wear the standard issue leather-band black beret or they may purchase an equivalent style beret.

2.   DEU 1. Officers and Chief Warrant Officers shall wear the issue black oxford shoes (not boots) for all orders of DEU 1, less DEU 1B Full Dress described above. Officers and Chief Warrant Officers will wear black gloves when on parade – see ARTICLE 9208 - BLACK GLOVES.

3.   DEU 2. There are no additional differences to those described in ARTICLE 9502 - Mess Dress.

4.   DEU 3. Officers and Chief Warrant Officers shall wear the issue black oxford shoes (not boots) for all orders of DEU 3. In addition, officers and Chief Warrant Officers shall wear the Canadian Armed Forces-issue service dress tie in DEU 3C (Sweater) order of dress.

ARTICLE 9502 - MESS DRESS

1.   There are two orders of mess dress currently authorized by the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps: the standard mess dress jacket is scarlet doeskin with black facings (Mess Dress Number 2) and the summer or tropical mess dress jacket is white linen (Mess Dress Number 2A). The black mess dress waistcoat is only worn with the scarlet jacket for all ranks. The regimental cummerbund is worn with the white mess dress jacket or may be worn with the scarlet jacket during the summer. It should be noted that either the scarlet or white jacket is authorized wear for summer occasions.

2.   Both orders of mess dress are worn with black overalls (vice trousers) with 1 ¾-inch yellow stripes, wing-tipped collared shirt, hand-tied square-end black bow tie, and highly shone Wellington boots with nickel- spur boxes and spurs. Officers are expected to hand tie their black bow ties, and are not to wear hooked bow ties. Strathcona officers have historically worn straight-shank spurs with mess kit (the swan neck spurs were reserved for patrol order of dress)[36] . However, Canadian Armed Forces Dress Regulations do authorize swan neck spurs as the standard spurs. In lieu of the overalls, lady officers and female other ranks may, if they wish, wear the standard Canadian Armed Forces mess dress skirt (black) with a ⅞-inch yellow stripe along each side of the slit opening.

3.   The shoulder straps are scarlet (white for the 2B order). The badges of rank are as described in ARTICLE 9206 - Badges of Rank. The Surgeon-style cuffs are black (white for the 2B order) and without buttons. The cuffs for junior officers and other ranks are plain while those of senior officers are embellished with a "crow's foot" in gold braid.

4.   Plain gold shirt studs and cuff links are worn with a wing-tipped collared white shirt. It is acceptable that the regimental badge be mounted or inscribed on the cufflinks and studs, provided that the design and quality are approved by the Second in Command. Miniature orders, medals and decorations and specialist badges are also worn with mess dress. In recognition of the Regiment's alliance with the Lancers, Strathconas may wear a watchcase and chain in the fob of the mess dress waistcoat.

5.   During the winter the current Canadian Armed Forces overcoat, with appropriate shoulder slip-ons may be worn over the mess dress. Black gloves may also be worn.

6.   The beret is never worn with the mess dress. The side hat is obsolete mess dress that members

---

[36] *Dress Instructions for Officers of the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps*, Paragraph B5.67.

are still authorized to wear if purchased while still authorized dress[37]. The side hat is the same design as the field service cap, which is no longer in service. The side hat has a myrtle green top with scarlet flap and sides. The top and front edges are adorned with yellow cord for other ranks. The hat is adorned in gold braid for officers. Senior officers' side hats will have additional gold braid on the edges of the scarlet. Lieutenant Colonels' side hats will also have additional gold braid on the edge of the peak. The front of the side hat will be closed with two regimental buttons.

ARTICLE 9503 - <u>REGIMENTAL BLAZER</u>

1.   The Regimental blazer is made of myrtle green cloth and is a single-breasted, single or double-vented garment. The blazer is closed with two 30-ligne buttons on the front closure. The cuff is of the open type with two 26-ligne buttons placed in proper buttonholes.[38]

2.   The Regimental gold-bullion embroidered Regimental badge (8.5 centimetres high and 7.5 centimetres wide) is worn on the left breast pocket of the blazer. The blazer is worn with grey flannels, the style being at the discretion of the wearer, a white shirt, the regimental tie, black shoes and black socks. Regimental ascots are not worn with the blazer.

Figure 71 – Gold-bullion Embroidered Regimental Badge

Figure 72 – Regimental Blazer

ARTICLE 9504 - <u>REGIMENTAL COVERALLS</u>

        Black or gray coveralls are used for tactical training, routine maintenance and ceremonial occasions. Coveralls are worn with the black beret and black combat boots with bloused pant legs. As described in ARTICLE 9206 - <u>BADGES OF RANK</u>, the miniature metal rank insignia for non-commissioned members shall be attached to the point of the right collar of the regimental coveralls. For ceremonial occasions the coveralls are also worn with the black web belt described in ARTICLE 9300 - <u>BLACK WEB BELT AND PISTOL HOLSTER</u>.

 ARTICLE 9505 – <u>PIPES AND DRUMS DRESS</u>

        Specifics on dress for the Pipes and Drums can be found in ARTICLE 3602 <u>BAND DESCRIPTION</u>.

---

[37] *Canadian Armed Forces Dress Instructions*. 6B-1
[38] *Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Dress Instructions*, Part 2, p. 15.

SECTION 6 - <u>FORMER ORDERS OF DRESS AND ACCOUTREMENTS</u>

ARTICLE 9600 - <u>GENERAL</u>

Many items of Regimental dress have become obsolete through changes in Canadian Armed Forces dress instructions and circumstances, and are no longer worn. When permitted, however, these items by virtue of their uniqueness and often their practicality contributed significantly to regimental identity and unit esprit. The descriptions of some of the items of dress and former regimental quirks are included here both for historical interest and in the event that they are used for historical purposed in the future.

Figure 73 – Officer's Patrol Tunic

ARTICLE 9601 - <u>UNDRESS/PATROLS</u>

1.   The Patrol Jacket Universal was worn as by most branches as a walking out dress as early as the 1880s and remained a common form of dress until unification in the late 1960s. This article is included here as a matter of history The differences between the branches and ranks were evident not only with the different cap badges, collar badges and buttons used, but in the colour of facings, style of head dress, type of embroidery, etc. The Regiment's patrols were made of blue serge material and designed as follows:

"… full in chest cut with broad back, slits at sides, five regulation buttons down the front, length of skirts as for tunic [The skirts of tunics for officers 5 feet 9 inches in height will be: for staff, cavalry and rifle regiments – 9 inches. For all others – 10 inches]. Two breast patch pockets outside, 6 3/4 inches wide, 8 inches deep, the top edge of pocket in line with the second button, with three pointed flap, small regulation button and hole loose plait on rear side of pocket, two similar outside patch pockets below, with three pointed flap. Two inside breast pockets up and down hole and button, two inside skirt pockets, with hole and button. Black alpaca lining. Shoulder straps of same material as the garment, shaped for shoulder chain in mounted corps, and colour of regimental facings, fastened with a small regulation button. Steel shoulder chains with badges of rank, for mounted corps, see appendix [gilt or gilding metal]. Stand-up collar from 1 1/4 to 1 3/4 inches high. Sleeves with pointed cuffs, six inches high, with 2 1/4 inch slit, two small buttons and button holes."[39]

2.   The Forage Cap Universal Pattern was worn with patrols. The forage cap was:

"blue cloth… with three cloth welts, 3 1/4 inches total depth, diameter across the top 9 1/4 inches, for a cap fitting 21 3/4 inches in circumference, the top to be 1/8 inch larger or smaller in diameter for every 1/4 inch the cap may vary in size above or below the before mentioned standard, e.g., a cap 22 1/4 inches in circumference, diameter across the top 9 1/2 inches;…. The sides to be made in four pieces, and to be 1 1/2 inches deep between the welts; a cloth band 1 3/4 inches wide placed between the lower welts. The cap set up on a band of stiff leather, or other material, 1 3/4 inches deep, but not stiffened up in front. Chin strap for all officers to be made of black patent leather 3/8 inches wide buttoned on to two 1/2 inch buttons placed immediately behind the corners of the peak. The peak to droop at an angle of 45 degrees, and to be two inches deep in the middle when worn with embroidery, and 1

Figure 74 – Non-Commissioned Member's Forage Cap

Figure 75 – Field Officer's Forage Cap

---

[39] Militia Department, paragraph 53.

3/4 inches when plain. White covers may be worn in hot weather.

"Peaks will be embroidered as follows: General Officers – Embroidered all round with maple leaf embroidery. Field officers on the staff of the Militia – Maple leaf embroidery on front edge only. Field officers on the cadre of a unit or department (except rifles) – Plain gold embroidery 3/4 inch wide…. All other officers – Plain peak.

"Distinctions as follows: - General officers and Officers on the staff of the Militia – Scarlet band. Cavalry – Bands and welts of the colour of the facings [myrtle green]."[40]

The regimental badge was worn on the front of the forage cap.

3.   The trousers, belts and slings, and boots for undress order of dress are the same as those used in full dress (see ARTICLE 9401 - Tunic and Overalls, ARTICLE 9404 – <u>BELTS AND SLINGS</u> and ARTICLE 9406 – <u>BOOTS AND SPURS</u>).

ARTICLE 9602 - <u>REGIMENTAL LANYARD</u>

1.   The origin of lanyards is not exactly clear. It appears that lanyards were worn since the 1700's if not earlier. Allegedly, lanyards were used originally either for foraging expeditions to attach hay to the saddle or to hobble horses to prevent them from wandering. When these cords were not in use they were draped over the shoulder as a convenient way of carrying them.

2.   The history of the use of lanyards in the Regiment is also unclear but pictures show khaki pistol lanyards in use in the First World War. In 1923, a Regimental order directed that all "Lanyards Drab" were to be returned to Quartermaster stores and, in future, warrant officers and non-commissioned officers would attach their whistles to "Lanyards White" which would be worn on the right shoulder. Shortly thereafter, all other ranks in the Regiment were shown wearing plaited white lanyards, which could be purchased from the kit shop for twenty-five cents. When the Regiment had horses, other ranks carried a hoof hook attached to the lanyard.

3.   The white lanyard was eventually replaced by a red and green cord, which was soon replaced by a red and green plaited lanyard, except for officers. Officers continued to wear the red and green cord. At this time the lanyard was transferred to the left shoulder for officers (to make it easier to grasp the whistle on the lanyard with the right hand, leaving the left hand free to handle the reins). Officers wore lanyards on the left shoulder while other ranks wore them on the right shoulder on service dress jackets, battle dress and field summer dress.

4.   About 1949, all ranks adopted the braided lanyard. The Regiment continued to wear the lanyard until dress regulations of the unified forces prohibited their use.

5.   The pattern of the regimental lanyard "is a green cord lanyard, length approximately 28 ½-inches, spare braided with scarlet cord, commencing 2 ¾-inches from one end and continuing to a length of approximately 23 ½-inches, ending in a whipped knot."[41]

---

[40] Ibid. Paragraph 9.

[41] *Dress Instructions for Officers of the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps*, Paragraph B5.45.

ARTICLE 9603 - OFFICERS' RIDING CROP

1.   Over the decades, the officers and men of the Regiment have carried a variety of accoutrements such as sticks, coshes, and crops. These derived, in part, from the Regiment's cavalry and mounted heritage, in part, as a mark of uniqueness and identity, and, in part, as is so often quoted by those that carried them, the need to occupy the hands. Although not universal, the most recent such device was the riding crop. Officers and the Regimental Sergeant Major carried the crop with service dress, summer service dress, battle dress and field summer dress when not on field training.

2.   The crop is the JW Barrington & Son-type riding crop Number 55 with modifications. It is a hunting crop of brown plaited leather. The crop has a Stag horn handle at right angles to the crop proper with cuttings on both the upper and under sides for a firmer grip. The handle extends out approximately five inches. There is a plain silver band two inches long mounted approximately two inches from the joint of the bone handle down the crop. The crop is covered with brown woven leather, ending in an open keeper (leather loop) secured to the bottom of the crop by cord binding. The overall length of the crop is approximately twenty-four inches. The length of the plaited leather section is not less than 11 ½-inches and not more than 12 inches. The cord binding extends upward from the base of the crop for three inches. The circumference of the open keeper is eleven inches.[42]

3.   It is acceptable for a miniature Regimental badge and/or the owner's name to be inscribed on the silver band.

Figure 76 – Officers' Riding Crop

4.   The crop was carried not at its point of balance but by the bone handle. Drill for the riding crop is recorded in ANNEX M - DRILL WITH CROP, CANE OR PACE STICK.

ARTICLE 9604 - SAM BROWNE BELT

1.   Regimental officers wore the Sam Browne belt, with whistle and bucket, with appropriate orders of dress between 1909 and when the Canadian Armed Forces uniform was introduced just after unification.

2.   The Sam Browne Belt (Sealed 24 April 1900):

"…consists of a waist-belt, two shoulder-belts, a sword-frog, an ammunition-pouch, and a pistol case; the whole made of brown bridle leather. The waist-belt is 2 1/8 inches wide, and of a length to suit the wearer. It is fitted with a double-tongued brass buckle, and has four brass dees for the shoulder-belts (two at the back, and one on each side), a running loop for the free end of the belt, two brass rings for attachment of the frog, and a hook for hooking it up.

"The waist-belt is lined with faced basil. The shoulder-belts are plain straps (crossed at

---

[42] Ibid. Paragraph 4.57.

the back through a loop). They are 1 ¼-inch wide. The patterns are about 35 inches long over all, without chapes. The length however may be varied to suit the wearer. They are fitted with studs for attachment to the dees at the back of the waist-belt. A chape, with stud and a buckle, is provided for each, for attachment to the dees at the sides of the belt. The strap over the left shoulder need not be worn, except when it is required to support the revolver.

"The frog is fitted with two straps, which are to be passed through the dees on the lower part of the belt. The frog has a small brass dee on the top, to go over the hook on the belt when 'hooking up.' A stud is fitted on the front of the frog, upon which the tab of the scabbard support is fastened. A small strap for steadying the sword hilt is attached to the rear dee for the frog, holes being made in the strap to pass over a stud on the belt above the front dee.

"The ammunition-pouch and pistol-case are fitted with loops on the back for attachment to the waist-belt; also with stud and tab fastenings. The loop on the pistol-case is furnished with a small brass hook, which should pass through a hole to be made for the purpose in the belt to suit the wearer in order to secure the case and keep it in position."[43]

3.   The sword knot undress used with the Sam Browne belt is the universal pattern of brown leather. "It is a plain strap made of pigskin, best of bridle leather, or calf, the ends being secured into an 'acorn' having plaited leather covering. It is furnished with a sliding keeper. Length of strap in the double, 15 inches; width of strap, ⅝-inch; length of acorn, 2 ½-inches."[44]

4.   The scabbard (sealed 19 June 1902) is:

"…built up with two strips of wood, grooved to receive blade of sword; they are butted and glued together. The strips of wood are covered with brown leather, sewn down one side. A raised rib is formed below the locket by a piece of packing between wood and leather.

"The body is made entirely of brown leather, including the clasps. The supporter is attached with buttons on the front of belt frog or the frog on shoe pocket and so prevents either upward movement of the scabbard."[45]

5.   The sword drill when wearing the Sam Browne belt is somewhat different than with slung swords. The drill can be found at ARTICLE K103 - SWORD DRILL WITH SAM BROWNE BELT.

ARTICLE 9605 - SHOULDER BELT

1.   The shoulder belt is the same as described in SECTION 4 - CEREMONIAL DRESS above.

2.   In addition to wearing the shoulder belt with Full Dress, the shoulder belt was worn with patrol and white patrol dress on the left shoulder, under the shoulder chain.

3.   The high cost of the shoulder belt and infrequent use resulted in it ceasing to be worn in the Regiment in the years just prior to the unification of the Canadian Armed Forces.

---

[43] Militia Department, Appendix VI.
[44] Ibid.
[45] Ibid. Appendix V.

ARTICLE 9606 - <u>STABLE BELT</u>

1.   There is no record of when stable belts were introduced into the Regiment and under which authority, but there is evidence of their use during the Korean conflict. Like many accoutrements, stable belts originated in the British Army and were adopted by Canadian units. The belt was worn predominately with bush style dress but has been worn with the lesser orders of dress over the years. Stable belts are no longer worn except for ceremonial purposes.

2.   The stable belt is made of a wide weave canvas cloth 7.4 centimetres wide. The belt pattern consists of three stripes running lengthways, the upper and lower being 2.7 centimetres wide and myrtle green in colour while the centre stripe which is two centimetres wide is scarlet in colour. The belt has a nickel slide to permit adjustment and is cinched with two leather straps, which run off the same leather mounting. They are secured with two nickel buckles.

Figure 77 – Regimental Stable Belt

ARTICLE 9607 - <u>COLLAR BADGE ON BADGES OF RANK</u>

1.   In 1915, the Regiment and The Royal Canadian Dragoons were formed into an infantry battalion and given a section of trenches to hold. During their stay, which lasted until early 1916, the units wore a regimental collar badge on the badges of rank as a mark of distinction. Although the origin of this custom is unknown, the practice of wearing a collar badge on the badge of rank is universal among British cavalry regiments.

2.   In 1931, warrant officers and non-commissioned officers of Canadian cavalry units were formally authorized to wear metal regimental badges on or about the badge of rank on their service dress jackets.[46] The badges were worn on the right sleeve. As with the 17/21st Lancers, regimental warrant officers wore a Regimental Collar Badge below the rank while non-commissioned officers wore the badge on the rank chevrons. Non-commissioned officers of The Royal Canadian Dragoons traditionally wore their badges above the chevrons. This custom remained until unification.

---

[46] General Order 65/1931, 1931. Also referred to in R. Cunniffe, p. 171.

CHAPTER 10 - <u>MESSES</u>

SECTION 1 - <u>GENERAL</u>

ARTICLE 10100 - <u>INTRODUCTION</u>

1.   The regulations and procedures governing the operation of Messes are contained in Canadian Forces Publication 262.[1] The purpose of this chapter is to amplify those instructions and to detail the procedures and practices as they apply to the Regiment. The following articles also apply both to the Officers' Mess and the Warrant Officers' and Sergeants' Mess unless otherwise stated.

2.   The present status of the Mess has been built up over the years and the knowledge of its history and purpose aids in appreciating the importance of our messes in service life today. They originated in the dark days when subalterns were financially unable to keep company with their superior officers. For the sake of companionship, convenience and economy, it evolved that all officers should eat and drink together. To avoid having all expenses fall upon the junior officer's pocket, every officer was obliged to pay a portion of his daily subsistence money. As well as enabling yesteryear's junior officer to avoid overburdening himself with expenses, this practice afforded him the opportunity to learn mess etiquette under the guidance of more experienced individuals. Over time, the concept and practices which evolved in Officers' Messes, were adapted with some modifications to Warrant Officers' and Sergeants' Messes.

Figure 78 – Commanding Officer's Table, Officers' Mess (Calgary 1991)

3.   Today the mess has two basic functions. They are:

        a.   to provide a home for all mess members but particularly those living-in; and

        b.   to provide the centre of social life for all members.

---

[1] *Canadian Forces Mess Administration*, (Ottawa: Department of National Defence, 1984).

4.   As a result of the 1996/7 consolidation of many 3 Division units at the Edmonton Garrison, individual units were no longer permitted to have their own messes. Both the Regimental Officers' Mess and the Warrant Officers' and Sergeants' Mess became part of their respective combined garrison messes. Although the Regiment did not have sole use of its new messes, most of the Regimental customs from Calgary were maintained; some customs, however, were slowly adapted to reflect the Regiment's new surroundings and activities at Steele Barracks.

Figure 79 – Moreuil Wood Mess Dinner at the Fairmont Hotel Macdonald, 2015

ARTICLE 10101 - <u>CONDUCT</u>

1.   In order for messes to function successfully, all members must conduct themselves in an exemplary manner and generate a spirit of co-operation. Strathcona officers are expected to deport themselves as 'officers and gentlemen/lady' especially when there are guests in the mess. When guests, serving but especially civilian, are present, it is expected that officers will welcome them to the mess, offer a beverage (normally, with his permission, on the PMC's chit), and introduce him/her to other members in the mess. At no time should a civilian guest be left standing alone. The Adjutant and Senior Subaltern have an important role to play in ensuring that this Strathcona tradition is maintained as it is a hallmark in our extraordinary reputation for hospitality. Introductions do not present the difficulties alleged by some. The main points to remember are:

      a.   A gentleman is introduced to a lady;

      b.   A single lady to a married lady;

      c.   A younger person to an older person; and

      d.   A junior to a senior.

3.   On guest nights, one's private guests should be introduced to the Commanding Officer as early in the evening as is convenient to the Commanding Officer. At formal occasions, although every member of the Mess is a host in many respects, the Commander or the Commanding Officer and his wife act as formal host and hostess and introductions are accordingly affected when guests are presented on arrival. At other formal occasions, although the Commander or the Commanding Officer and his wife may not be the host and hostess, it is only courteous to take one's guest to them and make the necessary introductions.

4.   Living-in members must remember that certain rooms and corridors are in frequent use by all members and often by guests. It is necessary, therefore, that the dress of all officers outside of their own living quarters be appropriate for the portion of the mess they intend to use. Similarly those individuals who live-out must ensure they are suitably attired when in the mess and respect the rights and privileges of the living-in members.

5.   All members are responsible for the behaviour of their guests in the mess. Guests are expected to comply with the rules of the mess as if they were members. In the same light, officers' wives and female guests are expected to respect mess customs with respect to dress. New wives are encouraged to seek advice and clarification from other wives. The CO's and PMC's wives are always willing to assist in clarification of tradition and dress.

6.   On joining the Mess you should make a point of introducing yourself and your companion to the

Commanding Officer, the President of the Mess Committee (PMC), the Squadron Commanders and their ladies at the earliest opportunity. Similarly, on all occasions in the Mess ensure you pay your respects to any guests, the Commanding Officer or senior officer present, the PMC and your Squadron Commander.

7.   If the Commanding Officer or an officer of corresponding or higher rank enters any room while you are seated, always stand up. This small gesture is a universal custom and officers from any service will note your bad manners if you fail to do so.

8.   In a well-run mess, the abolition of rank badges has no influence on the correct behaviour of its members. There is no requirement for parade square formality in the mess. Servility or fawning upon senior officers by subalterns is to be avoided. Junior officers will display the ordinary courtesy due their superiors while simultaneously maintaining an informal, comfortable atmosphere throughout any conversation. There may be certain officers whom you find difficult to understand or like. Do not let this feeling in any way impair your good manners. Civility costs nothing and is most certainly a good insurance against hard feelings.

ARTICLE 10102 - <u>MEDALS</u>

Full dress medals are normally not worn in Canadian Armed Forces messes. Medals are only worn in the mess during Remembrance Day and New Year's Day Levees. Miniature medals may be worn in the mess with the appropriate order of dress at any time (i.e. mess kit, black tie).

ARTICLE 10103 - <u>USE OF MESS DURING WORKING HOURS</u>

Except for the mess staff and committee members, members are frowned upon for using the mess during working hours for purposes other than coffee breaks, normal meals, and official conferences. Although it was especially forbidden to use the mess as an office area or a place for routine conferences or for meetings, the messes are now frequently used as conference facilities at Steele Barracks due to the unique circumstances of the combined messes.

ARTICLE 10104 - <u>MESS BILLS</u>

Mess bills are payable on the 15th of the month following the billing month. Arrangements may be made to have your mess bill deducted directly from your pay. An officer who fails to pay his mess bill by the specified date brings discredit upon himself and will be approached by the PMC or the Adjutant.

ARTICLE 10105 - <u>MESS CONSTITUTION</u>

All junior officers arriving at the Regiment should acquaint themselves with the Mess Constitution. The Mess Secretary holds the constitution in the mess office which may be borrowed for reading.

ARTICLE 10106 - <u>MESS COMMITTEE AND STAFF</u>

1.   The primary members of the Mess Committee are:

        a.   The President of the Mess Committee (PMC);

        b.   The Vice-President of the Mess Committee (VPMC);

        c.   The Mess Secretary;

      d.   The Housing Member; and

      e.   The Entertainment Officer.

2.   Duties and responsibilities are outlined in the Mess Constitution. The Mess Staff consists of the Bar Manager, Bar Stewards, waitresses and cooks. Complaints concerning the mess are only conveyed to the PMC, Mess Secretary or the Housing Member, never directly to the Mess Staff. 6. The role of the President of the Mess Committee (PMC) is described in ANNEX B of the *Mariner Room Constitution and By-Laws*. In addition to these duties, the PMC shall also take charge of the conduct of mess dinners as described in SECTION 2 – MESS FUNCTIONS.

<div align="center">SECTION 2 – MESS FUNCTIONS</div>

ARTICLE 10200 - MESS DINNERS

1.   The mess dinner originated in the 1700s as an opportunity for the members to get together on a friendly but formal occasion. That same purpose applies today. A Mess Dinner is not a function where games are carried out such as: writing notes, tying napkins, throwing nuts or fruits. Such antics could create an unfavourable impression on guests who may be present and only create embarrassment for the Commanding Officer, PMC or other officers who may be hosting dignitaries at the head table.

2.   Attendance at a Mess Dinner is compulsory unless excused by the Commanding Officer or the President of the Mess Committee (PMC). Normally, the dress is mess kit, and for civilian members or guests, evening dress or dinner jacket, unless otherwise noted.

3   If there is a receiving line, all officers and their wives, or lady guests, are required to pass through and pay their respects to the Commanding Officer and his wife as well as Guests of Honour. There are no exceptions for single officers without escorts.

4.   The following traditions apply at Regimental mess dinners:

      a.   sherry is normally offered as a pre-dinner drink;

      b.   15 and 5 minute pre-dinner tunes from the piper provide members and their guests with opportunities for health breaks. Guests should be encouraged to take advantage of such occasions.

      c.   the head table is mustered by the PMC and piped into the dining room. Care is made to ensure that the members are not waiting excessively long for the arrival of the head table.

      d.   once grace (non-denominational) has been said, members and guests shall be seated at the same time as the head table. This recognizes the family aspect of the dinner and that the sizes of the head table chairs require a longer time to occupy;

      e.   it is imperative that members advise their guests of the Regimental traditions before the dinner and especially concerning the toasts in order to avoid any embarrassment .A Mess Dinner is a strictly formal function and **NO ONE** starts eating before the Commanding Officer. The dinner consists of the appropriate wine accompanying several courses;

f.   while it has become fashionable in some units to have a 'health break' between the main meal and toasts, it is not a traditional Strathcona practice. Mess dinners should be conducted in a pleasing but smartly fashion normally not exceeding two hours from the Padre's grace to the departure of the head table guests. Departure from the mess dinner for extraordinary reasons can only be with the PMC's permission. It is not customary for members to stand during the dinner.

g.   it is forbidden to drink from the port glass until the Loyal Toast has been offered;

h.   while some regiments and services have customs regarding the physical passing of the port decanter (on/off the table), the Strathcona's have no such restriction. Port decanters may be placed on the table when passed to the left. If a guest to an officer's left appears to be unsure of the protocol and/or if the guest is a lady, it is acceptable to pour the port into their glass;

i.   the PMC and the VPMC shall stand when proposing and responding to toasts;

j.   during toasts, all members stand to attention when music such as God Save the Queen is played. Port glasses may be held in the right hand during the playing if the member so chooses;

k.   the toasts at are normally made in priority (see Table 8). In appreciation of time and circumstances, the PMC may decide to foreshorten the number toasts to only the first three.

Table 10 – Mess Dinner Toasts

Toast[2]	PMC	Vice PMC	Members	Music
Loyal Toast[3]	"Mr[4] Vice, The Queen"	"Ladies and Gentlemen, The Queen"[5]	"The Queen" Senior officers may add 'God bless her'	God Save the Queen
Colonel-in-Chief	"Mr Vice, Our Colonel-in-Chief"	"Ladies and Gentlemen, His Royal Highness, Charles, Prince of Wales"	"The Prince of Wales"	None
Fallen Comrades	"Mr Vice, Our Fallen Comrades"	"Ladies and Gentlemen, Our Fallen Comrades"	"Our Fallen Comrades"	None
Allied Regiment	"Mr Vice, Our Allied Regiment"	"Ladies and Gentlemen, The Queen's Royal Lancers"	"The Queen's Royal Lancers"	None

---

[2] Toasts may be observed with port or water as the individual wishes.

[3] A-AD-200-000/AG-000, *The Honours, Flags and Heritage Structure of the Canadian Forces,* 12-2-1, states that "When an officer or other distinguished person is officially representing a country that is a member of the Commonwealth of Nations and that recognizes the Queen as its head of state, and that officer or person is entertained at a mess dinner, the Loyal Toast shall be to 'the Queen, Head of the Commonwealth' in lieu of 'Queen of Canada'."

[4] Mr, Miss or Madam Vice as appropriate.

[5] Mr. Vice's reply to the Loyal Toast should be in French only if francophone guests are in the mess.

The Polish 10th Armoured Brigade	"Mr Vice, the Polish toast"	"Ladies and Gentlemen, Chciałabym wznieść toast za Dziesiątą Brygadę Kawalerii Pancerney"[6]	"The Polish Brigade"	None

l.   Strathcona officers do not stand at their own mess dinners during the playing of the Regimental march but will stand when the march is played at other dinners/messes. Strathcona warrant officers and sergeants, however, do stand, as will visiting Strathcona officers, when the Regimental march is played at their mess dinners;

m.   the toast to fallen comrades is a solemn moment of reflection. In some units, in light of losses in Afghanistan, the toast is prodigiously long for a social event. Also, of late, some units have a vacant, set table as a reminder of the absence of fallen comrades. The Strathcona tradition for decades is to toast briefly but respectfully the fallen. In the Officers' Mess, there is no vacant table; we will always remember our fallen.

n.   Strathconas, except service support and specialist members, do not stand for any marches except when at another unit's mess dinner and then only when *The Soldiers of the Queen* is played. Service support and specialist members of the Regiment may stand for their own Branch march in addition to *The Soldiers of the Queen* if they wish;

o.   only Padres stand for the Chaplain Branch march;

p.   the Regimental March of The Queen's Royal Lancers, *Wellington's March*, shall be played after those of Canadian units represented at the dinner.[7]   Only Lancers, and not former exchange officers, stand for the march;

q   should a regimental march be played for which there is no member or guest present, then the PMC will stand for that march (and later offer a drink to the CO)

r.   following the regimental marches, it is customary that the Commanding Officer and Guest of Honour share a toast with the head Chef, Band Master and the Pipe Major (or senior piper who piped in the port before the toasts). The drink with the piper is served with the Regimental quaich and is toasted in Gaelic. "Slàinte" (pronounced 'Slan-ch', meaning good health) is given by the piper, to which the Commanding Officer replies "Slàinte mhaith" ('Slan-ch va, meaning good health to you). Once the drink is finished by both, each 'kisses' the bottom of the quaich; and

s.   in the Officers' Mess, speeches are not normally made at mess dinners. This respects Brigadier Harvey's dislike of speeches given after a long meal to an audience that has been drinking and is apt to be anxious to move on to other activities. Similarly, it should not be necessary to introduce members and guests at the head table. It is customary to have brief speeches and introductions in the reception/bar area prior to marching into dinner. When appropriate, levity in speeches is welcomed.

---

[6] See ARTICLE 2402 – <u>OTHER AFFILIATIONS</u>, para 5 for specifics on pronouncing this toast
[7] Canadian Forces Administrative Order 61-6 (Precedence) details the precedence of other marches.

ARTICLE 10201 - <u>TABLE MANNERS FOR FORMAL AND INFORMAL OCCASIONS</u>

1.   Posture - One should always sit in an erect position, never slouch or lounge in one's chair or prop the elbows on the table. When not occupied with one's knife and fork, the hands should rest in the lap. Elbows are kept close to the side at all times. The body should be approximately fifteen centimetres from the table.

2.   Drawing designs on the table cloth with knife and fork, crumbling of bread, beating a tune on the table with the silverware, playing with the wine glasses, etc are all in bad taste. Gentle manners and quietness in eating marks a well-bred person.

3.   Serviette - The table serviette is to be partly unfolded, not in view of those present, but on the lap, and laid flat across the knees. Never tuck it in front of your tunic. After the meal, the serviette is not folded, but laid carefully on the table.

4.   Silverware - The silverware is laid out in the order in which it is to be used, with the knives to the right of the plate and the forks to the left.

5.   How to use utensils - Soup is always taken from the side of the spoon. The motion of the spoon is always away from you, i.e. from front to back of the plate; never tip the plate to get the last drop, or blow on the soup to cool it.

6.   If consommé or bouillon is served in a double-handled cup, a teaspoon or bouillon spoon is used first. After part of the bouillon is consumed it is permissible to lift the cup to the lips with the right hand.

7.   A knife is held in the right hand, cutting edge down, with the index finger extended along the back of the blade. (Never cut bread with a knife; break the bread with the fingers.)

8.   The fork is held in the left hand, prongs down, to eat the food that the knife cuts. Vegetables may be eaten by holding the fork in the right hand, prongs up, or in the left hand, prongs down. In these cases, the knife is used to help place food on the fork.

9.   To indicate whether you have finished with a course, place the utensils as shown in the accompanying diagram:

MEALS NOT COMPLETED   **MEAL COMPLETED**
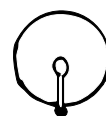
For desserts eaten with a spoon only, place utensils as for the soup course.

For desserts eaten with spoon and fork, place utensils as for the main course.

10.   Conversation - The well-bred person is careful not to speak with food in his mouth, or gesticulate with utensils in his hands. The conversation should be tactful, kind, responsive, brief and cheerful. Unpleasant topics should be avoided; nor should one implicate that anyone is ill-mannered. Controversial topics, such as religion, politics or women should, by common consent, be avoided.

11.   Additional Points - A well-bred guest never asks for anything which is not offered, such as, butter, vinegar or catsup, as this is a reflection on the dinner. Food should not, at any time, be piled up on

the fork. Lumps of sugar should not be taken from the bowl with the fingers. If tongs are not provided, a clean spoon should be used.

12.   Tea or coffee cups should not be suspended in the air, but raised to the lips, short sips being taken and the cup replaced in the saucer. A teaspoon is not used to taste the tea or coffee but only to stir it. To crook the little finger when lifting a cup looks ostentatious and affectation of any kind denotes bad manners. Saucers shall accompany cups.

13.   If, after looking over the menu, there are items you are uncertain about, ask your server any questions you may have. Answering your questions is part of the server's job. It is better to find out before you order that a dish is prepared with something you do not like or are allergic to than to spend the entire meal picking tentatively at your food. It is best to order foods that can be eaten with a knife and fork. Finger foods can be messy and are best left for informal dining.

14.   A host will generally suggest that your order be taken first; his or her order will be taken last. Sometimes, however, the server will decide how the ordering will proceed. Often, women's orders are taken before men's. As a guest, you should not order one of the most expensive items on the menu or more than two courses unless your host indicates that it is all right. If the host says, "I'm going to try this delicious sounding cheesecake; why don't you try dessert too," or "The prime rib is the specialty here; I think you'd enjoy it," then it is all right to order that item if you would like.

15.   If you need something that you cannot reach easily, politely ask the person closest to the item you need to pass it to you. For example, "After you have used them yourself, would you please pass me the salt and pepper?". If a piece of your silverware falls onto the floor, pick it up if you can reach it and let the server know you need a clean one. If you cannot reach it, tell the server you dropped a piece of your silverware and ask for a clean one.

16.   If you or someone you are dining with is left-handed, it is best for the left-handed person to sit at the left end of the table or at the head of the table. This arrangement helps ensure that everyone has adequate elbow room to eat comfortably.

17.   If food spills off your plate, you may pick it up with a piece of your silverware and place it on the edge of your plate. Never spit a piece of bad food or tough gristle into your napkin. Remove the food from your mouth using the same utensil it went in with. Place the piece of food on the edge of your plate. If possible, cover it with some other food from your plate.

ARTICLE 10202 - <u>REGIMENTAL DINING-IN</u>

1.   A Regimental dining-in is not a mess dinner, but many of the courtesies of mess dinners are followed. Normally they are not as formal as mess dinners and may not use a seating plan. There may, however, be a seating plan for the head table. Dress for a dining-in is normally informal (i.e. lounge or business suit).

2.   A dining-in is normally for Regimental officers and invited guests only. They are important occasions held to provide an opportunity for officers to socialize and they are frequently held in conjunction with other professional development.

ARTICLE 10203 –<u>DINING OUT OF FIELD GRADE OFFICERS</u>

        Upon retirement of a field grade officer, or former RSMs who have commissioned from the ranks and will retire as Captain or higher, it is tradition to have a dining out held as part of a mess dinner.

Generally, the CO or other senior officer whom is of acquaintance with the retiree will present a summary of their career.

ARTICLE 10204 - <u>MIXED MESS DINNERS</u>

1.   Since mess dinners are restricted to serving members and special guests, formal occasions where spouses and other guests attend, are called "mixed mess dinners." A number of confusing terms such as mixed dinner, mixed dining-in and ladies' dining-in have been used to describe a mixed mess dinner. Normally, the dress for a dining-in was patrols while it was mess kit for a mess dinner. As Commanding Officer, Lieutenant-Colonel Fred Harvey, VC, MC set the precedent when he authorized a mixed mess dinner in the spring of 1939 because he wanted to allow the ladies to take part in a formal mess dinner with the officers in mess kit. Accordingly, the term "mixed mess dinners" will be used in Strathcona messes.

2.   Mess dinner procedures apply to a mixed mess dinner. When entering the dining room, serving officers (male and female) will escort the guest (male or female) who is immediately to their right of their place in the seating plan. Contrary to past practices, ladies will be escorted to the washroom by the same person should they be required to leave during the dinner. Also, ladies are no longer expected to leave the dining room following the Loyal Toast as in past practice.

ARTICLE 10205 - <u>VISITS TO OTHER MESSES</u>

1.   Regimental mess members are expected to comply with the rules of any other mess they visit. Regimental quirks do not necessarily apply under these circumstances. It behoves the Strathcona to seek the regulations of the visited mess and to behave accordingly.

2.   No officer, warrant officer or sergeant shall visit the others' mess except in the line of duty or on occasions approved by the Commanding Officer and at the invitation of the respective Mess President. This same restriction applies for visits to the Junior Ranks' Club.

ARTICLE 10207 - <u>NEW YEAR'S DAY LEVEE</u>

This traditional gathering in the Messes is worth mentioning here. Officers will normally gather in the Mess to welcome many associates, retired military officers and influential members of the Edmonton community. The officers will normally travel in groups to visit all Messes in Edmonton during the course of the day. The dress will likely be DEU #2 with medals. The Levee is considered a <u>Parade</u>.

ARTICLE 10208 – <u>FORMER TRADITIONS</u>

A toast to The Royal Westminster Regiment was customary, but has not been done for many years. The toast was only done while a member of the Westies was present, and went as follows:

Table 11 – Former Toasts

Toast	PMC	Vice PMC	Members	Music
The Royal Westminster Regiment	"Mr Vice, The Royal Westminster Regiment"	"Ladies and Gentlemen, The Royal Westminster Regiment"	"The Westies"	None

SECTION 3 - <u>MESS PROPERTY</u>

ARTICLE 10300 - <u>TREATMENT OF MESS PROPERTY</u>

1.   Much of the history of the Regiment is found in the messes by virtue of the gifts and memorabilia they hold. In addition, most of this property is of considerable monetary and sentimental value. Consequently, misuse of or damage to mess property will not be tolerated.

2.   On occasion, minor damage may occur in the course of spirited fun. In such a case, it is understood that those causing the damage will be held financially responsible for it. Under no circumstances will the following items be touched during such spirited display regardless of the circumstances:

        a.   the Guidon or King's Colour;

        b.   Regimental silver; and

        c.   works of art.

ARTICLE 10301 - <u>CHAIRS</u>

1.   Each mess has a number of special chairs that have been presented over the years and are restricted in use. They are:

        a.   Officers' Mess:

            (1)   <u>Colonel of the Regiment's Chair</u>. Lieutenant-General W.A. Milroy, DSO, CD, presented the Colonel of the Regiment's chair to the Officers' Mess while he was the Colonel of the Regiment between 26 March 1971 and 11 November 1978. The chair is used exclusively by the incumbent Colonel of the Regiment;

            (2)   <u>Commanding Officer's Chair</u>. The Commanding Officer's chair, which was presented by Lieutenant-Colonel C.A. Greenleaf, Commanding Officer of the Regiment from 8 July 1956 to 2 September 1958, is used exclusively by the Commanding Officer. When the Commanding Officer is not present or is away on duty, the chair is not used;

            (3)   <u>Commander 1 Canadian Mechanized Brigade Group Chair</u>. Brigadier-General C. Milner OMM, CD presented the Commander's chair to the mess on 28 July 1987 when he relinquished his appointment as Brigade Commander. The chair is used as follows:

                (a)   Commander 1 Canadian Mechanized Brigade Group has overall authority for the use of the chair;

                (b)   in the absence of the Commander, the junior subaltern present has overall authority in delegating the use of the chair;

                (c)   during mess dinners, when the Commander is not attending, Mr. Vice may occupy the chair or permit the senior officer present to do so;

                (d)   when both the Commander and the junior subaltern are absent from a function other than mess dinners, the Senior Subaltern, or in his absence the Mess Manager, will permit the use of the chair as

appropriate; and

    (e)   the chair will be used during every function in the mess when there is a sit-down dinner; and

    (4)   Other Chairs. Previous Adjutants, Operations Officers, Maintenance Officers, Quartermasters, etc have donated other chairs to the Mess. Each of these chairs is adorned with plaque detailing the name of the chair.

  b.   Warrant Officers' and Sergeants' Mess:

    (1)   Regimental Sergeant Major's Chair. The Alberta Branch of the Regimental Association presented the Regimental Sergeant Major's chair to the Mess in 1988. The chair is reserved for the exclusive use of the Regimental Sergeant Major or, in his absence, the Master Warrant Officer acting in that capacity;

    (2)   Crested Chairs. The membership of the Mess purchased two crested chairs in 1988. They are reserved for guests of honour as determined by the Regimental Sergeant Major; and

    (3)   Commanding Officer's Chair. Lieutenant-Colonel K.T. Eddy, CD presented the Commanding Officer's chair to the Mess as a departure gift. The chair is "to be used by the CO, when present, or the junior sergeant."

<div align="center">SECTION 4 – REGIMENTAL MESSES</div>

ARTICLE 10400 – GENERAL

1.   There are four distinct messes contained within the Harvey Building. The Track Pad hosts troopers and corporals, the Green Point Lounge belongs to Master Corporals, the Sarcee Room is home to senior NCOs, and the Mariner Room is for the officers.

  a.   The Track Pad: located on the first floor of the Harvey Building opposite the Regimental gym. It currently acts as more of a rest area than a formal mess, however efforts are being made to change the atmosphere to something more akin to a mess. The Track Pad has a long history of dominating Regimental Sports Day;

  b.   The Green Point Lounge: located beside the Regimental Duty Centre. Annually, it hosts the Master Corporals' Golf Tournament. This tournament is held at the Hunters Green Golf Course and donates one hundred percent of all proceeds to a different non-profit charity each year;

  c.   The Sarcee Room: located on the second floor of the Harvey Building at the end of the North hallway. The Sarcee Room holds two mess dinners a year; one to commemorate the battle of Moreuil Wood and a joint mess dinner with the Mariner Room for the battle of Melfa River. The Sarcee Room has three bronze statuettes they display at every mess dinner. The first is of Lord Strathcona, the second is of a Strathcona trooper, and the third was a gift from the 17th/21st Lancers and is of one of their troopers; and

  d.   The Mariner Room: located opposite the Regimental Orderly Room and is named after Major Chris Mariner, who was accidentally killed during a training exercise in 1999. It is tradition for Strathcona Officers to donate a piece of silver or similar appropriate gift after an operational tour, whether at home or abroad. As a result, the Mariner Room has

acquired several pieces which are displayed during mess dinners and business luncheons. The Mariner Room hosts various dinners and luncheons throughout the year, the most prominent being the Moreuil Wood Dinner.

ANNEX A - LINEAGE OF THE REGIMENT

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)

Official Regimental Birthday: 1 July 1901
Raising of Strathcona's Horse: 1 February 1900

Cavalry School Corps
Established in Québec.
21 Dec 1883 (GO 13/1884) "**Royal**"
on 15 July 1887 (GO 13/1887)

(The Royal) School of Mounted Infantry and Mounted Infantry Company
Established in Winnipeg.
20 July 1885 (GO 21/1885) "**Royal**" on 15 July 1887 (GO 13/87)

Canadian Dragoons
Redesignated.
14 May 1892 (GO 16/1892)

The Royal School of Instruction and The Canadian Mounted Rifles Corps
Redesignated.
7 August 1891 (GO 15/1891)

"A" Troop Canadian Dragoons
Amalgamated. Redesignated.
27 June 1892 (GO 16/1892)

"B" Troop Canadian Dragoons
Amalgamated. Redesignated.
27 June 1892 (GO 29/1892)

Strathcona's Horse Special
Service in South Africa Raised 1
February 1900
(MO 26/1900)
Disbanded 9 March 1901

1ˢᵗ and 2ⁿᵈ Canadian Mounted Rifles
Special Service in
South Africa

The Royal Canadian Dragoons
24 May 1893 (Special GO 11 Aug 1893)

"A" Squadron The Royal Canadian Dragoons
Reorganized as Squadron. Localized in Toronto.
20 Aug 1893 (GO 55/1893)

"B" Squadron The Royal Canadian Dragoons
Reorganization as Squadron. Remained in Winnipeg.
2 June 1893 (GO 34/1893)

The Royal Canadian Dragoons
Localized in Toronto.
14 May 1901 (MO 110/1901)

Major T.D.B. Evans, CB, DSO and four officers of B Squadron The oyal
Canadian Dragoons (with 12 NCOs, 42 soldiers and 41 horses) were
transferred to A Squadron Canadian Mounted Rifles in Winnipeg.
1 July 1901 (GO 103/1901)

"A" Squadron Canadian Mounted Rifles
New Unit Established. Winnipeg.
1 July 1901 (MO 110/1901 & GO 102/1901)

The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles
Redesignated.
1 October 1903 (GO 153/1903)

Royal Banner
Presented
24 September 1904

Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)
Redesignated. "Name Altered."
1 October 1909 (GO 111/1909)

_____Name
Perpetuated

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)
Redesignated.
1 May 1911 (GO 68/1911)

Battle Honour
_____Awarded
16 December 1912
(GO 230/1912)

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)
Unit of the Reconstituted Permanent Force.
HQ & one squadron Calgary. One squadron in Winnipeg.
1 April 1919 (GO 27/1919)

2nd-2nd Armoured Regiment (Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)) RC Armd C Placed on
Active Service as Active Unit
1 September 1945 (GO 344/1945)

Localization. HQ Temporarily Transferred
from Calgary to Winnipeg.
10 September 1922 (MO 383/1922)

2nd Armoured Regiment (Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)) RCAC
Redesignated.
1 March 1946 (GO 138/1946)

2nd Armoured Regiment
(Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians))
Named to Post-war Permanent Force.
27 June 1946 (GO 158/1946)

Localization. HQ and B Squadron in Calgary.
A Squadron in Winnipeg.
1 April 1923 (MO 187/1923)

2nd Armoured Regiment (Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)) (CASF) RCAC
Disbandment of Active Unit.
1 May 1946 (GO 139/1946)

2nd Armoured Regiment
(Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)) RCAC
Redesignated.
16 October 1946 (GO 259/1946)

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) (2nd Armoured Regiment)
Redesignated.
2 March 1949 (CAO 76-2 Supplemental Issue Number 118/1949)

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)
Redesignated.
19 May 1958 (CAO 76-2 Part B Supplemental Issue Number 602/1958)

Localization. Edmonton.
15 August 1996

V.J. Fagnan

Legend

Lineage	_____
Perpetuation	__ __ __
Heritage	__ . . __ . .

ANNEX B - <u>LIST OF APPOINTMENTS</u>

ARTICLE B100 - <u>COMMANDING OFFICERS</u>

The Commanding Officers of the Regiment are detailed at Table 12. Photos of each Commanding Officer can be found in the Rogues Gallery in the hallway of Regimental Headquarters.

Table 12 –Commanding Officers

LCol S.B. (Sam) Steele, CB, MVO[1] Jan 1900 - Mar 1901	LCol C.W. Devey Feb 1935 - Dec 1938	LCol R.J. Graham, DSO, CD May 1954 - Aug 1956
Maj T.D.B. Evans, CB, DSO[2] Jul 1901 - Mar 1907	LCol F.M.W. (Fred) Harvey, VC, MC Dec 1938 - Jul 1940	LCol C.A. Greenleaf, MC, CD Aug 1956 - Aug 1958
Maj A.C. Macdonnell, DSO[3] Mar 1907 - Apr 1910	LCol N.A Gianelli Jul 1940 - Sep 1942	LCol G.R. Hale, DSO, CD Aug 1958 - Jun 1961
LCol S.B. (Sam) Steele, CB, MVO Apr 1910 - Apr 1912	LCol P.G. Griffin, DSO Oct 1942 - Jul 1944	LCol I. (Ian) MacD Grant, DSO, CD Aug 1961 - May 1964
LCol A.C. Macdonnell, DSO Apr 1912 - Dec 1915	LCol J.M. McAvity, DSO, MBE Jul 1944 - Nov 1945	LCol W.J. Brown, CD May 1964 - Jul 1966
LCol J.A. Hesketh, DSO Dec 1915 - Sep 1917	LCol F.E. White, DSO Nov 1945 - Jul 1946	LCol P.A. (Phil) Neatby, CD Aug 1966 - Jul 1968
LCol M. Docherty, DSO Sep 1917 - Dec 1917	Maj E.W.H. Berwick Jul 1946 - Jun 1947	LCol J.A.R. (René) Gutknecht, CD Aug 1968 - Jun 1970
LCol D.J. MacDonald Dec 1917 - Nov 1918	LCol A.G. (Gerry) Chubb, DSO Jun 1947 - May 1951	LCol P. H.C. (Pat) Carew, CD Jun 1970 - Jun 1970
LCol C. Gooday Nov 1918 - Aug 1919	LCol J.F. Merner May 1951 - May 1951	LCol R.D. Conover, CD Jul 1970 - Jun 1971
LCol D.J. MacDonald Aug 1919 - Sep 1924	Maj J.H. Larocque May 1951 - Jul 1951	LCol J.A. (Jim) Fox, OMM, CD Jul 1971 - Aug 1973
LCol C.E. Connolly, DSO Sep 1924 - Oct 1929	LCol D.N.D. (Des) Deane-Freeman, CD Jul 1951 - Jan 1954	LCol I.D.M. (Mark) Egener, CD Aug 1973 - Aug 1975
LCol L.F. Page, DSO Oct 1929 - Feb 1935	Maj C.M. McLean, DSO, ED Feb 1954 - May 1954	LCol J.L. (Jim) Ellard, CD Aug 1975 - Jun 1977

---

[1] Lieutenant-Colonel Steele commanded Strathcona's Horse in South Africa

[2] Major Evans was transferred from B Squadron The Royal Canadian Dragoons in Winnipeg, Manitoba to establish A Squadron Canadian mounted Rifles on 1 July 1901 as a new unit of the Permanent Force. The Regiment was later designated The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles in October 1903.

[3] Major MacDonell oversaw the alteration of the title of the Regiment from The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles to Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) in October 1909.

LCol W.K. (Bill) Megill, CD Jun 1977 - Jul 1979	LCol G.G. (Greg) Hug, CD Aug 1991 - Jul 1993	Maj S.G. (Scott) Long, CD Dec 2005 - Jun 2006
LCol D.L. (Ian) McNabb, CD Jul 1979 - Aug 1981	LCol R.S. (Ray) Wlasichuk, CD Aug 1993 - Jun 1995	LCol P.P.J. (Pascal) Demers, CD Jun 2006 - Jun 2008
LCol J.E. (John) Roderick, CD Aug 1981 - Jul 1983	LCol T.J. (Tim) Grant, CD Jun 1995 - Feb 1998	LCol D.A. (Derek) Macaulay, CD Jun 2008 - May 2010
LCol D.R.B. (Dave) Rogers, CD Jul 1983 - Aug 1985	LCol D.C. (Craig) Hilton, CD Feb 1998 - Jun 2000	LCol T.J. (Trevor) Cadieu, MSM, CD May 2010 - Jun 2012
LCol J.B. (John) Boileau, CD Aug 1985 - Jul 1987	LCol J. (Jim) Ellis, CD Jun 2000 - Jul 2002	LCol P.J. (Paul) Peyton, MSM, CD Jun 2012 - Jun 2014
LCol K.T. (Keith) Eddy, CD Jul 1987 - Jul 1989	LCol J. (Jamie) Cade, CD Jul 2002 - Jun 2004	LCol J. (Josh) Major, MSM, CD Jun 2014 -
LCol H.C. (Cam) Ross, CD Jul 1989 - Aug 1991	LCol P.J. Fleury, CD Jun 2004 - Dec 2005	

ARTICLE B101 - REGIMENTAL SERGEANTS MAJOR

The Regimental Sergeants Major are shown at Table 13. Photographs of each may be found in the Regimental Sergeant Major's Office in Regimental Headquarters.

Table 13 –Regimental Sergeants Major[4]

RSM F. Elliot[5] Feb 1900 – March 1900	SSM J. Graham[6] Apr 1903 – Aug 1903	RSM F. Tompkins Sep 1914 – Mar 1915
RSM E.J. Steele[7] Mar 1900 – Aug 1900	RSM J.R. Sparks[8] Aug 1903 – Nov 1909	RSM C.E. Connolly Mar 1915 – Aug 1915
RSM J. Hynes[9] Aug 1900 – Mar 1901	RSM M. Docherty Nov 1909 – Jan 1914	RSM D.C. Brown Aug 1915 – Jun 1916
SSM J.C. Page[10] Jul 1901 – Apr 1903	RSM F.C. Rush Jan 1914 – Sep 1914	RSM G.C. Brown Jun 1916 – Mar 1917

---

[4] Regimental Sergeant Major is an appointment not a rank. Additional research will be required to accurately reflect the rank of each Regimental Sergeant Major while they acted in that capacity.

[5] Served as Regimental Sergeant Major of Strathcona's Horse in South Africa.

[6] Served as Regimental Sergeant Major of A Squadron Canadian Mounted Rifles.

[7] Ibid.

[8] Served as Regimental Sergeant Major during the transition of the Regiment from A Squadron Canadian Mounted Rifles to The Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles in October 1903.

[9] Ibid.

[10] Warrant Officer Page was transferred from B Squadron The Royal Canadian Dragoons in Winnipeg, Manitoba with Major Evans when A Squadron Canadian Mounted Rifles was established on 1 July 1901.

RSM R.J. Brown Mar 1917 – Apr 1917	RSM D.E. MacDonald, CD May 1953 – Jan 1956	RSM L.H. Sutherland, CD Aug 1984 – Jul 1987
RSM G.W.T. Marsden Apr 1917 – Nov 1917	RSM E.G. Gaunt, CD Jan 1956 – Mar 1960	RSM C.H. Shadbolt, CD Jul 1987 – Jul 1990
RSM A. McCorquodale, DCM Dec 1917 – Apr 1918	RSM W.C. May, CD Mar 1960 – Oct 1963	RSM J.W. Chamberlain, MMM, CD Jul 1990 – Jun 1992
RSM J.S. Price, DCM, MM Apr 1918 – May 1918	RSM D.F. Eveleigh, CD Oct 1963 – Dec 1964	RSM J.G. Elliott, CD Jun 1992 – Jul 1993
RSM J.W. Tuckett May 1918 – Apr 1919	RSM T.N. Wertypora, CD Dec 1964 – Aug 1966	RSM P.J. Wonderham, MMM, CD Jul 1993 – Jun 1995
RSM W. Stilwell May 1919 – Jun 1920	RSM J.P. Searle, CD Sep 1966 – Jul 1968	RSM C.H. Hills, CD Jun 1995 – Jun 1998
RSM R. Richmond, MC Jun 1920 – Jul 1926	RSM N.A. Pearce, CD Jul 1968 – Dec 1968	RSM D.A. Gardner, CD Jun 1998 - Nov 2000
RSM H.R. Henry Jul 1926 – Nov 1932	RSM H.S. Graham, CD Mar 1969 – Jun 1970	RSM D.M. Biener, MMM, CD Nov 2000 – Jul 2003
RSM C. Fallas Nov 1932 – Jan 1940	RSM R.J. Slaney, CD Jun 1970 – Oct 1970	RSM C.R. Ells, CD Jul 2003 – Jun 2006
RSM D. Carmichael May 1940 – Aug 1940	RSM N.P. Wheat, CD Oct 1970 – Feb 1972	RSM D.A. Ross, CD 30 Jun 2006 – Jun 2008
RSM A.E. Vince Aug 1940 – Aug 1942	RSM A.L. Minette, CD Feb 1972 – Aug 1976	RSM J. Ramsay, MMM, CD Jun 2008 – May 2010
RSM S. Heinrich, MBE Aug 1942 – Jul 1950	RSM R. Francis, MMM, CD Sep 1976 – Jul 1979	RSM J. Dorrance, CD May 2010 – Oct 2010
RSM L.W. McCullough Jul 1950 – Apr 1951	RSM R.B.E. Clark, MMM, CD Jul 1979 – Aug 1981	RSM W.J. Crabb, MMM, MSM, CD Oct 2010 – Feb 2013
RSM R. Cunniffe, CD Apr 1951 – May 1953	RSM P.E. Cady, CD Aug 1981 – Aug 1984	RSM A.S. Batty, MMM, CD June 2013 -

ANNEX C - <u>BIOGRAPHIES</u>

SECTION 1 - <u>LORD STRATHCONA AND MOUNT ROYAL</u>

1.   Many Canadians will recognize the famous picture of an elderly white-bearded gentleman, dressed in black with a top hat, hammering the last spike of the Canadian Pacific Railway. Unfortunately, most people recall neither the name of that man nor the important role he had played up to that point in Canadian history. That man, Donald Alexander Smith, later became Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal. The name Strathcona, however, is better recognized because it is proudly used across Canada as a common place-name. Many also know that it was Lord Strathcona who offered to raise a regiment for service in South Africa in 1900. Who was Lord Strathcona and why was the Government of the Dominion of Canada so keen to name a regiment of the Permanent Force in his honour in 1909?

Figure 80 – The Last Spike (Craigellachie, 7 November 1885)

2.   Lord Strathcona was a respected businessman, politician, diplomat and philanthropist. Frequently, the line between these roles was somewhat blurred. Any one of the many roles that Lord Strathcona fulfilled would have represented a lifetime of work for many people. He was involved with the Hudson's Bay Company for seventy-six years and was its principal shareholder and an elected Governor for over twenty-five of those years. He was involved in a "legion of corporations as a shareholder, director, or chairman."[1] To list all of the companies in which he was involved would fill many pages. Some of the notable positions he held, however, included being a director of the Canadian Pacific Railway (and of several other railways across the country), the President of the Bank of Montreal, the first President of the Montreal Safe and Deposit Company (later Montreal Trust), and a member of the board of directors of numerous companies including the London and Lancashire Life Assurance Company. As a politician, Lord Strathcona was elected to the Legislative Assembly of Manitoba in 1870 and to the House of Commons as a Member of Parliament for Selkirk (1871-1880) and later for Montreal West (1887-1896).

---

[1] Alexander Reford, "Smith, Donald Alexander, 1st Baron Strathcona and Mount Royal," *Dictionary of Canadian Biography*, ed. Ramsay Cook, et al., Volume XIV (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1998), p. 943.

History has shown that he had great influence in the political realm.

3.   After his death, Lord Strathcona was described as being the "most important figure in public life in Canada since 1870, although not always in the public eye…."[2] Donald Alexander Smith, 1st Baron Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal, GCMC, GCVO, undertook a very long journey that brought him from his Scottish roots to the position of Canada's High Commissioner in London before his death at the age of ninety-four in 1914. He is credited for influencing many aspects of the development of Canada in the late 19th /early 20th century and was involved politically, economically and socially in numerous ways.

4.   Donald Alexander Smith was born on 6 August 1820 at Forres, Morayshire in the Scottish Highlands. He came to Canada in May of 1838 where he began his long career with the Hudson's Bay Company as a clerk at posts in Lachine, Mingan and Tadoussac in Labrador. In 1848 he became the Chief Factor for the Company in Esquimaux Bay (Hamilton Inlet – Labrador) and managed the post at Rigolet. He was promoted to Chief Trader in 1852 and Chief Factor-in-Charge of Labrador District in 1862.

5.   In 1853, while he was in Esquimaux Bay, he met and married Isabella Hardisty. Isabella Hardisty was the daughter of Richard Hardisty, the Chief Trader in Equimaux between 1848-1852. Isabella had been previously married to James Grant for two years and had had a son, James Hardisty Grant (later Smith), a year earlier. On 17 January 1854 the Smith's only child, Margaret Charlotte, was born.
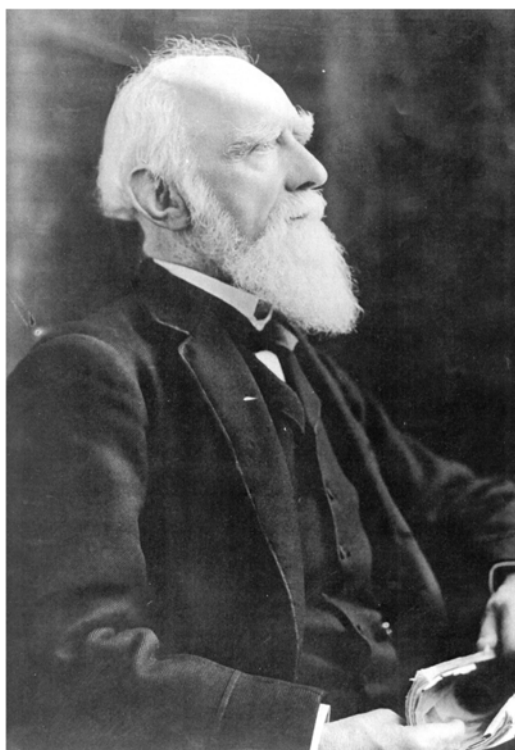
Figure 81 – Donald A. Smith

6.   In 1866 Smith reached a turning point of his life and left Labrador for Montreal, where his duties as Chief Factor-in-Charge had frequently taken him. He had first met his cousin, George Stephen (later Lord Mount Stephen), on one of his trips to Montreal in 1865. Stephen, a noteworthy banker and investor at the time, had a profound influence on Smith. As a self-appointed agent, Smith had begun to invest the wages of other fur traders through his cousin. After paying the traders their interest, Smith invested additional profits in Hudson's Bay stock.[3] The two developed a very profitable partnership and became very successful businessmen in Montreal. In 1868, Smith was appointed Commissioner of Eastern Operations of the Hudson's Bay Company's Montreal Department. It was in this capacity that he embarked on a project that eventually had a tremendous impact on his future and of the future of Canada.

7.   On 10 December 1869, the Prime Minister of Canada, Sir John A. MacDonald, had appointed Smith as a special commissioner to go to Fort Garry (Winnipeg) to help resolve the tensions related to Manitoba's entry into confederation. Smith was instrumental in reaching a peaceful resolution to the Red River Crisis, returning to Ottawa in March of 1870. Partly as a result of the very long and indirect route he had to take to get from Ottawa to Fort Garry, and never one to miss a business opportunity, he developed an interest in the potential for railway in Canada.

---

[2] W.T.R. Preston, *The Life and Times of Lord Strathcona*, (Toronto: McClelland, Goodchild and Stewart Publishers, 1914), p.13.
[3] George Woodcock, "Donald Alexander Smith," *Faces from History*, (Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers, 1978), p. 52.

8.   Smith's success in the Crisis of 1869 at Fort Garry launched his political career. In 1870, the Dominion Government wanted Smith to become Lieutenant Governor of Manitoba, which he refused because it would have meant relinquishing his responsibilities with the Hudson's Bay Company. He did, however, act as Governor of Assinaboia for a short period before the appointed Lieutenant Governor, Adams Archibald, arrived. In the fall of 1870 Smith was a successful candidate in Manitoba's provincial elections. He was elected as the Member of Parliament for Selkirk in a by-election in March 1871. His first speech in the House of Commons included a request that a railway be built from Ontario to Manitoba and a prophecy that it would be initiated within ten years (it was initiated in 1881). As proof of his popularity in Manitoba, his three opponents in the Selkirk riding polled only 62 votes in the 1872 election.[4]

9.   Despite his debut in politics, Smith continued to remain very active in the Hudson's Bay Company. In 1870 he had been appointed the President of the Hudson's Bay Company's Council of Northern Department. In 1871 he was appointed Chief Commissioner of the Company in Canada. Although he campaigned in the federal election as an Independent Conservative, now as the most senior representative of the Hudson's Bay Company in Canada, Smith (and the Hudson's Bay Company) had the most to gain by sitting in the House of Commons as a member of the ruling Conservative Government. At times Smith was accused of being the "Honourable Member for the Hudson's Bay Company,"[5] but he did take his responsibilities as a Member of Parliament very seriously. In 1873, Smith helped to force the resignation of Sir John A. MacDonald's Government over the Pacific Scandal. Sir John A. MacDonald was accused of selling the railway charter to Sir Hugh Allen in return for campaign funds. After much deliberation, Smith gave a crucial speech in the House stating that he could not conscientiously vote for his Government.[6] This disagreement strained the relationship between Smith and Sir John A. MacDonald for years.

10.   After the scandal, Smith sat as an independent until he lost his seat in 1878 (by a margin of only nine votes) in the same election that Sir John A MacDonald's Liberal-Conservative Government was returned to power.[7] When the double mandate (dual provincial and federal representation) ended in 1873, Smith left his provincial seat in January 1874 but maintained his federal seat in the 1874 election.

11.   With the development of the West came decreasing profits in the fur trade for the Hudson's Bay Company. In July of 1873 the Company formally separated its fur trading and its land sales operations. Smith became Land Commissioner (Western Operations) and, as a result, his duties were greatly increased as the Company began relinquishing control of the West. Due to his many other interests and private affairs, however, Smith gave up his position as Land Commissioner in 1879, but he remained as an advisor to the Company. Smith continued to invest heavily in the Hudson's Bay Company and, as its principal sharing holder in 1889, was elected Governor of the Company.

12.   By 1876 Smith's interest in railways, awakened on his trip west in 1869, materialized. He purchased the defunct Saint Paul and Pacific Line with a small group, including George Stephen, then developed and extended the line to reap tremendous profits. They also obtained running rights from Emerson to Winnipeg. This extended railway became the Great Northern Railway, which ran from Saint Paul, Minnesota, to Seattle, Washington. Of note and testament to Smith's entrepreneurial spirit, the Great Northern Railway was the only privately funded transcontinental railroad in U.S. history. Smith also fronted the Canadian Pacific Railroad (CPR) with cash to allow it to continue development of the railway in the 1880s. Backed by a group of investors Stephen reformed the CPR in 1881. The MacDonald

---

[4] Canada's Parliament, *History of the Federal Electoral Ridings since 1867*, [Online], http://www.parl.gc.ca/information/about/process/house/hfer/hfer.asp?Language=E, 10 February 2002.

[5] Reford, p. 941.

[6] Donna McDonald, *Lord Strathcona: A Biography of Donald Alexander Smith*, (Toronto: Dundurn Press, 1996) p. 209-224.

[7] Canada's Parliament, *History of the Federal Electoral Ridings since 1867*, [Online], http://www.parl.gc.ca/information/about/process/house/hfer/hfer.asp?Language=E, 10 February 2002.

Government excluded Smith from this venture (the exclusion, however, was not effective). The railway, scheduled to be completed in 1891, was actually finished on 7 November 1885 when Smith drove the last spike at Craigellachie, British Colombia. Queen Victoria knighted Smith in 1886 for his part in the development of the railway: Donald Smith became Sir Donald Alexander Smith, KCMG.
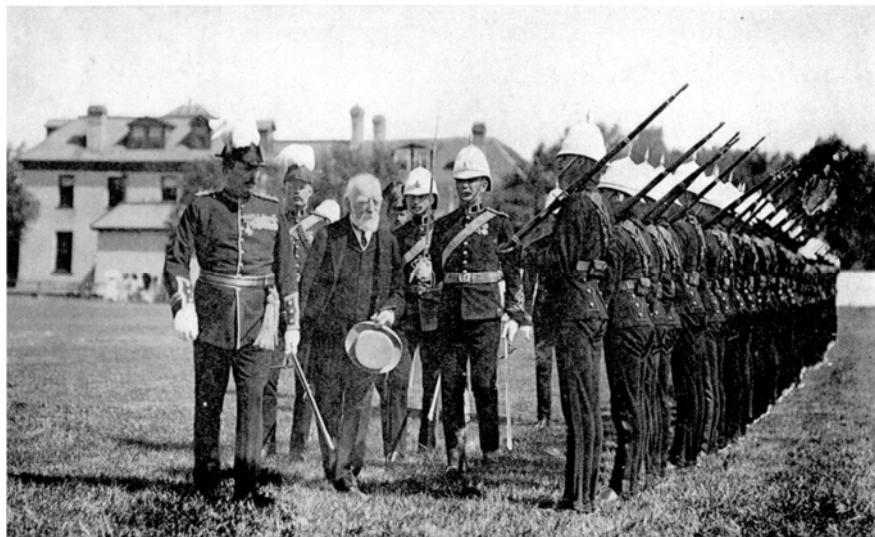
Figure 82 – Lord Strathcona Inspecting his Regiment in September 1909

13.   After reconciling with Sir John A. MacDonald, Sir Donald was asked to run as a Member of Parliament for Montreal West. In the spring of 1887, he was once again elected to the House of Commons and also kept that seat in the 1891 election by a substantial margin. In 1896, he was invited to assume the leadership of the Conservatives when Sir John A MacDonald passed away. He declined and, referring particularly to Sir Charles Tupper, stated that better men were available. He was then asked to accept the appointment of the Canadian High Commissioner in England, which was occupied at that time by Sir Charles Tupper. At seventy-six years of age, Sir Donald was sworn in to office to begin a whole new field of diplomatic service.

14.   In 1897, Sir Donald was offered a peerage. Since "Montreal" had already been granted to Lord Amhurst, he compromised on his title. Sir Donald "…had settled on Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal of Glencoe, in the County of Argyll, and Mount Royal, in the Province of Quebec and Dominion of Canada…. 'Strath' is Gaelic for 'broad valley' and 'cona,' a reference to the River Coe, flowing through the glen to Loch Leven. Mount Royal, of course is the mountain after which Montreal is named and both McGill University and the Royal Victoria Hospital are at its base."[8] Later, on 26 June 1900, a new peerage was granted to permit the title to be passed to the male heirs of his daughter, Margaret. When Sir Donald was granted a peerage it was speculated that he might retire and it was even proposed that he succeed the Earl of Aberdeen as Governor General of Canada. Had Lord Strathcona agreed he might have been the first "Canadian" Governor General; in spite of strong public opinion for this move, however, he refused to consider the proposal.

15.   The period of 1896 to 1913 is often referred to as that of "Canada's Spectacular Development." Lord Strathcona's term as High Commissioner coincides so closely with this period of incredible development that it is also called "the Strathcona Period." Except within Hudson's Bay Company circles, Lord Strathcona was unknown to the average Englishman. As High Commissioner he sought preferential

---

[8] McDonald, p. 416.

Empire trade and settlers for Canada. Although he had to give up the former issue, which was politically "hot," he pursued the latter with great vigour. In this respect, he made hundreds of speeches and, after all, became the best-known "Canadian" in England. Immigration between 1896 and 1914 increased Canada's population by 150 percent to close to 8 million people, with the majority coming from Britain.[9] This increase was due, in large part, to Lord Strathcona.

16.   When the Boer uprising occurred in South Africa in 1899 it was with difficulty that Strathcona, as High Commissioner, refrained from suggesting to Prime Minister Laurier that Canada should quickly support the British Empire. Lord Strathcona was irked by Canada's indecision. By the fall of 1899, Canada had decided to send a contingent and, as the war took a turn for the worse, a second contingent was announced soon afterwards. It was at this time that Lord Strathcona offered to raise a regiment to fight in the war. The British War office readily accepted his offer; hence Strathcona's Horse was raised in Canada for special service in South Africa, departing Halifax on 16 March 1900.

17.   Lord Strathcona gave generously throughout his later years, the benefits of which are still visible today. In 1909, he gave $300,000 (close to $5 M in 1994 dollars)[10] to establish the Strathcona Trust for Physical and Military Training in Schools. The Lord Strathcona Trust Fund of today continues to be a key element of the Cadet movement in Canada. He donated frequently to hospitals in England and all across Canada, such as the Royal Victoria Hospital in Montreal, Calgary General, Children's Hospital in Winnipeg and the Strathcona Hospital in Edmonton. For years, Lord Strathcona provided annual funds to the Grenfell Mission, where Dr. Sir Winfred Grenfell provided medical support to Labrador outposts. Many chapters of the Young Men's Christian Association (YMCA) also received significant financial grants. Universities are prominent in his list of donations and bequests. Many universities such as Manitoba, Calgary, Toronto and Yale, and most prominently University of McGill in Montreal received substantial funds.[11] So much so that fourteen universities granted Lord Strathcona with honorary degrees.[12] The facts that Lord Strathcona's daughter, Margaret, had married Dr. Robert Jared Bliss Howard, the son of the former Dean of Medicine at McGill, Dr. Robert Palmer Howard, and that Smith had been McGill's Chancellor since 1888, may have had a great deal to do with his benevolence to McGill.

18.   By 1909, Lord Strathcona was a prominent figure in Canada and England. He had already shaped Canadian history and was continuing to do so in most significant ways. The Canadian Government chose to honour him by renaming a regiment of the Permanent Force in his honour. As Strathcona's Horse had been disbanded immediately after the South African War, the Royal Canadian Mounted Rifles, a relatively new unit who were comprised of former Strathcona's Horse officers and soldiers and who were stationed in Lord Strathcona's old riding of Selkirk, were named Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians). In 1911, Lord Strathcona was appointed Honorary Colonel of his namesake regiment whose name had recently been changed to Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians).

19.   At ninety-one years of age Lord Strathcona submitted his resignation as High Commissioner. Sir Robert Borden was to succeed him. When Laurier's Government fell in September 1911, however, Borden formed the new Government and Strathcona's resignation was not accepted. Once again, in February 1913 Lord Strathcona's resignation was not accepted.[13] Shortly after the death of Lady Strathcona on 12 November 1913, Lord Strathcona's eventful career ended. He died on 21 January 1914, in his ninety-fourth year. Lord Strathcona was buried in Highgate Cemetery in London, England. A

---

[9] Statistics Canada, *Population and Migration*, [Online] http://www.statcan.ca/english/freepub/11-516-XIE/sectiona/sectiona.htm#Population, 13 June 2004.
[10] McDonald, p.536.
[11] McDonald, pp. 507-534.
[12] Reford, p. 945.
[13] Reford, p. 944.

regimental plaque was installed in his crypt when it was refurbished in 1987.

20.   The Strathcona family continues to maintain close ties with the Regiment. On the death of Lord Strathcona's daughter, Margaret, in 1926 the title of Lord Strathcona passed to her son Donald Sterling Palmer Howard who became the 3rd Baron Strathcona and Mount Royal. Lieutenant-Colonel Sir Donald Howard acted as the Honorary Colonel of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) between 1943 and his death in 1959 (see ARTICLE 2202 - Honorary Colonels). He visited the Regiment at Marsefield Camp, England in 1943 when he assumed the role of Honorary Colonel. Later he visited the Regiment in Calgary in 1952 and D Squadron while they were at Fort Anne, in Germany in November 1954 and again in August 1955. Lieutenant-Colonel Sir Donald Howard was also present at the opening of Sarcee Military Camp in Calgary in August 1958, six months before he passed away on 22 February 1959.

21.   Lord Strathcona's great grandson still bears the title 4th Baron Strathcona and Mount Royal. Living on the Island of Islay on the West Coast of Scotland, Lord Donald Euan Palmer Howard continues to maintain ties with the Regiment. He visited the Regiment: in Calgary in 1975 for the seventy-fifth Reunion; in 1985 for the one-hundredth Anniversary of the Canadian Pacific Railway Last-Spike Ceremony; in October 1990 in recognition of the Regiment's ninetieth anniversary; and in May 2000 for the Reunion weekend in Edmonton during Celebration 2000.

SECTION 2 - MAJOR-GENERAL SIR SAMUEL BENFIELD STEELE, KCMG, CB, MVO

1.   Major-General Sir Samuel Benfield Steele was born 5 January 1848, in Purbrook, Ontario, to Captain Elmes Steele of the Royal Navy, and his second wife, Anne.[14]

2.   At the age of 18, Steele joined the 35th Simcoe Regiment (now The Grey and Simcoe Forresters). He served with them in the repulsion of the Fenian Raids for which he received a medal with clasp. That same year, he was commissioned Ensign and qualified as Field Officer, receiving full marks in both drill and discipline. In 1867, he transferred to the 37th Haldimand Regiment. Three years later, he transferred to the Ontario Rifles, where he was promoted to the rank of Corporal. Shortly thereafter he took part in the Red River Expedition, under Colonel Garnet Wolseley. When A and B Batteries of The Royal Canadian Artillery were formed in 1871, Steele joined their ranks as a Sergeant and assumed the role of gunnery instructor.

3.   In 1873, Steele joined the newly formed North West Mounted Police. He was ranked Troop Sergeant Major and placed in charge of the equestrian classes. Between 1875 and 1878 he held the position of Regimental Sergeant Major and was subsequently promoted to Sub-Inspector of the Force.

Figure 83 – Lieutenant Colonel Samuel Steele (1900)

4.   During the North West Rebellion of 1885, Inspector Steele was personally requested by Major- General T.B. Strange to raise a small force known as "Steele's

---

[14] There are many different dates used for Sir Sam's birthday. In his autobiography *Forty Years in Canada* (Toronto, 1915: McGraw-Hill Ryerson Limited, rpt. 1972) he used 1849. Robert Stewart used 1851 in *Sam Steele: Lion of the Frontier* (2nd ed. Toronto: Doubleday Canada, 1999). Other sources have used 1852 and even 1853. Thanks to the research of Murray A. Cayley, the Saint James Anglican Church ledger in Orillia, Ontario revealed an entry for the birth of Samuel Benfield Steele on 5 January 1848. Many speculated that Sir Sam misrepresented his age prior to the First World War in order to appear younger.

Scouts." The force was comprised of elements of the North West Mounted Police and cowboys from the surrounding area. Steele's Scouts were employed alongside the Alberta Field Force, where Steele acted as Cavalry Commander. After the Rebellion, he was promoted to Superintendent of the North West Mounted Police and commanded the Force through the years of the Yukon Gold Rush. His crowning achievement during this period was the construction of a Mounted Police post at Fort Steele, British Columbia. It was also during this time that he met his wife, Marie E de Lotbiniere-Harwood. The couple was married on 15 January 1890.

5.   In January 1900, Superintendent Steele was selected to raise Strathcona's Horse for special service in South Africa. After the South African War he was promoted to the rank of Colonel in May 1901 and became a Companion of the Most Honourable Order of the Bath (CB) and a Member of the Royal Victorian Order (MVO). After realizing that Strathcona's Horse would not soon become part of the Permanent Force, despite the government's intention, Steele took a leave of absence and returned to South Africa to command B Division of the South African Constabulary.[15]

6.   In 1907, Steele returned to Canada where he was appointed Commander of Military District 13, which included Alberta and parts of the Yukon Territory. In May 1909, he was appointed District Officer Commanding Military District 10, Manitoba. From 1910 – 1912, he was re- appointed the Commanding Officer of Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians).

7.   In December 1914, Steele was promoted to the rank of Major-General and appointed Inspector General of Western Canada. In May 1915, he was appointed General Officer Commanding 2nd Canadian Division and took them to England. He remained in England as the Commander of Canadian troops at Shorncliffe, England, a position he held until retirement in 1918. That same year, he became the Knight Commander of the Most Distinguished Order of Saint Michael and Saint George (KCMG). He passed away in 1919 at the age of 71 and was buried at Saint John's Cemetery in Winnipeg, Manitoba.

---

[15] Samuel B. Steele, *Forty Years in Canada*, p. 363.

SECTION 3 – <u>BIOGRAPHIES OF COLONELS OF THE REGIMENT</u>

Brigadier F.M.W. Harvey, VC, MC, C de G, CD, rmc

      See Article D102

Lieutenant-Colonel James Malcolm McAvity, DSO, MBE, rmc

1.   Lieutenant-Colonel McAvity was born in Westmount, Quebec in 1909 and educated at Ridley College and the Royal Military College, graduating in 1931. He married Margaret Temple in January 1937. He joined the Canadian Army in January 1940 and was sent to the Canadian Armoured Fighting Vehicles Training Centre at Camp Borden. He was one of eight officers sent to England in June 1940 to gather information about armoured training establishments, methods and equipment. Attached to 1 Armoured Division (UK) for the next 12 months, he spent considerable time at training establishments at Lulworth, Bovington and the tank ranges in Linney Head, Wales.

Figure 84 – Lieutenant Colonel James McAvity

2.   From June 1941 to June 1943 he was a member of a small group that developed A-33 in Camp Borden, and was personally responsible for the selection and purchase of the 18 000 acre tank range near Meaford. In June 1943 he sailed to England with the Halifax Rifles, and when they were broken up to provide reinforcements, he was taken on strength of the 2nd Canadian Armoured Regiment (LdSH(RC)) as second senior major, a few weeks before the unit departed for Italy in September. Following the Hitler Line operation near Cassino, in which the Commanding Officer and Second in Command were both seriously wounded, McAvity was appointed Commanding Officer and brought the Regiment back to Winnipeg at the end of the war. He was awarded the Distinguished Service Order and was made a Member of the Order of the British Empire.

3.   During the summer and fall of 1945, while waiting for repatriation in Holland, he wrote a detailed history of the Regiment's World War II experiences, which was published in 1947. Following his release from the Canadian Forces as a Lieutenant-Colonel, he went on to work a number of management positions before setting up the Canadian Export Association in 1963, which he headed for the next 15 years in Montreal. He was appointed Colonel of the Regiment from 6 June 1966 to 26 March 1971. He passed away 14 April 2002, and was survived by his two children, Virginia and Ian.

Lieutenant-General William Alexander (Bill) Milroy, DSO, CD

1.   Lieutenant-General Bill Milroy was born in Brownlee, Saskatchewan on 25 June 1920 and studied at the University of Alberta in 1938. In 1940 he was commissioned in the University of Alberta Contingent of the Canadian Officers Training Corps and went on active service. He joined Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) in August 1941 as a Troop Leader. He went overseas in November 1941 and served with the Regiment in England, Italy and Northwest Europe, ending the war at the rank of Major. He was wounded in the Gothic Line and awarded the Distinguished Service Order for action in Holland. In July 1945 he was posted to the Canadian Army Occupation Force in Germany as Second in Command 3rd Battalion, North Nova Scotia Highlanders.

Figure 85 – Lieutenant-General William Milroy

2.   In May 1946 Major Milroy returned to Canada to attend the first post-war Canadian Army Staff College course at Kingston, Ontario. In 1948 he was posted to HQ US Army Ground Forces, Fort Monroe, Virginia as the first Canadian Liaison Officer. In 1952 he was promoted to Lieutenant-Colonel and became the Canadian Member of the Directing Staff of the British Army Staff College, Camberley. In 1954 he attended the UK Joint Services Staff College.

3.   On return to Canada in late 1954, he was appointed GSO 1 HQ Eastern Command Halifax and in 1957, Director of Public Relations (Army) Ottawa. He was promoted to Colonel in 1960 to command the Armoured School, Camp Borden. He became Director of Military Training in 1962 and in 1965 he was promoted to Brigadier to command the 3rd Infantry Brigade Group, Gagetown.

3.   In 1968 after two years as Commandant of the Canadian Army Staff College, he was promoted to Major-General and appointed the first Canadian Government representative with the International Observer Team in Nigeria during the Nigerian civil war. In 1970 he became Commander Canadian Defence Establishments; in 1971, Commander Training Command and in 1972, Commander Mobile Command with the rank of Lieutenant-General. In 1973, he was appointed Assistant Deputy Minister (Personnel) where he served until he retired as a Lieutenant-General from the Canadian Forces in 1975.

4.   After leaving the Forces, he joined a consulting firm as President, and retired in 1988. He was appointed Colonel of the Regiment 26 March 1971 to 11 November 1978, as well as the Honorary Lieutenant-Colonel of the Governor General's Foot Guards from 1978 to 1984. He married his wife Ann Tilton, and had three children: Elizabeth, Ann and Rollin. He passed away 20 February 2006.

Major-General James C. (Jimmie) Gardner, CD, rmc

1.   Major-General James Charlton Gardner was born in Regina on 6 December 1920, the middle child and only son of Norman and Gertrude (née Morgan) Gardner. His father was a businessman and his mother was a nurse. When he was in grade 11 at Regina's Central Collegiate he met Joyce (Joy) Morgan, who was a year younger, and they began dating. After high school, he entered The Royal Military College in Kingston in the fall of 1938 because he had "always wanted to join the military and serve his country." He was eager to go overseas after the war erupted in September, 1939, and keenly wanted to join a tank corps. Canada didn't have one, so in 1940 he quit RMC and enlisted in the British Army, where he was posted to the Royal Tank Regiment and served in the Eighth Army in North Africa.

Figure 86 – Major-General James Gardner

2.   He saw action and was captured when the Eighth Army crossed from Egypt into Libya in November, 1941, and tried to relieve Tobruk, which was besieged by German forces under the command of General Erwin Rommel. By all accounts, Lieutenant Gardner was a resolute, athletic and patriotic young man who was determined to escape his German captors and get back to the front lines. After making it back to his regiment, he was captured again. Stories abound about his escapades as a prisoner of war over the next three years. A skilled bridge player, he was invited to be the fourth in a regular match with three well-heeled British aristocrats. Once, after trying and failing to escape, he heard one of the other players shout, "Gardner, you have ruined our bridge game," as he was marched back into the PoW camp for a stint in solitary confinement. As the war continued and the Allies, under General Bernard Montgomery, began to make inroads against General Rommel, the Germans decided to transfer their PoWs by ship from Africa to Italy. The prisoners, who included a goodly number of sailors, plotted to overtake the ship once it was at sea. A mole reported the scheme to the Germans, who immediately changed plans to send the PoWs by submarine, according to a tale that Lieutenant Gardner loved to tell years later in the officers mess. After that experience, he said he never wanted to sail in a submarine again. However, he made it across the Mediterranean Sea, he was delivered to a PoW camp in southern Italy. He escaped from there and began walking "up the boot" hoping to connect with Allied forces, having heard rumours that they had made large-scale amphibious landings at Salerno near Naples in September, 1943.

3.   Another story has him identified as "an incorrigible escaper" who was being sent by train to Germany to a more secure PoW camp along the lines of Colditz Castle near Dresden. Somewhere south of Milan, he managed to jump off the train onto a truck and slide under its tarpaulin until he could evade his captors. According to another account, Lieutenant Gardner was hiding in woods by the side of a road when a strange vehicle (which turned out to be a jeep that had gone into full production while he was a PoW), stopped and two English-speaking soldiers got out. They were laying line for an observation post. Recognizing the soldiers by their English accents and their "blue" language, he surrendered, was interrogated and was shipped to a base hospital in Algiers. He was finally transferred to the Canadian Forces and sent home in late spring, 1944.

4.   In June, he became engaged to Joyce, his loyal Regina girlfriend, and that November they were married in Winnipeg. They went east to his first posting as a lieutenant at Camp Borden near Barrie, Ontario. Lieutenant Gardner was unusual as an aspiring officer in the postwar Canadian military. He had no common experience with the other applicants for the regular army because his active service had all been with the British Forces. Major-General Philip Neatby described him as "an anomaly in that all the other applicants were 'macaroni eaters' in the Italian campaign or else they had served in northwest Europe, but he had done neither, therefore his peers had no notion of how good a soldier he had been and what he had experienced so his reputation, which developed rapidly, was based on his [performance] as a very, very solid, competent staff officer." He was posted to Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)

and was made second-in-command by 1956. Two years later he was promoted to Lieutenant-Colonel. "He was a firm believer that soldiers expect to be properly trained, properly led and properly equipped. And by properly led [I mean] by people who are competent, who anticipate what the challenges are going to be and who train the men properly for them and [ensure] that they are never committed to unnecessary risk or unnecessary work," Major-General Neatby also said. "Everything is purposeful and that is exactly the way he operated." As the Cold War ramped up in the mid-1950s, the Department of National Defence decided to add a fourth armoured regiment to the regular army. On Oct. 10, 1958, the brass announced that the new regiment, which was called the 1st Fort Garry Horse, would be based at Canadian Forces Base Petawawa in the Ottawa Valley under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Gardner. (The militia regiment in Winnipeg became the 2nd Fort Garry Horse.) The regiment's first Centurion tank rolled past George Pearkes, the defence minister in Prime Minister John Diefenbaker's government, on Nov. 19, 1958. "He was a totally dedicated individual and probably one of the finest trainers I ever served under," said Colonel John Roderick, who joined the Fort Garry Horse in 1961. "We were training for war, notwithstanding we were in Camp Petawawa. It was as though we were facing the Russians on the other side of the Ottawa River. It was that level of intensity," he said. "He set the standards for the rest of my career."

5.   Because of Lieutenant-Colonel Gardner's lofty reputation as a military instructor, he was replaced at the Fort Garry Horse in August, 1961, and sent back to RMC, the same school he had left two decades earlier without a degree. There he worked as Director of Cadets, a position he held for three years. It was an unusual posting for a former commanding officer, according to Colonel Roderick. "He was sent in to put the military back in the Royal Military College. If you wanted something done right you got Jimmie Gardner to do it." The Fort Garry Horse was disbanded in 1970 in an overall reduction of the armed forces ordered by then Prime Minister Pierre Trudeau; its remaining members were absorbed into Lord Strathcona's Horse. After RMC and a brief posting in Ottawa, Lieutenant-Colonel Gardner was one of more than 30 military personnel who went to Tanzania as military advisers as part of Canada's contribution to the newly sovereign country's defence and security forces. He was in Tanzania for about two years from 1964 to early 1966. Another short posting in Ottawa followed. He was promoted to Colonel and sent to Britain to the Imperial Defence College (now the Royal College of Defence Studies), an organization that trains senior officers for executive responsibility by "developing their analytical powers, knowledge of defence and international security, and strategic vision." After finishing his course work, he was promoted to Brigadier-General and sent to Germany as Commander of the 4 Canadian Mechanized Brigade Group in Soest from 1968 to July, 1970. Canada's NATO Brigade served in Germany from 1951 to 1993 - from the beginnings of the Cold War through the collapse of the Soviet Union. Again he went back to Ottawa for another two years, then to Brussels in about 1973, serving with NATO until 1975, when he retired from active service with the Canadian Forces at 55 as a Major-General.

6.   Lord Strathcona's Horse appointed him Colonel of the Regiment, a position he held from November, 1978, to 1982. Two momentous events occurred during his tenure. A Canadian Pacific train carrying explosive and poisonous chemicals derailed in Mississauga on Nov. 10, 1979. The toxic spill precipitated the evacuation of more than 200,000 people, and Major-General Gardner was called in to help plan and execute what was then the largest-ever peacetime exodus. Less than two years later, he and his wife were invited to the wedding of Prince Charles, the Regiment's Colonel-in-Chief, and Lady Diana Spencer at St. Paul's Cathedral in London on July 29, 1981. Unlike many former soldiers who retired from the armed forces, he had no urge to work in academia or the private sector. His goal was to play golf and enjoy life. He and his wife moved to Barrie in the mid-1970s. After she suffered a stroke in the late 1980s, he became her principal caregiver. In May, 1994, RMC retroactively awarded him a Bachelor of Military Science in recognition of his war service. He died at the Royal Victoria Hospital in Barrie, Ont., on Oct. 29, 2007. He was 86. Predeceased by his sisters Lois and Klela, he is survived by his wife, Joyce, his son, Bob, his twin daughters, Dianne and Deborah, and his extended family.

Major-General Phil Neatby, CD

Figure 87 – Major-General Phil Neatby

1.   Major-General Phil Neatby first enrolled with the Canadian Army in 1942 as a Leading Bugler with the Regina Rifles. In 1947 he entered the Canadian Officers' Training Contingent. Subsequent to his training at the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps School, he joined Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) in May of 1950.

2.   Although he first served at the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps School as an Instructor, Major-General Neatby was posted to Calgary with the Regiment in 1953. He has served in many roles with the Regiment, specifically A Squadron, including Troop Leader, Battle Captain and Officer Commanding. He has also served with Fort Garry Horse and the 8th Canadian Hussars. He was appointed Commanding Officer of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) in July 1966, in Iserlohn Germany.

3.   Major-General Neatby served in two roles during the Korean War. Although he was posted to support Canadian troops in Korea with the 25th Canadian Reinforcement Group in 1953, he subsequently deployed to Korea due to an administration error. Following a brief period as a Recce Troop leader, the administrative error was corrected and he was subsequently posted to Hiro, Japan. Major-General Neatby also served in the Sinai Peninsula as part of the United Nations Emergency Force in 1965.

4.   Major-General Neatby has held numerous staff positions during his service. He was part of the Army Tactics and Organization Board which developed combined arms tactics and planned new weapons system integration in 1962 to 1963. In 1968, he was posted to Canadian Army Staff College as Directing Staff. Major-General Neatby also served as Deputy Commander Militia Area Atlantic, Director of Armour, Director of Land Plans, Commander 1 Canadian Brigade Group, and Deputy Commander of Mobile Command. In December of 1979, he retired from active service as a Major-General. He was appointed Colonel of the Regiment from November 1982 to November 1986.

Lieutenant-General René Gutknecht, CMM, CD

1.   Lieutenant-General Gutknecht was born in Montreal on 23 July 1930 and received his education at Collège Notre Dame and McGill University where he was a member of the Canadian Officer Training Corps.

2.   Upon graduation from university he joined the Canadian Army Regular, was assigned to the Royal Canadian Dragoons and served with his Regiment in various appointments in Canada and the Federal Republic of Germany. In 1959 he was posted to Vietnam as staff officer with the Canadian delegation to the International Control Commission and after returning from the Far East occupied a number of training posts with the Militia before attending the US Army Armour Officer Career Course at Fort Knox and the Canadian Army Staff College in Kingston Ontario.

Figure 88 – Lieutenant-General René Gutknecht

3.   In 1965 he was unexpectedly sent to India to be the Chief Operations Officer of the United Nations India-Pakistan Observation Mission (UNIPOM) and on his return the following year as the senior field logistics officer. In 1968 on promotion to Lieutenant-Colonel he was appointed Commanding Officer of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) in the Federal Republic of Germany. After serving as the Senior Staff Officer Operations of 4 CMBG, in Staff College, he was promoted to the rank of Brigadier-General and given command of 5ᵉ Groupe-brigade mécanisé du Canada (5 CMBG) in Valcartier. During the 1976 Olympic Games the Brigade was given the military responsibility for the security of the athletes.

4   He then occupied the post of Chief of Staff Operations at HQ Mobile Command and Chief of Land Doctrine and Commander of Mobile Command in St. Hubert. In the summer of 1980, he was promoted to the rank of Lieutenant-General and was appointed Canadian Military Representative to the NATO Military Committee in Permanent Session in Brussels Belgium, a post which he occupied until his retirement as a Lieutenant-General from the Canadian Forces in 1985.

5.   On 1 June 1986, he became Colonel Commandant of the Ottawa Division of the Canadian Corps of Comissionaires and on 20 March 1989, was appointed Gentlemen Usher of the Black Rod of the Senate of Canada. Lieutenant-General Gutknecht was the Colonel of the Regiment from 11 November 1986 to 11 November 1992. He was married to Claire Forget, and had one son Eric. He died on 2 January 2011.

Lieutenant-General James (Jim) Fox, CMM, CD, rmc

1.   Lieutenant-General Jim Fox was born 20 December 1935 in Halifax, Nova Scotia. He underwent university training at Royal Roads, Victoria, British Columbia, the Royal Military College, Kingston, Ontario, and obtained a Bachelor of Arts degree at Dalhousie University, Halifax, Nova Scotia in 1958.

2.   He joined the 8th Canadian Hussars (Princess Louise's) in 1958 and a year later started a series of appointments with that Regiment in West Germany until 1962 when he returned with the Regiment to Petawawa, Ontario. In 1965, he attended the Canadian Army Staff College, Kingston, Ontario. In 1966 he was appointed Staff Officer in charge of operational equipment control at Mobile Command Headquarters, St. Hubert, Quebec, during which time he served with the United Nations Forces in Cyprus (UNFICYP) for a six month tour.

Figure 89 – Lieutenant-General James Fox

3.   In 1968, he went on exchange duties as the principal Operations Major with 1 (UK) Division of the British Army of the Rhine in West Germany. He was promoted Lieutenant-Colonel in August 1969 and appointed Senior Staff Officer at Prairie Area Headquarters, Winnipeg where he was dealing primarily with Prairie Militia units. Between June 1971 and August 1973, Lieutenant-General Fox commanded Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) in Calgary and in Cyprus with UNFICYP.

4.   In 1973, Lieutenant-General Fox attended the French Language Training School in Ottawa. He was promoted Colonel in 1974 and appointed Director of Land Plans (future planning) as well as Director of Armour at National Defence Headquarters. Three years later, he became the first Canadian Forces officer to attend the United States Army War College, in Carlisle Barracks, Pennsylvania, under the International Fellows Program.

5.   Promoted to Brigadier-General in June 1978, he was appointed Commander 4 Canadian Mechanized Brigade Group, Lahr, West Germany. In 1980, he was appointed Deputy Chief of Staff (Operations) at Central Army Group Headquarters, Heidelberg, West Germany. In 1982, he was promoted to Major-General and assumed the appointment of Chief of Personnel Development at National Defence Headquarters.

6.   In July 1986, he was promoted to Lieutenant-General and assumed the appointment of Commander, Mobile Command (Army Commander) on 6 August 1986. He relinquished command 14 June 1989 and completed his Regular Force military service as Assistant Deputy Minister (Personnel) and Acting Vice-Chief of the Defence Staff in National Defence Headquarters, retiring as a Lieutenant-General in 1991. It is of interest to note that both Lieutenant-Generals Milroy and Fox served as Commander of Mobile Command and then later as ADM (Pers).

7.   Lieutenant-General Fox was appointed in November 1992 as Colonel of the Regiment of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) and held that appointment to July 2002. In October 2002, he was appointed Colonel Commandant of the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps. He relinquished the appointment October 2005 and completed his service in uniform. Following departure from the Regular Forces, Lieutenant-General Fox was National Executive Director of the Heart and Stroke Foundation of Canada for three years and later was called out for a year to assist with the Somalia Inquiry. He now resides in Mahone Bay, Nova Scotia.

8.   Lieutenant-General Fox is married to the former Carolyn Richard of LaHave, Nova Scotia. They have two sons, David and Daniel.

Colonel Mark Egener, CD, rmc

1.   Colonel Egener was born in Toronto, Ontario in July 1938 and spent his formative years in London, Ontario. He attended the Royal Military College in Kingston Ontario and later the University of Western Ontario where he was granted a Bachelor of Engineering Science (Mechanical Engineering) in 1961. He married Julia Berry in 1960 in Kingston Ontario.

2.   He was posted to The Fort Garry Horse and held a series of Regimental appointments in Petawawa and North West Europe. In 1964 he attended the Technical Staff Course at the Royal Military College of Science in Shrivenham, UK. He returned to Canada to the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps School, Trials and Evaluation Unit, in 1966. He was a student at the Canadian Army Staff College in 1967 and joined the Strathcona's as a Squadron Commander in Germany in 1968.

Figure 90 – Colonel Mark Egener

3.   On return to Canada in 1970, he completed a two-year Master of War Studies program at the Royal Military College. This was followed by a tour as Senior Canadian with the United Nations Military Observer Group in India and Pakistan. In 1973, he was appointed Commanding Officer of the Strathcona's in Calgary. During his command, the Regiment hosted the first of the five-year reunions, obtained the charter for the Regimental Society, and the re-established the Mounted Troop

4.   Following Regimental Command, Col Egener served as Assistant Military Attaché (Army) and Acting Military Attaché in Washington D.C. In 1977, he returned to Kingston on the Directing Staff of the Army Staff College.

5.   In 1978, retiring as a Lieutenant-Colonel from the Canadian Forces, he accepted a position with Nova Corporation of Alberta to be involved with a small group in the development of the Western Petrochemical Project. He occupied a number of challenging positions before being transferred on executive loan to the Alberta Government in Edmonton in 1983 to be Managing Director of Alberta Public Safety Services, a Senior Official/Deputy Minister level position.

6.   He remained in the public service of Alberta for the next twelve years as Chief Executive of this provincial government agency responsible for the development of legislation, advising the minister and cabinet, and administering the organization responsible for disaster and emergency preparedness, response and recovery and hazardous material regulation. Also during this period he was instrumental in the founding of the Major Industrial Accidents Council of Canada and he served on the Council's Board of Directors and as its Chairman.

7.   In 1995 he retired from public service of Alberta and formed Summit Enterprises International Inc (S.e.i.), a consulting company that is focused on crisis and risk management, climate change, and general management services. His clients include the federal, provincial and municipal governments, leading Canadian corporations and a number of international governments and agencies.

8.   Colonel Egener has remained very active in Regimental and Society affairs. He chaired the Celebration 2000 Committee from 1990 to 2000. In 2002 he was very honoured to be appointed Colonel of the Regiment; a position he held until 2006. During this period he attended the Colonel-in-Chief on two occasions one of which was his marriage to Mrs. Parker-Bowles.

9.   After thirty-two years in Alberta, Col Egener and his wife Julia moved to Perth Ontario in 2012. They have two grown children and six grandchildren in Ottawa and Saskatoon.

Colonel John Roderick, CD

1.   Colonel Roderick joined the Canadian Army in September, 1959 and in August 1960 was commissioned and posted to the Fort Garry Horse in Petawawa, Ontario. He served at the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps School, as Military Secretary to the Chief of Personnel, as Officer Commanding the independent tank squadron - C Squadron, 8th Canadian Hussars (Princess Louise's), and Career Manager for Armoured Officers. Colonel Roderick joined the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) as Deputy Commanding Officer in August 1976. In August 1978, he left Calgary to become the Staff Officer Cadets and Military Training at Royal Roads Military College in Victoria, BC. Upon promotion to Lieutenant-Colonel in July, 1979 he was posted to Ottawa as the Deputy Director of Armour. In August, 1981 he returned to Calgary as Commanding Officer of the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians). At the end of this tour Lieutenant-Colonel Roderick was posted back to Ottawa as the Land Policy Coordinator for the Chief of Land Doctrine and Operations.

Figure 91 – Colonel John Roderick

2.   Colonel Roderick held several positions abroad: Assistant Army Advisor at the Canadian High Commission in London, England from 1985 to 1988 and Canadian Forces Attaché in Warsaw, Poland from 1989 to 1991. In August 1991, he was the Director responsible for defence relations with NATO and the Eastern European states outside the former USSR at National Defence Headquarters. His final position was as Canadian Forces Attaché in Riyadh, Saudi Arabia, with cross-accreditation to Kuwait, Bahrain, Qatar, the United Arab Emirates, Oman and Yemen from 1992 to 1994.

3.   Retired from the Canadian Forces on 1 September 1994 as a Colonel, he became Director of Marketing, MILTECH Military Technologies Inc. in Dartmouth, N.S. where he was involved in numerous projects including the Cougar Direct Fire Support Vehicle Turret Overhaul and a Leopard tank armour repair. In October 1997, Colonel Roderick assumed the position of Regional General Manager of the Shock Trauma Air Rescue Society (STARS).

4.   In August 2001, he established Jerod Consulting, offering his services in the defence training and project management fields. From March 2005 to December 2011, Colonel Roderick was under contract to Correctional Services Canada as the National Project Manager for a "life extension" program on the Canadian Army's 10-ton transport trucks, providing training in basic vehicle mechanics and auto body work to inmates in the Federal correctional system.

5.   In June 2006, the Minister of National Defence appointed him as Colonel of the Regiment of the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), a position he held until June 2010. Other notable associations include: member of the Board of Directors of the Nova Scotia International Air Show 1997 – 2001, past President and Honourary Life Member of the Royal United Services Institute of Nova Scotia, member of the Royal Kingston United Services Institute, member of the Board of Directors of Providence Care in Kingston, and Director of the Regimental Society.

6.   Colonel Roderick and his wife, May, have two children, Ian and Stacey. Ian is an Associate Professor at Wilfred Laurier University and he and his wife, Natalie have two children, Caelan and Brynn. Stacey works in the publishing field as an author and editor of children's books. She and her husband, Milos Vranesevic, have one son, Owen.

Major-General H. Cameron (Cam) Ross, CMM, CD, rmc

1.   Major-General Cam Ross was born in Ottawa, on 8 February 1949 and is the son of a Dieppe and Normandy veteran, Major-General Norman Ross of the Queen's Own Cameron Highlanders of Canada.

2.   Major-General Ross joined Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) in 1973 after graduating from Royal Roads (1968-70) and Royal Military Colleges (1970-73) with a BA in Political Science. His 1st regimental tour included attachment to the Canadian Airborne Regiment as Troop Leader of the Strathcona Armoured Recce

Figure 92 – Major-General Cameron Ross

Troop during the 1974 war in Cyprus. He returned to Calgary to command the Mounted Troop during the 75th Strathcona and Calgary 100th anniversaries. His 1st staff tour was as SO3 Ops at 1CMBG HQ in Calgary, 1976-78. His 2nd regimental tour resulted in a posting to the Royal Canadian Dragoons on NATO duty in Lahr, West Germany, 1978 to 1981 where he was 2ic of Recce, then B Squadron, and then in his final year as 2ic HQ Sqn. During this period, he attended the All Arms Tactics Course in Warminster, England and CLFCSC, Kingston. Promoted Major in Jan 1981, he returned to the LdSH for his 3rd regimental tour as OC A Sqn, 1981-83. This was followed by a year-long French course in Calgary and St. Jean and then, as a student and Course Senior of the Command and Staff Course in Toronto, 1984-85. Posted initially as an instructor at the Canadian Forces Staff School in Toronto, he was promoted Lieutenant-Colonel in 1986 and became the Director of Studies. His next staff tour was as the Base Administrative Officer at CFB Calgary, 1988-89.

3.   His 4th and final regimental tour was as Commanding Officer of LdSH(RC), 1989-91. This was followed by a staff tour at Mobile Command HQ in St. Hubert as SSO Individual Training. Promoted to Colonel, his 2nd UN tour was in 1992 in Angola, initially as a Regional Commander in Mavinga where he lived with UNITA guerilla force in the bush and then as the mission Chief of Staff when the country reverted to civil war in January 1993. In April 1993, he was seconded to the Directorate of Peacekeeping Operations at UN Headquarters in New York and subsequently returned several times to Africa to provide peacekeeping advice. He returned to NDHQ/Ottawa in 1993 as J3 Operations responsible for the coordination of all Canadian Forces international and domestic operations.

4.   Major-General Ross' next command tour was as Base Commander Edmonton, 1995-96 when the Army took over the RCAF base and started the construction to prepare for the influx of units relocating as a result of the base closures in Calgary and Chilliwack. On promotion to Brigadier-General in 1996, he assumed command of the Combat Training Centre and CFB Gagetown until 1997. The following command tour took him to Halifax as Commander of Land Forces Atlantic Area with responsibility for the Army in the four Atlantic Provinces. He was promoted Major-General in 1998 and went on his 3rd UN tour as Force Commander of the United Nations Disengagement Observer Force (UNDOF) on the Golan Heights where he held the rank of UN Assistant Secretary General and senior UN official in Syria. He returned to NDHQ in Ottawa as Director-General International Security Policy overseeing Canada's international multi/bi-lateral security relations from 2000 until retiring in 2003. He was appointed Colonel of the Regiment LdSH (RC) from 26 June 2010 until 20 June 2015.

5.   Major-General Ross is a Commander within the Order of Military Merit (CMM), a recipient of the Officer's Cross of the Order of Merit of the Republic of Poland and has been awarded the 125th Confederation of Canada Medal, Queen Elizabeth II Golden Jubilee Medal, Queen Elizabeth II Diamond Jubilee Medal, and the Alberta Centennial Medal amongst other service decorations. He was awarded the Chief of Defence Staff Commendation for actions in Cyprus in 1974.

6.   After leaving active service, Major-General Ross was President of Emergo Security and Vice-President of International Relations of Emergo Canada Ltd, Senior Military Advisor EnCana, and President of HCR Security International Ltd which provided strategic security advice to governments and the private sector including leading strategic multi-phase security reviews of nine Caribbean countries the last of which was Trinidad and Tobago.

7.   His governance undertakings include Chairman of the Board of the Strathcona Society, Director of the Calgary Military Museums Society, Director of Canada West Military Museums, Director of 'No Stone Left Alone', Governor on the Board of the Victoria Corps of Commissionaires, and Director of General Magnetic International Inc. His academic pursuits include being an Executive Fellow of the School of Public Policy, University of Calgary, on the Executive of the Victoria Branch of the Canadian International Council, a Fellow of the Canadian Defence and Foreign Affairs Institute, and a member of the Selection Committee of DND's Security Defence Forum. Major-General Ross is a Life Member of the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps Association, a Life Member of the Royal Military College Club of Canada, a member of the Royal United Services Institute of Vancouver Island, and a member of the Union Club of Victoria. He and his wife Patti live in Victoria, British Columbia and are the very proud parents of two sons, Angus and Hamish.

Colonel Greg G. Hug, CD, rmc

1.   Born 24 December 1952, Colonel Greg Hug enrolled in the Canadian Forces in Montreal, Quebec in September 1969. He completed his Baccalaureate in Engineering Management from College Militaire Royale and Royal Military College in May 1974. On commissioning, he was posted to Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) in Calgary, Alberta where he served as a troop leader in B Sqn, Administrative Officer of Recce Sqn and Assistant Adjutant. He was posted as the Canadian Exchange Officer with the $17^{th}/21^{st}$ Lancers in Bovington, United Kingdom.

Figure 93 – Colonel Greg Hug

2.   After a stint in as a staff officer Force Mobile Command (Army HQ), in St Hubert, Quebec, Col Hug returned to the Regiment as the Adjutant in August 1981, a post he held for two years. In January 1984, he assumed command of C Squadron, The Royal Canadian Dragoons, the independent tank squadron of the Army, at Canadian Forces Base Gagetown, New Brunswick. Following the worst year of his life at the Canadian Forces Command and Staff College in Toronto, Ontario, he was appointed G3 of the Special Service Force at Canadian Forces Base Petawawa, Ontario.

3.   On promotion to Lieutenant Colonel on 1 July 1988, Col Hug was posted to National Defence Headquarters in Ottawa, Ontario as the Director of Land Requirements 3 responsible for all aspects of the Army's armoured vehicle fleets. Col Hug assumed command of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) in Calgary, Alberta in August 1991, an appointment that he held until July 1993. He subsequently returned to Land Force Command (Army HQ) as G3 Armour and then G3 Operations and Plans during one of the most hectic operational periods in the past 40 years.

4.   Promoted to Colonel in November 1995, he was posted as the Chief of Staff of the United Disengagement Observer Force on the Golan Heights between Israel and Syria and assumed the duties concurrently of Canadian Contingent Commander UN Middle East. His last posting saw him return to NDHQ as the Special Advisor to the Deputy Chief of Defence Staff. Col Hug successfully completed the all arms tactics course at Warminster, UK; the Canadian Land Forces Command and Staff Course in Kingston, Ontario; and Division 1 of the UK Army Staff Course in Shrivenham, UK.

5   His second career commenced in 1999 with a 19 month transition as a project manager in a mid-size information management / technology company in Ottawa. His next career change resulted in him creating his own company, MAGI Consulting Inc., wherein he provides strategic planning, project management and performance management consulting and training. He has coordinated the successful delivery of over 120 courses in English and French and personally delivered or co-delivered over 80 courses to 21 clients across Canada and internationally. Notably, he participated in the team led by MGen Ross (Retd) in the multi-phase review of the national security sector of Trinidad and Tobago covering, amongst other areas, the functioning of the National Security Council, national intelligence systems, national security plans, criminal justice reform, and the Defence Force.

6.   Col Hug is a Life Member of the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps Association; a Life Member of the Royal Military College Club of Canada and has been a volunteer member of the Board of Directors of the Project Management Institute Ottawa Valley Outaouais Chapter. Col Hug is married to Maria Rocha-Hug; they continue to reside in Ottawa. He has three daughters: Angela, Laura and Christina and one Grandson. He enjoys cycling, swimming, skiing, fishing and hunting.
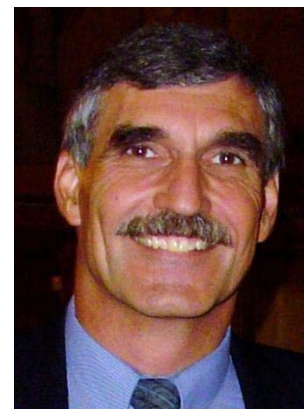
ANNEX D - <u>VICTORIA CROSS RECIPIENTS</u>

ARTICLE D100 - <u>GENERAL</u>

1.   The Victoria Cross is awarded for most conspicuous bravery or some daring or pre-eminent act of valour or self-sacrifice or extreme devotion to duty in the presence of the enemy. The Victoria Cross was instituted by a Royal Warrant dated 29 January 1856, but was made retrospective to the autumn of 1854 to cover the period of the Crimean War.

2.   Each Victoria Cross is inscribed on the obverse with the words *"For Valour"* and on the reverse with the recipient's name, rank, number and unit on the suspension bar. The date of the act of bravery is inscribed in the centre of the reverse of the cross.

Figure 94 – Victoria Cross

3.   Three members of the Regiment have been awarded the Victoria Cross. The first, Sergeant Richardson's during the South African War, was the first Victoria Cross to be awarded to a Canadian in a Canadian unit.

**Figure 95 – Regimental VC Winners (Left to Right: Sergeant A.H. Richardson, VC;
Brigadier F.M.W. Harvey, VC, MC, C de G, CD; and Lieutenant G.M. Flowerdew, VC)**

ARTICLE D101 – <u>SERGEANT A.H. RICHARDSON, VC</u>

1.   Arthur Herbert Lindsay Richardson was born in Liverpool, England in 1873. In 1898 he immigrated to Canada, where he worked on a ranch for some time before joining the North West Mounted Police. At the outbreak of the South African War, Richardson joined Strathcona's Horse, and saw action in South Africa, where he won the Victoria Cross. Little is known of Richardson's subsequent activities until his return to England in 1916, where he worked as a labourer in Liverpool for many years. He died in Liverpool, England on 16 December 1932 and was buried in St James's Cemetery.

2.   Citation:

> "On 5 July, 1900 at Wolver Spruit about fifteen miles north of Standerton, a party of Lord Strathcona's Horse, only 38 in number, came into contact and was engaged at close quarters, with a force of 80 of the enemy. When the order to retire was given, Sergeant Richardson rode back under heavy crossfire and picked up Corporal McArthur whose horse had been shot and who was wounded in two places and rode with him out of fire. At the time that this act of gallantry was performed, Sergeant Richardson was within 300 yards of the enemy, and was himself riding a wounded horse."

3.   Richardson's Victoria Cross is displayed at the Canadian War Museum in Ottawa, Ontario.

ARTICLE D102 - <u>BRIGADIER F.M.W. HARVEY, VC, MC, C DE G, CD</u>

1.   Frederick Maurice Watson Harvey was born in Athboy, Ireland on 1 September 1888. He is also the holder of the Military Cross. The action described in the citation took place in front of the village of Guyencourt, France on 27 March 1917. During the Second World War Frederick Maurice Watson Harvey attained the rank of Brigadier and was District Officer Commanding for Alberta. He died in the Colonel Belcher Hospital in Calgary, Alberta on 21 August 1980 at the age of 92. He was buried in Fort MacLeod, Alberta on 25 August 1980.

2.   Citation:

> "For most conspicuous bravery and devotion to duty. During an attack by his regiment on a village, a party of the enemy ran forward to a wired trench just in front of the village and opened rapid fire and machine gun fire at a very close range, causing heavy casualties in the leading troop. At this critical moment when the enemy showed no intention of retiring and fire was still intense, Lieutenant Harvey, who was in command of the leading troop, ran forward well ahead of his men and dashed at the trench, still fully manned, jumped the wire, shot the machine gunner and captured the gun. His most courageous act undoubtedly had a decisive effect on the success of the operation."

3.   Harvey's Victoria Cross is on permanent display at the The Military Museums in Calgary, Alberta. Harvey's Victoria Cross is the only one that is displayed such that both sides can been seen by visitors.

ARTICLE D103 - <u>LIEUTENANT G.M. FLOWERDEW, VC</u>

1.   Gordon Muriel Flowerdew was born in Billingsford, Norfolk, England on 2 January 1885. He was educated at Framlingham College, Suffolk. In 1903 he came to Canada, where he lived at Duck Lake, Saskatchewan and at Queensbay, Kootenay Lake and Wallachin, British Columbia. In 1914 he enlisted in the 31st British Columbia Horse, later transferring to Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians). The cavalry charge described in the citation took place 30 March 1918, at the Bois de Moreuil (Moreuil Wood) in France. Lieutenant Flowerdew died of wounds on the following day. He was buried in Namps-au-Val British cemetery, eleven miles south west of Amiens, France.

2.   Citation:

> "For most conspicuous bravery and dash when in command of a squadron detailed for special service of a very important nature. On reaching the first objective, Lieutenant Flowerdew saw two lines of the enemy, each about sixty strong, with machine guns in the centre and flanks, one line about two hundred yards behind the other. Realizing the critical nature of the operation and how many depended upon it, Lieutenant Flowerdew ordered a troop under Lieutenant Harvey to dismount and carry out a special movement while he led the remaining three troops to the charge. The squadron (less one troop) passed over both lines, killing many of the enemy with the sword, and wheeling about galloped at them again. Although the squadron had then lost about 70 percent of its number, killed and wounded, from rifle and machine gun fire directed on it from the front and both flanks, the enemy broke and retired. The survivors then established themselves in a position, where later they were joined, after much hand-to-hand fighting, by Lieutenant Harvey's party. Lieutenant Flowerdew was dangerously wounded through both thighs during the operation, but continued to cheer on his men. There can be no doubt that this officer's great valour was the prime factor in the capture of the position."

3.   After a long loan period at the The Military Museums ending in February 2003, Flowerdew's Victoria Cross is now displayed at Framlingham College in Suffolk, United Kingdom.

ANNEX E - <u>MEMORIALS</u>

SECTION 1 - <u>GENERAL</u>

1.   By definition, a memorial is "an object, institution, or custom established in memory of a person or event."[1] The very name Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) serves as a memorial to Sir Donald A. Smith, Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal and to the raising of Strathcona's Horse in 1900. Many of the Regiment's customs described in this manual help to perpetuate the memory of the Regiment and its proud service to Canada. Similarly, many objects have been dedicated to the Regiment or to the memory of individual Strathconas as lasting memorials of their deeds or of the Regiment's losses.

2.   The purpose of this annex is to describe memorials that have been dedicated to the Regiment or individual Strathconas. Strathconas should take great pride in the influence that the Regiment has had throughout Canada and in Canada's involvement in key events in modern history. That sense of pride comes a high price of continued resolve, dedication and perseverance of many individuals fighting for common values. For some, however, paying that price resulted in loss of life. The details of the many memorials to Strathconas throughout the world have been included in this annex to ensure that the actions of the Regiment and individuals are not forgotten.

3.   Two of the key memorials that are integral to day-to-day regimental customs and traditions are the Memorial Gong and the Roll of Honour, both of which are maintained in regimental lines. These two memorials are described fully at CHAPTER 4 -SECTION 3 - <u>MEMORIALS</u>. Numerous other regimental memorials in the form of plaques, cairns, stained glass windows, statues, vehicles and other monuments can be found throughout Canada and around the world and are described here as appropriate.

4.   The scope of this annex has been limited to listing memorials to the Regiment as a whole or to Strathconas as individuals. Due to the sheer volume, war graves and cemeteries are not included here nor are the numerous monuments and dedications to Lord Strathcona himself.

5.   The annex should continue to be developed when information about older memorials is revealed and newer memorials initiated or dedicated. To assist the Regimental Society, a full description containing all details of any inscriptions, titles/names, type of memorial, purpose(s), dedications and locations along with information regarding when, where, how and by whom it was dedicated/unveiled along with photos will be needed.

6.   The list of memorials in this annex has been divided into: Monuments, Cairns and Statues; Vehicle Monuments; Other Monuments; and Dedications

Figure 95 – Grave Stone of Unknown Strathcona, Chauny Communal Cemetery, France

---

[1] *The Oxford Concise Dictionary.*

SECTION 2 - <u>MONUMENTS, CAIRNS AND STATUES</u>

ARTICLE E200 - <u>THE STRATHCONA MONUMENT – MONTREAL, QUEBEC</u>

1.   The large equestrian statue of a dismounted soldier holding a rearing horse by Canadian sculptor George William Hill (1862-1934) has rested in Dominion Square (now called Dorchester Square) in Montreal, Quebec since 24 May 1907. The soldier's uniform is that of Strathcona's Horse during the South African War. The monument itself was dedicated to Lord Strathcona and all Canadian units who fought in the South African War.

2.   The badges of Strathcona's Horse, Canadian Mounted Rifles, The Royal Canadian Infantry and The Royal Canadian Artillery are on the northwest, southwest, southeast and northeast corners respectively. Also inscribed or depicted on the plinth are the following:

Figure 96 - Strathcona Monument, Montreal

[West-Front Side]

IMPERIUM ET LIBERTAS

(Below is a profile (head and shoulders) of Lord Strathcona with MCM, MCMII written below)

[East-Rear Side]

KIMBERLY
PAARDENBURG
JOHANNESBURG
MAFEKING
PRETORIA
HARTS RIVER
BELFAST
LYDENBURG
DIAMOND HILL
FABER'S PUT

[North Side]

IN GRATEFUL RECOGNITION OF
THE PATRIOTISM AND PUBLIC
SPIRIT SHOWN BY LORD
STRATHCONA AND MOUNT ROYAL
IN RAISING AND EQUIPPING A
REGIMENT OF HORSE FOR SERVICE IN
SOUTH
AFRICA AS AN EVIDENCE OF HIS SYMPATHY
WITH THE CAUSE OF IMPERIAL UNITY

(Below is a scene of KOMATI RIVER – BELFAST)

[South Side]

TO
COMMEMORATE
THE
HEROIC DEVOTION OF THE
CANADIANS WHO FELL IN THE
SOUTH AFRICAN WAR
AND THE VALOUR OF THEIR
COMRADES

(Below is a scene of PAARDENBURG)

Figure 97 – South African War Memorial, Calgary

ARTICLE E201 - <u>SOUTH AFRICAN WAR MEMORIAL – CALGARY, ALBERTA</u>

1.   The equestrian statue in Central Memorial Park in Calgary, Alberta was dedicated:

IN MEMORY OF THE BRAVE MEN OF
THE PROVINCE OF ALBERTA WHO IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN WAR OF 1899 – 1902
GAVE THEIR LIVES FOR THEIR COUNTRY'S HONOUR.
THIS MONUMENT IS ERECTED BY THE CITIZENS OF CALGARY. 1914.

2.   Although the monument is not dedicated to the Regiment, the figure is that of a mounted trooper of Strathcona's Horse. On either sides of the plinth are bronze plates with profiles of Queen Victoria and King Edward VII. The statue was dedicated in 1914 through donations from fellow veterans, Senator Patrick Burns and the Colonel MacLeod Chapter of the Imperial Order of the Daughters of the Empire (IODE). Sculpted by P. Herbert, the statue was considered to be one of the four finest equestrian statues in the world.

ARTICLE E202 - <u>SOUTH AFRICAN MONUMENT TO WAR DEAD – LYNDENBURG, SOUTH AFRICA</u>

Figure 98 – The South African Monument to the War Dead

1.   The South African Monument to War Dead, one of the Regiment's Celebration 2000 projects, was unveiled in Lyndenburg, South Africa in February 2000 in the presence of a small contingent of serving and retired Strathconas and their wives.

2.   The South African Monument to War Dead commemorates the members of the Regiment who fell in the South African War. The names of twenty-seven fallen Strathconas, along with the dates and locations of where they fell, are engraved in a plaque on the front side of the eight-foot high, stone monument. These names are listed at Figure 74.

3.   The back of the monument was dedicated to the Regiment's first winner of the Victoria Cross, Sergeant A.H.L. Richardson. This plaque reads:

STRATHCONA'S HORSE
CANADA

THE VICTORIA CROSS
AN ACT OF VALOUR

ON JULY 5, 1900, AT WOLVE SPRUIT SGT
A.H.L. RICHARDSON RESCUED A
COMRADE UNDER RELENTLESS ENEMY
FIRE IN ONE OF THE MOST DARING
FEATS OF THE ENTIRE WAR

STRATHCONA'S HORSE

CANADA
ROLL OF HONOUR

	RSM	F. ELLIOT	17.10.1900	PRETORIA
514	SGT	PARKER, E.C.	30.07.1900	WATERVAL
465	SGT	BROTHERS, J.	04.09.1900	BADFONTEIN
335	SGT	LOGAN, A.E.H.	04.09.1900	BADFONTEIN
332	CPL	LEE, B.H.	06.07.1900	WATERVAL
500	CPL	ST. GEORGE,	21.12.1900	JOHANNESBUR
402	TPR	ARNOLD, F.G.	11.08.1900	WATERVAL
508	TPR	CRUICKSHANK, C.	04.09.1900	BADFONTEIN
368	TPR	INGRAM, W.H.	29.12.1900	CLOCOLAN
509	TPR	JENKINS, A.	01.07.1900	WATERVAL
297	TPR	JONES, A.	04.09.1900	BADFONTEIN
152	TPR	NORRIS, F.	05.07.1900	VLAKFONTEIN
284	TPR	WEST, W.	04.09.1900	BADFONTEIN
312	TPR	WIGGINS, H.J.	04.09.1900	BADFONTEIN
171	TPR	BANKS, E.M.	02.06.1900	CAPE TOWN
398	TPR	CANCELLOR, E.V.	13.11.1900	GERMISTON
321	TPR	COTTERILL, C.W.	24.06.1900	DURBAN
51	TPR	DANDY, C.R.	11.12.1900	POTCHEFSTRO
324	TPR	DAVIS, L.S.	09.10.1900	PRETORIA
361	TPR	FERNIE, M.	31.01.1901	BLOEMFONTEI
381	TPR	HARRIS, C.B.	22.01.1901	WOOLWICH
629	TPR	HUNT, W. DEVERE	14.11.1900	PRETORIA
364	TPR	HUNTER, E.T.	16.02.1901	GRAVESEND
221	TPR	MCINTOSH, E.	28.01.1901	BLOEMFONTEI
483	TPR	MCNICOLL, A.	19.07.1900	NEWCASTLE
157	TPR	SCOTT, L.B.	21.11.1900	POTCHEFSTRO
392	TPR	SIMMILL, J.	25.04.1900	CAPE TOWN

ERECTED IN PROUD MEMORY BY
THE LORD STRATHCONA'S HORSE (ROYAL CANADIANS) REGIMENTAL
SOCIETY FEBRUARY 2000

Figure 98 – Point 204 Gothic Line Canadian Memorial, Tavullia, Italy

ARTICLE E203 - <u>POINT 204 GOTHIC LINE CANADIAN MEMORIAL – TAVULLIA, ITALY</u>

1.   On 7 September 1997, the Citizens of Tavullia, Italy unveiled a memorial to the Canadian Army in the Gothic Line in August and September 1944. Architect Giuseppe Rombini designed the monument, which is located on Point 204 or "Pozzo Alto Ridge." Although the memorial was dedicated to the Canadian Army, Point 204 has very special meaning to Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians). It was at this location that the Regiment fought a fierce battle critical to the breaching of the Gothic Line on 31 August/1 September 1944.[2]

2.   The memorial includes two medal tablets sculpted by Terenzio Pedini. One of the plaques, which lists all the names of the Divisions, Brigades, Corps and Regiments of I Canadian Corps, reads:

THIS PLAQUE IS DEDICATED TO THE CANADIAN REGIMENTS AND CORPS WHO FOUGHT WITH VALOR IN THE GOTHIC LINE IN 1944, AND IN TRIBUTE TO THE 1000+ SOLDIERS WHO PAID THE SUPREME SACRIFICE FOR FREEDOM

3.   The other plaque reads:

THE GOTHIC LINE – AUGUST/SEPTEMBER 1944

HERE THE HEROIC DEEDS OF THE 1 CANADIAN CORPS BREACHED THE IMPOSING GERMAN DEFENSES WITH THE LOSS OF OVER 1,000 LIVES FOR THE FREEDOM OF ITALY AND PEACE IN EUROPE IN WITNESS TO AND AS A WARNING FOR FUTURE GENERATIONS

ARTICLE E204 - <u>NUNSPEET MEMORIAL CAIRN – NUNSPEET, THE NETHERLANDS</u>

1.   Nunspeet, the Netherlands was the last town liberated by Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) during the Second World War. The Regiment had been called on by the Dutch Underground to enter the city in order to flush out the remains of the occupation forces and to collect prisoners. The Regiment commemorated the fifty-fifth anniversary of the liberation of the town and inaugurated a Memorial Cairn at the Old Municipal Hall on 19 April 2000.

2.   The commemorative monument was made in the Netherlands and paid for by the town of Nunspeet. The plaque was also made in the Netherlands and paid for by the Regimental Society. The engraving, which is in English, French and Dutch, reads:

---

[2] Regimental accounts of the Battle on Point 204 are detailed in: *Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians): Record of Achievement* (pp. 112-127); *Always a Strathcona* (pp. 175-176); and "Battle Honours: The Gothic Line," *The Strathconian*, 1995, pp. 127-129 (reprinted from *The Strathconian*, Volume 65 (1957) and May 1963).

Figure 99 – Lieutenant-General W.A. Milroy, DSO, DC (Retired) at the Nunspeet Memorial on 19 April 2000

Ter gelegenheid van het 100-jarige bestaan van LORD STRATHCONA'S HORSE (ROYAL CANADIANS) het regiment dat op 19 april 1945 Nunspeet als bevrijder binnentrok

Without the past, the present has no future
Sans le passé, le present n'a pas d'avenir
Zonder verleden heeft het heden geen toekomst

19 April 2000

ARTICLE E205 - THE KOREAN VETERANS NATIONAL WALL OF REMEMBRANCE – BRAMPTON, ONTARIO

1.   The Korean Veterans National Wall of remembrance is a 200-foot long, polished granite wall with 516 bronze plaques representing the names of fallen soldiers. The centrepiece is a larger bronze plaque, which lists the names of the Canadian units that participated in the Korean War, including Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians). Five troopers of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), who are buried at the United Nations Cemetery in Pusan, Korea, are honoured on the memorial:[3]

> *Gray, Kenneth Allen 14 June 1952*
> *Neufield, Leonard George 20 August 1952*
> *Smillie, John Fulton 17 December 1951*
> *Squires, Samuel Joseph 10 June 1952*
> *Waldener, Gordon Harry 2 October 1952*

2.   The Korean Veteran National Wall of Remembrance was unveiled at the Meadowvale Cemetery in Brampton, Ontario on 27 July 1997. The Korean Veterans Association holds a memorial service at the National Wall annually on the 27th of July.[4]

ARTICLE E206 - KOREAN VETERANS CAIRN – WINNIPEG, MANITOBA

1.   As indicated on the website of the Lieutenant-General R.R. Crabbe Chapter of the Canadian Association of Veterans in United Nations Peacekeeping, many Canadian communities have added Korean War plaques to existing cenotaphs and monuments to honour losses from that conflict. Instead, the Manitoba Chapter established the Korean Veterans Cairn to represents one central place to honour these veterans. The polished-granite Korean Veterans Cairn, details forty-nine names of Manitobans who lost their lives in Korea or who died in the Canoe River

Figure 100 – Korean Veterans Cairn, Winnipeg

---

[3] These names are also listed in the Regiment's Roll of Honour.

[4] [Online] http://www.stemnet.nf.ca/monuments/on/bramont1.htm, 8 April 2003 and [Online] http://www.cavunp-manitoba.com/koreafatalaties.html, 11 June 2004.

train wreck on their way to Korea. The cairn was unveiled in the Brookside Cemetery in Winnipeg, Manitoba on 13 September 1998.[5]

2.   The name Trooper Leonard George Nuefield, Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) is inscribed on the Cairn. In addition, the Province of Manitoba has named lakes, islands, bays and other geological features honouring those Manitobans whose names appear on the Cairn. Leonard Neufield Lake is located in the east part of central Manitoba.

ARTICLE E207 - <u>MEMORIAL CAIRN – CANADIAN FORCES BASE BORDEN, ONTARIO</u>

1.   Located in Worthington Park in Canadian Forces Base Borden, Ontario, a plaque on a cement cairn reads:

This memorial, erected by
the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps, is dedicated to the memory
of several armoured personnel killed
during peacetime military service.

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Lt. C.C. Van Straubenzee, 10 May 57
Tpr McDavid G.E., 29 Nov 57
Tpr Wiley R.J., 7 Sep 61

2.   The above-mentioned Strathconas, as well as other members of the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps not listed here, were killed while on active service with the United Nations Emergency Force (UNEF) in Egypt between 1956 and 1967. The Protestant Chapel of Saint Luke and Saint John at the Edmonton Garrison also prominently displays a large brass plaque "in the memory of Trooper Wiley R.J. Recce Sqn. LdS.H.(RC) 1961." Absent from the Borden memorial is Corporal George A. Gauthier, a Strathcona who was attached to 56 Transportation Company, Royal Canadian Army Service Corps, who died on 20 February 1960 also while serving with UNEF.[6]

Figure 101 – Memorial Carin, Borden

3.   The Royal Canadian Armoured Corps Association (Cavalry) unveiled a United Nations Peacekeepers Monument in Worthington Park on 19 October 2002 in memory of Armoured Corps soldiers who died during peacekeeping operations. All four names listed above, in addition to twelve other Armoured Corps soldiers, are engraved on the polished granite memorial.[7]

ARTICLE E208 - <u>MEMORIAL CAIRN – GAGETOWN TRAINING AREA, NEW BRUNSWICK</u>

---

[5] [Online] http://www.cavunp-manitoba.com/korea.html, 11 June 2004.

[6] John Marteinson and Michael R. McNorgan, *The Royal Canadian Armoured Corps: An Illustrated History*, pp. 358-9.

[7] *Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Newsletter*, (Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Society, Vol.19, No. 1, Spring 2004), p. 8.

A memorial cairn is located at the junction of the Hamstead and Jerusalem roads in the Gagetown training area. The cement cairn displays a bronze regimental badge, five sections of Centurion Tank track painted in regimental colours and a plaque, which reads:

THIS PLAQUE WAS ERECTED DURING EX RENDEZVOUS
81
BY ALL RANKS LORD STRATHCONA'S HORSE (ROYAL
CANADIANS) TO MARK THE FIRST VISIT OF THE REGIMENT TO
GAGETOWN AND TO HONOUR THE MEMORY OF
THE MAINLY STRATHCONA CREW KILLED
WHILE TRAINING HERE ON 17 MAY 1973.

IN
MEMORIAM

WO MAY R.J. LDSH(RC) AND 8CH
CPL HOLIDAY D.E. LDSH(RC) AND
8CH AND
CAPT P.A. POISSON R22R

Figure 102 – Memorial Cairn, Gagetown

ARTICLE E209 - <u>STONE CAIRN – HARVEY BUILDING, EDMONTON, ALBERTA</u>

Figure 103 – Harvey Building Stone Cairn

1.   The stone cairn in front of the Harvey Building has a special connection to all First World War soldiers who trained at Camp Sarcee in Calgary, Alberta. The cairn was originally erected at the front entrance to Harvey Barracks in Calgary in 1984. The cairn has a bilingual plaque detailing its most recent dedication:

BRIGADIER F.M.W.
HARVEY VC, MC, C DE G
BUILDING OFFICIALLY
OPENED
20 OCTOBER
1996
BY
THE HONOURABLE A. ANNE, MCLELLAN
MINISTER OF NATURAL RESOURCES
CANADA
The opening of this building took place on the occasion of the move
of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)
from Calgary to Edmonton

2.   The cairn was initially dedicated in the presence of the Colonel of the Regiment, Major-General P.A. Neatby, CD. The original plaque on the cairn reads:

THIS CAIRN, CONSTRUCTED FROM STONES WHICH
WERE PLACED ON THE SIDE OF SIGNAL HILL BY
SOLDIERS DURING WWI TO FORM REPLICAS OF THEIR
UNIT BADGES, IS DEDICATED TO ALL THOSE WHO
TRAINED AT
SARCEE CAMP FOR SERVICE OF THEIR COUNTRY IN
FOREIGN LANDS.

ERECTED BY
THE LDSH(RC) REGIMENTAL ASSOCIATION
11 NOV 1984

ARTICLE E210 - STRATHCONAS MONOLITH – HARVEY BUILDING, EDMONTON, ALBERTA

1.   The three-foot high monolith, in the shape of a rough-cut grave marker, rests at the entrance to the Harvey Building in Edmonton. The bronze plaque on the monolith reads:

DEDICATED TO THE
MEMORY OF ALL FALLEN
STRATHCONAS

PERSEVERANCE

2.   The monolith was initially placed in Strathcona Field, in Sarcee Barracks, Calgary, Alberta on 11 November 1977. The monolith became a central part in the Regiment's Remembrance Day ceremonies in Calgary. The monolith was put in its current place in 1999, just prior to Celebration 2000 activities.
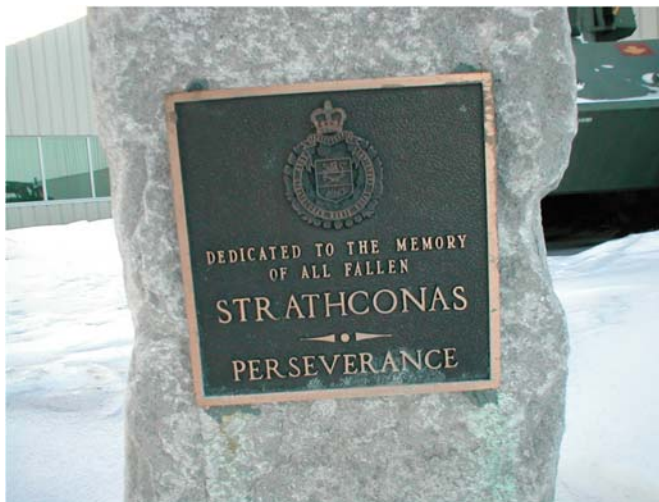
Figure 104 – Strathconas Monolith and Bronze Plaque

ARTICLE E211 - LORD STRATHCONA STATUE – ALBERTA LEGISLATURE, EDMONTON, ALBERTA

1.   The statue of Donald A. Smith, Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal, which is the first of its kind on the grounds of the Alberta Legislature, commemorates the 100th anniversary of the raising of Strathcona's Horse. Don Begg of Cochrane, Alberta sculpted the statue that depicts Lord Strathcona driving the last spike of the Canadian Pacific Railway. The statue is similar to the one on the grounds of the Military Museums in Calgary, Alberta. A bronze badge of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) is on the plinth along with the following engravings:

This Statue is dedicated to the
Officers and Soldiers of Lord
Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)
in recognition of a century of service to Canada

Unveiled on the 17th of May 2000 by Her Excellency The
Right Honourable Adrienne Clarkson, CM, OMM, CD
Governor General of Canada

Figure 105 – Lord Strathcona Statue, Alberta Legislature Building

2.   A second plaque reads:

Perseverance

Donald Alexander Smith, GCMG, GCVO, (KCMG)
Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal, 1820-1914
Governor of the Hudson's Bay Company

President of the Bank Montreal
Member of Parliament
Founding members of the Canadian Pacific Railway
High Commissioner to Great Britain

Founder of Strathcona's Horse

ARTICLE E212 - <u>SAM STEELE MEMORIAL – ORILLIA, ONTARIO</u>

1.   At the final stop of the Strathcona Mounted Troop's Embarkation 2000 tour, the Troop stopped in Orillia, Ontario to participate in a number of commemorative events. Organized by Murray A. Cayley and Chief Warrant Officer C.H. Shadbolt, OMM, CD (Retired), the Sam Steele Memorial was unveiled at the Pearson Farm (the Steele family homestead) in Fairvalley in Oro-Medenite, Ontario on 13 July 2000. The five-foot high granite marker, which depicts badges of The Greg and Simcoe Forresters, The Royal Canadian Mounted Police, Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) and the South African Police Service, reads:

THIS STONE DEDICATED
JULY 13, 2000 BY
LORD STRATHCONA'S HORSE (ROYAL
CANADIANS)
TO THE MEMORY OF THEIR FIRST COMMANDING
OFFICER SAM STEELE
ON THE ONE HUNDREDTH
ANNIVERSARY
OF HIS RAISING THE
REGIMENT

TOGETHER WITH THE ROYAL CANADIAN MOUNTED
POLICE HONOURING
CANADA'S GREATEST POLICE
OFFICER

2.   The marker also lists the names of the dignitaries who were present at the unveiling and finishes with "PERSEVERANCE."[8]

ARTICLE E213 - <u>ROSSLAND CENOTAPH – ROSSLAND, BRITISH COLUMBIA</u>

On 9 September 2000, the town of Rossland, British Columbia added a plaque to their cenotaph. The bronze plaque was dedicated to three Strathconas killed in the South African War: "CW Cotterill, BH Lee and E MacKintosh."

ARTICLE E214 – <u>KANDAHAR AIRFIELD MEMORIAL – KANDAHAR, AFGHANISTAN</u>

During Canada's combat role in Afghanistan, Kandahar Airfield (KAF) was the centralized base for Canadian Forces. A monument was erected to honour the fallen. It consisted of 158 black granite etchings of every Canadian killed. In November 2011, the monument was disassembled and shipped to Canada.

Figure 106 – Kandahar Airfield

---

[8] *Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Newsletter*, (Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Society, Vol. 16, No. 1, Spring 2001), pp. 11 and 13.

ARTICLE E215 – AFGHANISTAN MEMORIAL AND MEMORIAL FOREST – CFB PETAWAWA, ONTARIO

On 20 August 2010, CFB Petawawa unveiled a monument inscribed with the names of all 158 Canadians killed. A memorial forest was also planted, with each tree bearing a plaque dedicated to an individual soldier.

Figure 107 – Afghanistan Memorial and Memorial Forest, Petewawa

ARTICLE E216 – AFGHANISTAN REPATRIATION MEMORIAL – TRENTON, ONTARIO

On 10 November 2012, the city of Trenton, Ontario was dedicated to honour those Canadian soldiers who died while serving in Afghanistan. The monument lists all 158 Canadian soldiers who have died in Afghanistan.

ARTICLE E217 – DONALD SMITH DISPLAY

The Military Museum in Calgary, AB produced a display dedicated to Donald Smith as part of their rededication ceremony in late 2014.

Figure 108 - Afghanistan Repatriation Memorial, Trenton

ARTICLE E218 – DONALD ALEXANDER SMITH, BARON STRATHCONA STAINED GLASS WINDOW
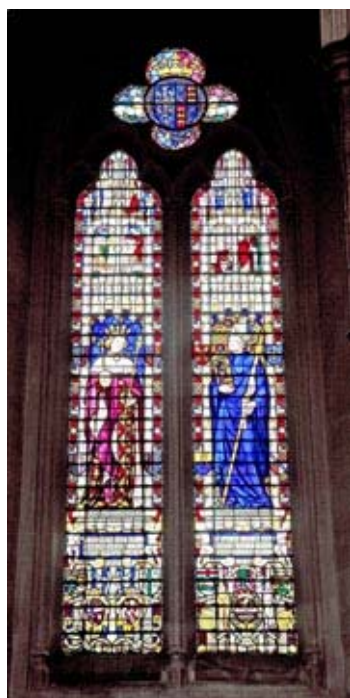
Part of the Great West Window in Westminster Abbey's Nave features a stained glass memorial dedicated to Donald Smith that was unveiled 1 July 1919. The double window has King Richard II on the left pane, and Abbot Nicholas Litlyngton on the right; below them are several crests including the cap badge of The Regiment, the crest of Canada, the Hudson's Bay Company, Province of Manitoba and Quebec as well as the universities of McGill and Aberdeen[9].

Figure 109 – Donald Smith Display at The Military Museum in Calgary, Alberta.

Figure 110 – Donald Alexander Smith Stained Glass Window in Westminster Abbey

---

[9] *Stained Glass of Westminster Abbey,* (Westminster, Jarrold Publishing, 2002). pp. 26-27

SECTION 3 - <u>VEHICLE MONUMENTS</u>

ARTICLE E300 - <u>GENERAL</u>

This section details the Regiment's vehicle monuments which act as memorials or commemorate specifics events or actions. As such, general vehicle monuments have been excluded.

ARTICLE E301 - <u>"STRATHCONA" TANK – HARVEY BUILDING, EDMONTON, ALBERTA</u>

A Centurion Tank monument used to adorn the front entrance of Harvey Barracks in Calgary, Alberta with the cairn described at ARTICLE E209 - Stone Cairn – Harvey Building, Edmonton, Alberta.[10] "STRATHCONA" (52S1090), was moved to its current position in front of the Harvey Building in Edmonton in 1996. The tank now rests behind the monolith discussed at page E-8. There are no plaques on the tank itself. The tank is currently used to note the presence of the Commanding Officer in regimental lines as indicated when the Commanding Officer's pennant is flying from one of the tank's antennas.

Figure 111 – "STRATHCONA" with Strathconas Monolith

ARTICLE E302 - <u>CENTURION TANK – EDMONTON, ALBERTA</u>

1.   The Centurion Tank (5201107) located near Headquarters 1 Canadian Mechanized Brigade Group at Steele Barracks in Edmonton, Alberta acts as a memorial to all Strathconas. The plaque on the tank reads:

This memorial commemorates the officers and men of
Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)
who gallantly died in the service of their country in the South African War, the First World War, the Second World War, the Korean War and in the service of the United Nations.
Dedicated by the officers and Men and the Old Comrades of the Regiment on the forty-seventh anniversary of the Battle of Moreuil Wood

2.   The Colonel Commandant, Major-General F.F. Worthington, CB, MC, MM, CD, originally dedicated the tank during 1965 Moreuil Wood ceremonies.[11] The tank remained in Strathcona Field until1996 when it was moved to Edmonton with the Regiment.

---

[10] The original Centurion Tank at the entrance to Harvey Barracks was CFR 5201107. In the years leading up to Celebration 2000 and the establishment of the Historical Vehicle Troop, some tanks were shuffled due to their suitability for restoration.
[11] The original Centurion Tank was CFR 53.81314 (see the 1965 *The Strathconian*, p. 25).

ARTICLE E303 - "ARGYLE" TANK – OOSTERBEEK, THE NETHERLANDS

For years a Sherman Tank (M4A4 T-288627) with Canadian markings and the name "ARGYLE" adorned the entrance to the Hartenstein Airborne Museum in Oosterbeek, the Netherlands. After research by the The Military Museums staff in 1987, it was determined that the tank belonged to Fourth Troop, A Squadron, Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) during the Second World War. A restored Argyle was formally dedicated in the presence of a small delegation of Strathconas and local dignitaries on 2 June 1988. The tank is displayed with a regimental badge engraved in granite and commemorates the part the Regiment played in the liberation of the Netherlands during the Second World War.[12] See page H-5 for a description of Fourth Troop vehicle names.

Figure 112 – Argyle Tank, Oosterbeek, The Netherlands

ARTICLE E304 - "SPARTAN" TANK – EDMONTON, ALBERTA

The Sherman Tank "SPARTAN" (M4A3E8 CT-261354) used to sit at the front entrance to Harvey Barracks in Calgary, Alberta. The tank was moved to Edmonton, Alberta in 1996 and now rests in front of the Harvey Building in Edmonton. There are no special plaques on the tank itself. Details surrounding its first dedication were not found. The tank is now co-located with the cairn at ARTICLE E209 - Stone Cairn – Harvey Building, Edmonton, Alberta.

ARTICLE E305 – "STEELE" TANK – TORONTO, ONTARIO

Designated to be erected at CFC Toronto, Leopard C2 "STEELE" will provide a visual reminder of the major contributions of not only a work-horse tank within the Canadian Forces arsenal but also the contributions of the Regiment's first Commanding Officer, Sir Sam Steele. This monument was dedicated in June 2013.

ARTICLE E306 – "ASPEN" TANK – KINGSTON, ONTARIO

Figure 113 – "STEELE" prior to installation

The Centurion tank 53-81288, located near the headquarters of 1 Canadian Division, carries the tactical and call signs of 2nd Troop, A Squadron, Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), 1 Canadian Infantry Brigade Group, 1 Canadian Division, circa 1958. The Troop leader was 2Lt J.K. Dangerfield.

---

[12] *The Strathconian*, 1988, p. 61.

SECTION 4 - OTHER MEMORIALS

ARTICLE E400 - BRASS PLAQUE – OWEN SOUND, ONTARIO

The Owen Sound Collegiate was initially founded in 1873 to provide secondary schooling in Owen Sound. A large bronze memorial plaque, which was removed from the old high school, currently rests in the main foyer of the new Owen Sound Collegiate & Vocational Institute. The plaque commemorates, along with two others killed in the South African War, Trooper W.H. (William) Ingram of Strathcona's Horse who died at Clocolan on 23 December 1900.[13]

ARTICLE E401 - GRANITE PLAQUE – RED DEER, ALBERTA

1.   The Red Deer Memorial Hospital was opened in 1904 to commemorate four Red Deer men who lost their lives in the South African War. The building is now part of the west wing of the Municipal Hospital. The inscription on the granite plaque on the wall of the hospital reads.

RED DEER MEMORIAL HOSPITAL TO
COMMEMORATE THE PATRIOTISM OF
CHARLES CRUIKSHANK ARCHIE MCNICHOL
ANGUS JENKINS
MEMBERS OF THE STRATHCONA [sic] HORSE
WHO FELL IN DEFENCE OF THE EMPIRE
IN SOUTH AFRICA
1901

2.   Lord Strathcona gave $1000 to Red Deer for the building of a memorial to the memory of the three Strathconas. The fund led to the opening of the Red Deer Memorial Hospital in 1904 at a cost of $2500.[14]

ARTICLE E402 - BRONZE PLAQUE – HAMILTON, ONTARIO

An ornate brass plaque erected is located in St James Armoury in Hamilton, Ontario. Engraved on the top of the plaque are the words: "this tablet was erected by the subscribers to the Hamilton patriotic fund to commemorate the services of the officers and men who volunteered and served in the South African War 1899 1902." The memorial lists 108 people, four of whom are listed as died or killed. The names are sorted under twelve different units, including Strathcona's Horse. Private E.M. Bland's name is on the monument as having served with Strathcona's Horse.[15]

ARTICLE E403 - THE OFFICERS' MEMORIAL – EDMONTON, ALBERTA

1.   In 1925, the officers of the Regiment presented a centrepiece to the Officers' Mess as a memorial to those officers killed in the First World War. The memorial is a silver statuette of a mounted Strathcona in Ceremonial Dress.

Figure 114 – The Officers' Memorial

2.   One side of the plinth bears a plate inscribed "PRESENTED BY THE PAST AND PRESENT OFFICERS 1925 IN MEMORY OF THEIR COMRADES WHO LAID DOWN THEIR LIVES IN THE GREAT WAR."

---

[13] Letter from the Owen Sound Collegiate & Vocational Institute Alumni Association to the Regiment, 10 November 2002.
[14] Red Deer Memorial Hospital, [Online] http://www.stemnet.nf.ca/monuments/ab/rdhospital.htm, 8 April 2003.
[15] National Inventory of Canadian Military Memorials [Online]
    http://www.forces.ca/hr/dhh/memorial/engraph/disply_e.asp?PID=2650&Cat=2.

3.   The reverse side bears the names of those officers who were killed while serving with the Regiment or while seconded to other regiments. The names engraved on the Officers' Memorial are listed at Table 11.

Table 14 – The Names Engraved on the Officers' Memorial

Lieutenant W.F. Boger, D.F.C.	*Lieutenant A.H. Bostock, D.S.O.*	*Major J.A. Critchley, M.C.*
Capt. D.C. Davis	*Lieutenant Col. M. Docherty, D.S.O.*	*Lieutenant J.M. Elliot M.C.*
Lieutenant G.M. Flowerdew, V.C.	*Lieutenant J. Galt*	*Lieutenant I.C. Macdonell*
Lieutenant A.L. Welsh M.C.	*Lieutenant H. Nicol*	*Major G.K.L. Pyman*
Lieutenant G. Rothnie	*Lieutenant Col. A.E. Shaw*	*Lieutenant F.E. Sprado*
Major J.G. Tatlow	*Lieutenant W. Tennant*	*Lieutenant H.V. Tripp*
Lieutenant A.L. Waugh	*Lieutenant R. Young*	

ARTICLE E404 - HONOUR ROLL – EDMONTON, ALBERTA

1.   Located in the Mariner Room in regimental lines, the Honour Roll lists the names of the officers killed during the Second World War while serving as Strathconas. The Honour Roll is a framed paper certificate with the title:

<div align="center">

1939 1945
For God and Country
Honour Roll

</div>

2.   The Honour Roll was presented to "the Officers' Mess Lord Strathcona's Horse (RC) by Lieutenants J.R.R. Boulanger and D.L. Dunn" on 17 March 1955. The names on the Honour Roll are listed at Table 12.

Table 15 – Officers who died During the Second World War While Serving as Strathconas

Lt R.A. Squires, 17th June 1944	*Lt H.V. Gar, 1st September 1944*
Capt R.G. Crimes, 24th May 1944	*Lt W.E. Ralston, 23rd September 1944*
Lt K. Philip, 24th May 1944	*Lt H.D. Shaw, 5th January 1945*
Capt G.L.A. Clarke, 25th May 1944	*Lt P.W.M. Brunet, 16th April 1945*
Lt C.R. Gilliat, 25th May 1944	*Lt A.M. MacKinnon, 17th April 1945*
Lt J.W. Black, 30th May 1944	*Capt W.M. Reade, 23rd April 1945*

ARTICLE E405 - <u>STAINED-GLASS WINDOW – SAINT GEORGE – EDMONTON, ALBERTA</u>

Just after the Regiment's departure for Germany in 1965, the Regiment presented a stained glass window to Saint George's Chapel in Currie Barracks, Calgary, Alberta. Major J. Bell presented the window on the Regiment's behalf on 5 December 1965. The stained glass was dedicated "to the Glory of God" by the Chapel Chaplain, Major H.H. Johnson. The stained glass depicts the regimental badge and a portrait of Saint George. Saint George's Chapel remained active for a short while after the Base closure in 1996. The stained glass was moved to the Edmonton Garrison Protestant Chapel of Saint Luke and Saint John in 1997.

ARTICLE E406 - <u>STAINED-GLASS WINDOW – COMMEMORATING SERVICE IN THE HEIMER AREA – EDMONTON, ALBERTA</u>

1.   The full background of the stained-glass window, which currently resides in the Edmonton Garrison Protestant Chapel of Saint Luke and Saint John, was not available. The stained glass contains a regimental badge and depicts two lambs. The name of the manufacture, "ENTW. J. RICHSTATTER AUSF. WILH. DERIX DÜSSELDORF-KAKERSWERTH" is etched on the bottom of the stained glass along with the main purpose:

To the Glory of God, and to commemorate service
by the Lord Strathcona's Horse (RC) in the Heimer Area
1965-1968.

2.   In addition, a small brass plaque indicates that this stained glass was at Saint George's Protestant Chapel at Canadian Forces Base Calgary until 15 June 1997. It is not known when the piece was put into Saint George's or whether this stained glass was originally placed in the base chapel in Germany or not.

3.   A second stained-glass window made in exactly the same style as the above is a now part of Our Lady of Loretto, the Roman Catholic Chapel at the Edmonton Garrison. The stained glass contains an identical regimental badge with the date "1968" etched in black on the bottom left corner. The stained glass depicts a scene of baby Jesus, Mary and Joseph. There is no dedication on the window. Similarly, the provenance of this stained glass is unclear.[16]

ARTICLE E407 - <u>BRONZE PLAQUE – CALGARY, ALBERTA</u>

The Manitoba Association of the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) erected a bronze plaque in the Strathcona Gallery at the Military Museums. The memorial was dedicated to the fallen members of the Regiment. The inscription reads:

IN MEMORY OF STRATHCONAS
WHO SERVED AND GAVE THEIR
LIVES FOR THEIR SOVEREIGN A
ND COUNTRY SINCE 1900

MEMBERS AND LADIES AUXILIARY
THAT WERE AFFILIATED WITH
THE MANITOBA ASSOCIATION
LORD STRATHCONA'S HORSE (R.C.)

BOER WAR, 1899-1902
WAR ONE, 1914-1918
WAR TWO, 1939-1945

---

[16] The details surrounding the dedication of a regimental stained-glass window in the chapels at Blue Beret Camp (BBC) in Nicosia, Cyprus and the current whereabouts of the window were also unknown at the time of publishing.

KOREA, 1951-1953
PEACEKEEPING, 1953
RISING RED RIVER, 1997

ARTICLE E408 - BRONZE PLAQUE – UNKNOWN

1.   The Regimental Archives contains a photograph of a bronze plaque sculptured by P.R. Marsh. The plaque is adorned with the regimental badge and reads:

ERECTED BY
THE LADIES AUXILIARY TO LORD
STRATHCONA'S HORSE (R.C.)
IN MEMORY OF MEMBERS OF THE REGIMENT
WHO GAVE THEIR LIVES IN THE WARS
1914 – 1918 AND 1939 – 1945.
"FAITHFUL UNTO DEATH"

2.   Unfortunately, the whereabouts of this plaque and any other details could not be found.

ARTICLE E409 - MEMORIAL PIANO – EDMONTON, ALBERTA

1.   A Heintzman & Co. baby grand piano, currently on long-term loan to the Edmonton Garrison Officers' Mess, acts as a unique memorial. The small brass plaque reads:

PRESENTED TO THE
OFFICERS' MESS
LORD STRATHCONA'S HORSE (ROYAL CANADIANS)
BY
MRS E.N. WRIGHT AND MAJOR C.H. CAMPBELL I
N MEMORY OF
AILEEN, BRUTUS, BRINDLE AND BEDFORD
AND ALL THE OTHER BEAUTIFUL AND GALLANT HORSE
WHO HAVE BEEN ON UNIT STRENGTH.

2.   The date and circumstances of the presentation were unknown.

ARTICLE E410 - AWARDS AND TROPHIES

Many regimental awards and trophies presented by the Regiment on an annual basis also act as memorials due to the circumstances surrounding the donation or donor, the event that the award perpetuates, or the fashion in which it is awarded. All regimental awards and trophies are detailed at Annex F - AWARDS AND TROPHIES. Two key regimental awards that act primarily as memorials are: the Hessin Memorial Sword described at page F-1 and the George Gardiner Memorial Sword listed at Table 16 at page F-6.

ARTICLE E411 - REGIMENTAL HEADQUARTERS "MEMORIAL" HALLWAY – EDMONTON, ALBERTA

Over the years the regiment has acquired photographs, paintings and other memorabilia, such as a trophy case, to honour past comrades and friends who have passed away. These items, which are too numerous to mention here, are collected in the hallway of Regimental Headquarters as memorials.

ARTICLE E412 - <u>REGIMENTAL GYM "IN MEMORY" WALL – EDMONTON, ALBERTA</u>

The walls in the Regimental Gym have been painted to include an honour roll of all Strathconas who have died in recent service. The list of names is located high on the wall to ensure no accidental defacing.

SECTION 5 - <u>DEDICATIONS</u>

ARTICLE E500 - <u>GENERAL</u>

Over the years many buildings, rooms and bases across Canada have been named after Strathconas to honour their service to the Regiment, the Canadian Forces or the nation. This section will detail those various dedications.

ARTICLE E501 - <u>HARVEY BARRACKS – CALGARY, ALBERTA</u>

Originally named Sarcee Barracks, Harvey Barracks in Calgary, Alberta was dedicated Brigadier F.M.W. Harvey, VC, MC, C de G, CD in 1981 after his death in 1980 (see pages 2-4 and D-2). Harvey Barracks in Calgary was closed shortly after the Regiment moved to Edmonton, Alberta in 1996.

ARTICLE E502 - <u>SIR ARCHIBALD MACDONELL ATHLETIC CENTRE – ROYAL MILITARY COLLEGE, KINGSTON, ONTARIO</u>

The Sir Archibald Macdonell Athletic Centre or SAM Centre at the Royal Military College is named after Lieutenant-General, Sir A.C. Macdonell, KCB, CMG, DSO, C de G. Born on 6 October 1864, Lieutenant-General Macdonell had a most distinguished record of military service. A graduate of the college himself (number 151), he was awarded a DSO for his actions in South Africa with 2nd Canadian Mounted Rifles. He was the Commanding Officer of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) twice, Commander 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade and 1st Canadian Division during the First World War, and Commandant of the Royal Military College between 1919 and 1925.[17] He acted as Honorary Colonel of the Regiment between 1922 and his death in 1942 (see page 2-3 for additional information). The SAM Centre opened in 1974.

ARTICLELE 503 - <u>HARVEY BUILDING – EDMONTON, ALBERTA</u>

After moving to Edmonton in 1996, the Regiment dedicated the main building of its new home to Brigadier F.M.W. Harvey, VC, MC, C de G, CD. The details of the dedication and the plaque commemorating the event are contained in ARTICLE E209 - Stone Cairn – Harvey Building, Edmonton, Alberta.

ARTICLE E 504 - <u>RICHARDSON BUILDING – EDMONTON, ALBERTA</u>

The Richardson Building in regimental lines is named after Sergeant A.H. Richardson, VC. Sergeant Richardson became the Regiment's first recipient of the Victoria Cross due to his actions in the South African War (see pages 1-1 and D-1). The Richardson Building is the Regiment's current tank hanger.

---

[17] Official Record of Service for A.C. Macdonell, (Ottawa: Department of National Defence (Militia Service) dated June 14th,1929).

ARTICLE E 505 - <u>STEELE BARRACKS – EDMONTON, ALBERTA</u>

1.   Due to his importance in Canadian history, particularly in the west, Major-General Sir Samuel Benfield Steele, KCMG, CB, MVO was honoured on 11 May 2000 when the former Namao site of the Edmonton Garrison was named Steele Barracks (see page C-6 for a full biography).

2.   The dedication ceremony marked the first official visit to the Edmonton Garrison of Her Honour, the Honourable Lois Hole, Lieutenant Governor of Alberta. A commemorative cairn on the southwest edge of the Lecture Training Facility parade square was unveiled during the ceremony.

ARTICLE E 506 - <u>SIR SAMUEL STEELE MEMORIAL BUILDING – ORILLIA, ONTARIO</u>

In April 1999, the building at 30 Peter Street South in Orillia, Ontario was dedicated the Sir Samuel Steele Memorial Building. The building houses the Orillia Museum of Art and History. The plaque on the building reads:

SIR SAM STEELE

Born near Orillia, in 1851, an original member of the N.W.M.P., 1873, Superintendent
1885 - 1903, Steele played an important role in establishing order in Western Canada, holding commands throughout the Territories. He led the Cavalry, Alberta Field Force, in the North-West Rebellion, 1885 and, as commander of N.W.M.P. in Yukon and B.C.
1898-99, preserved order at the height of the Yukon gold rush. He raised and commanded Strathcona's Horse in the South African War, trained and commanded 2nd
Division, World War 1. Major-General Steele K.C.M.G. C.B. died in London, England in
1919.

Historic Sites and Monuments Board of Canada

ARTICLE E 507 - <u>MARINER ROOM – HARVEY BUILDING, EDMONTON, ALBERTA</u>

The Mariner Room is the Officers' Rest Area in the Harvey Building in Edmonton. The room is named after Major Chris Mariner, CD who died on 8 October 1999 as a result of injuries sustained during a training accident on the Salisbury Plain in England while a student on the All Arms Tactics Course in Warminster. Major Mariner was on regimental duty as Officer Commanding B Squadron at the time of his death. The officers on regimental strength dedicated the room immediately after his death.

ARTICLE E508 - <u>STEELE ROOM – EDMONTON GARRISON OFFICERS' MESS, EDMONTON ALBERTA</u>

The upper reception room at the Edmonton Garrison Officers' Mess was named after Major-General Sir Samuel Benfield Steele, KCMG, CB, MVO after the establishment of the Edmonton Garrison as an Army base in 1996.

ANNEX F - AWARDS AND TROPHIES

SECTION 1 – GENERAL

ARTICLE F100 - GENERAL

The details of awards and trophies presented to the Regiment are normally controlled and maintained by the Regiment by the Regimental Second in Command, Adjutant and Regimental Sergeant Major. The Adjutant is generally responsible for ensuring records of each presentation are maintained for future reference while the Regimental Sergeant Major normally ensures that each award or trophy is properly catalogued, maintained and whereabouts known. No formal regimental honours and awards committee currently exists except where stated below or when required to fulfil Canadian Forces requirements. The awards and trophies detailed in this annex include individual, group and sports awards and trophies.

SECTION 2 - INDIVIDUAL AWARDS AND TROPHIES

ARTICLE F200 - GENERAL

The Regiment continues to honour individuals who have achieved the highest standards of performance throughout the year. There are five key awards based on individual merit that are cherished within the Regiment. Four of these awards are presented annually: the Hessin Memorial Sword, the Neatby Pace Stick, the Milroy Cross Belt, and the Colonel of the Regiment's Silver Stick. A fifth key award, the Regimental Sergeant Major's Shield, is present only when a deserving Strathcona tops a Junior Leadership Course. Between these awards, the Regiment honours the key levels of leadership within the Regiment.

ARTICLE F201 - THE HESSIN MEMORIAL SWORD

Figure 115 – The Hessin Memorial Sword

1. Lieutenant J.D. Hessin joined the Regiment on graduation from the Royal Military College in May 1959. He was selected for training as a pilot in May 1960 and joined his course in Rivers, Manitoba at that time. Lieutenant Hessin was, unfortunately, killed in an aircraft accident during his last week of training.

2. Lieutenant Hessin's fiancée, Miss Mary Jean Borden, presented a memorial sword to the Regiment with the following inscription:

> "This Sword presented to Lord Strathcona's Horse by Mary Jean Borden in memory of her fiancée Lieutenant J. David Hessin. To be awarded annually to the subaltern of the Regiment who in the judgement of his fellow officers has displayed the highest qualities of leadership, integrity and ability."

3. The sword, first presented in 1962, is presented during the annual Moreuil Wood parade. The name of the recipient is suitably engraved on the plaque of the memorial sword that is now kept in the Mariner Room (Officers' Rest Area).

4.   The rules for selection of the subaltern who will receive the Memorial Sword are as follows.

      a.   All Captains and Lieutenants who have served with the Regiment for six months prior to the presentation will nominate one Lieutenant who has served with the Regiment for at least one year, and who in their opinion best meets the prerequisites detailed above. A Captain who was promoted to that rank within the previous six months is eligible for the award. The nomination and substantiating paragraph may be typed or hand-written and will be addressed "Hessin Memorial" and passed by hand to the Adjutant, for the Commanding Officer, in an unsigned sealed envelope. These nominations will reach the Adjutant annually by 10 March. Past recipients of the sword are not eligible for consideration.

      b.   The Regimental Second in Command, Squadron Commanders, and the Adjutant may each submit the names of two Lieutenants, together with an explanatory paragraph substantiating their choice. The nominations addressed "Hessin Memorial" will be passed to the Adjutant for the Commanding Officer in the same manner and by the same date as above.

      c.   The Commanding Officer will then make the final selection of the subaltern who is to receive the memorial sword.

      d.   It is emphasized that secrecy of ballot must be observed. Nominations will not be made from discussion of officers in committee.

5.   Memorial Sword winners are at Table 13.

Table 16 – Hessin Sword Winners[1]

1962 Lieutenant D. Keddie	1984 Lieutenant Rick Brown	2003 Lieutenant Faith Rhodes
1963 Lieutenant Jack Dangerfield	1985 Lieutenant Jamie Cade	2004 Lieutenant Clayton Gardner
1964 Second Lieutenant J.R. Derry	1986 Lieutenant R. White	2005 Lieutenant M.G. Gough
1965 Acting Captain Clive Milner	1987 Captain Mike Froess	2006 Captain Darryn Gray
1970 Lieutenant J.S. Wrigglesworth	1989 Lieutenant Dave MacLeod	2007 Captain Al Wong
1971 Lieutenant Doug Corkum	1990 Captain Andrew Knapper	2008 Lieutenant Marshall Douglas
1972 Captain Bruce Jeffries	1991 Captain Hunter	2009 Captain Peter Beitz
1973 Lieutenant Steve Ewing	1992 Lieutenant Shane Gifford	2010 Captain Tyler Collings
1974 Lieutenant Cam Ross	1993 Captain Mark Connolly	2011 Lieutenant Gord Elliott
1975 Lieutenant Greg Hug	1994 Lieutenant Derek Macaulay	2012 Captain Steve Van Muyen

---

[1] The Hessin Memorial Sword does not appear to have been awarded between 1966 and 1969. Although it is unknown why the sword was not awarded, it is interesting to note that the Regiment was stationed in Iserlohn, Germany between 1965 and 1970.

1976 Lieutenant Sterling Kierstead	1995 Lieutenant Rogers	2013 Lieutenant Blake Tapp
1977 Lieutenants Larry Found & Peter Furnell	1996 Lieutenant D. Broomfield	2014 Captain Ahmad Jaradat
1978 Lieutenant Bill Shultz	1997 Lieutenant Trevor Cadieu	2015 Captain Shaun Rogozinski
1979 Captain Brian Walsh	1998 Lieutenant I. McDonnell	2016
1980 Lieutenant Steve Zuber	1999 Lieutenant Rob Hume	2017
1981 Lieutenant John McEachern	2000 Lieutenant Derek Chenette	2018
1982 Lieutenant Chris Waters	2001 Lieutenant Mike Onieu	2019
1983 Lieutenant Tom Copplestone	2002 Lieutenant Mark Lubiniecki	2020

ARTICLE F202 - <u>THE NEATBY PACE STICK</u>

1.   Major-General P.A. Neatby, CD presented the Neatby Pace Stick to the Regiment, on 11 November 1984 when he was Colonel of the Regiment.

2.   The Pace stick is awarded annually on the Moreuil Wood parade to the warrant officer on regimental duty who has achieved the highest standard of general proficiency in the collective opinions of the Commanding Officer, the Regimental Second in Command, the Regimental Sergeant Major, and the Squadron Commanders and Sergeants Major. The recipient must be the rank of warrant officer. Past recipients of the award are not eligible for consideration.

Figure 116 – The Neatby Pace Stick Being Presented to Warrant Officer M. Simmons, CD

3.   The Neatby Pace Stick is on display in Regimental Headquarters where it is kept year round. The recipient may borrow his award any time for display at a particular ceremonial occasion or for display at a civilian function with family and friends. The Regimental Sergeant Major will control access to the award. Neatby Pace Stick winners are at Table 14.

Table 17 – Neatby Pace Stick Winners

1985 Warrant Officer R.N. Caughell	1997 Warrant Officer M. Simmons	2009 Warrant Officer D.H. Jones
1986 Warrant Officer C.S. Zwicker	1998 Warrant Officer R.A. Fuller	2010 Warrant Officer A.S. Mayfield
1987 Warrant Officer J. Sprowl	1999 Warrant Officer B. Baron	2011 Warrant Officer L.M. Taylor
1988 Warrant Officer J. Stark	2000 Warrant Officer R.A. Fuller	2012 Warrant Officer M.A.R. Chenier
1989 Warrant Officer L.J. Schuffels	2001 Warrant Officer J. Ramsay	2013 Warrant Officer C.J. Boland
1990 Petty Officer T.E. McMahon	2002 Warrant Officer B. Talty	2014 Warrant Officer R.J. Baglole
1991 Warrant Officer W.E. Mullins	2003 Warrant Officer D.R. Proctor	2015 Warrant Officer S.J. Brown
1992 Warrant Officer D.M. Biener	2004 Warrant Officer R. Labrecque	2016
1993 Warrant Officer A.J. Lelievre	2005 Warrant Officer D.W. Hall	2017
1994 Warrant Officer G.J. Blackmore	2006 Warrant Officer W.A. Laughlin	2018
1995 Warrant Officer C.R. Ells	2007 Warrant Officer A.S. Batty	2019
1996 Warrant Officer C. Drummond	2008 Warrant Officer J.P. Pudar	2020

ARTICLE F203 - <u>THE MILROY CROSS BELT</u>

1.   The Milroy Cross Belt was presented to the Regiment by Lieutenant-General W.A. Milroy, DSO, CD on relinquishing the appointment of Colonel of the Regiment on 11 November 1978. Then a Lieutenant-Colonel on posting to the British Army Staff College, General Milroy wore the belt as Marshal for the Canadian Forces and Royal Canadian Mounted Police Marching Contingent at a military parade in honour of the coronation of Her Majesty, Queen Elizabeth II in 1953.

2.   The Milroy Cross Belt is awarded annually on the Moreuil Wood parade to the sergeant on regimental duty, who has achieved the highest standard of general military proficiency, in the collective opinions of the Commanding Officer, the

Figure 117 – The Milroy Cross Belt Changing from Sergeants H.J. Madden, CD to K.J. Hepburn, CD in 1998

Regimental Second in Command, the Regimental Sergeant Major, and the Squadron Commanders and Sergeants Major. Milroy Cross Belt winners are shown at Table 15.

3.   The Milroy Cross Belt will be worn by the recipient on all ceremonial parades, and on other appropriate ceremonial occasions as directed by the Regimental Sergeant Major. The Milroy Cross Belt will be drawn from the Regimental Sergeant Major prior to each ceremonial occasion, and shall be returned on completion.

4.   Although cross belts are normally worn over the left shoulder, the Milroy Cross Belt is worn over the right shoulder. At the time of the parade, the Canadian Army had not decided on post-war orders of dress uniform. The Canadians on the parade, therefore, followed the British Army dress code at the time so that the belt would not cover medals.

Table 18 – Milroy Cross Belt Winners

1979 Sergeant D.F. McGregor	1992 Sergeant D.G. Emerson	2005 Sergeant S.J.W. Holmwood
1980 Sergeant T.J. Cuthill	1993 Sergeant D.A. Lee	2006 Sergeant R. Dickson
1981 Sergeant W.D. Reinson	1994 Sergeant T.P. Martineau	2007 Warrant Officer W.K. Irving
1982 Sergeant M.A. MacMillan	1995 Sergeant C. Seefried	2008 Sergeant R. Dickson
1983 Sergeant W.E. Mullins	1996 Sergeant R.J. Swainsbury	2009 Sergeant D.C. Wallis
1984 Sergeant E.M. Albright	1997 Sergeant H.J. Madden	2010 Sergeant D.C. Wallis
1985 Sergeant J.S. Workman	1998 Sergeant K.J. Hepburn	2011 Sergeant R.G. Likely
1986 Warrant Officer D.M. Biener	1999 Sergeant K.J. Hepburn	2012 Warrant Officer R.A. Sherren
1987 Sergeant C.R. Ells	2000 Sergeant G. Bamford	2013 Sergeant B.E. Holmes
1988 Sergeant W.E. Clement	2001 Sergeant C.D. Lawrence	2014 Sergeant J.B. Clark
1989 Sergeant K.R. Vivian	2002 Sergeant M.S. Riley	2015 Sergeant R.J. Vigar
1990 Sergeant D. Blanchard	2003 Sergeant D.E. Peters	2016
1991 Sergeant J.N. Dukart	2004 Sergeant L.M. Taylor	2017

Figure 118 – The Colonel of the Regiment's Silver Stick

ARTICLE F204 - THE COLONEL OF THE REGIMENT'S SILVER STICK

1.   The Colonel of the Regiment's Silver Stick was presented to the Regiment by Major-General J.C. Gardner CD, Colonel of the Regiment, 1978-1982.

2.   The Silver Stick is awarded annually on the Moreuil Wood parade to the junior non-commissioned officer on regimental duty who has achieved the highest standard of general proficiency in the collective opinions of the Commanding Officer, the Regimental Second in Command, the Regimental Sergeant Major, and the Squadron Commanders and Sergeants Major. The recipient must hold the rank of master corporal. Past recipients of the award are not eligible for consideration. Past winners are at Table 16.

Table 19 – The Colonel of the Regiment's Silver Stick Winners

1983 Master Corporal J.G. Burke	1995 Master Corporal R.J. Groicher	2007 Master Corporal D. Doney
1984 Master Corporal J.W. Rathwell	1996 Master Corporal J. Rice	2008 Sergeant S.J. Brown
1985 Master Corporal F.C. Howard	1997 Sergeant (WSE) C.J. Dunn	2009 Master Corporal M.R. Levis
1986 Master Corporal T.P. Martineau	1998 Master Corporal M.R. Hatt	2010 Master Corporal J.D. Scheller
1987 Master Corporal R.J. Sutherland	1999 Master Corporal D.H. Jones	2011 Sergeant E.R.G. Morley
1988 Master Corporal D.K. Devlin	2000 Master Corporal M.I. Poitras	2012 Sergeant J.B. Hamilton
1989 Master Corporal T.R. Moran	2001 Master Corporal J.P. Pudar	2013 Sergeant P.E. Kruhlak
1990 Master Corporal Johnson	2002 Master Corporal R. Borkevic	2014 MCpl McAtasney
1991 Master Corporal T.G. Anderson	2003 Master Corporal W.K. Irving	2015
1992 Master Corporal S. Nayel	2004 Master Corporal E.E. Romaniuk	2016
1993 Master Corporal D.R. Walters	2005 Master Corporal M. Woodrow	2017
1994 Master Corporal J.P. Bobrowich	2006 Master Corporal G. Subczuk	2018

ARTICLE F205 - <u>THE FOX BUGLE</u>

The Fox Bugle was donated by Lieutenant-General (Retired) J.A. Fox and is awarded annually to the Corporal serving in the Regiment who has demonstrated the highest standard of general proficiency in the collective opinions of the Commanding Officer, the Regimental Second-in-Command, the Regimental Sergeant-Major, Squadron Commanders and Squadron Sergeants-Major. The Fox Bugle winners are listed on Table 17.

Figure 119 – The Fox Bugle

Table 20 – Fox Bugle Winners

2005 Corporal S. Belisle	2010 Corporal R. Chmara	2015 Corporal C.J. Collier
2006 Corporal D. Jenkins	2011 Master Corporal J. Charlton	2016
2007 Corporal E. Poelzer	2012 Corporal C.D.W. Kearns	2017
2008 Corporal C.B. Eady	2013 Corporal RW.W.Kearns	2018
2009 Corporal P. Mooney	2014 Corporal C.A. Davidson	2019

ARTICLE F206 – <u>THE OLYMPIC TORCH TROPHY</u>

1.   The Olympic Torch Trophy was donated by Colonel John Roderick when he relinquished his appointment as Colonel of the Regiment in 2010. The trophy is awarded annually on the Moreuil Wood Day parade to the member of the Regiment who best displays personal achievement or leadership in sports in keeping with the traditional Olympic spirit of "mutual understanding and the spirit of friendship, solidarity and fair play". The trophy bears a replica of the 2010 Winter Olympic Games Torches that were used to carry the Olympic Flame from Athens to Vancouver on a 106 day journey across Canada from sea to sea to sea.

Figure 120 – Olympic Torch Trophy

2.   The trophy recognizes outstanding athletic performance or leadership in sports and to commemorate the Regiment's major contribution to the security of the 2010 Vancouver Winter Games through its role in command of Task Force Vancouver.

3.   The trophy was designed and created for Colonel Roderick by Cpl Lee Jarrett who was serving with the Regiment as the Regimental Carpenter at the time. The following is her description of the Trophy:

> *"The pedestal that the Trophy (torch) sits on represents the mountains we have to climb and the small victories we reach along the way in order to achieve our goals. The flame surrounding the Trophy was a lovely surprise as I fell upon it and cannot take full credit. I was pleased at the way the metal was able to portray the Olympic Flame. I had the flame dipped in 24k gold for I wanted it to represent the purity of the Games for which they stand. Finally I picked the five trades in the Regiment to represent the five rings. I purposely put them in order of priority rather than having the trades surround the Strathconas. The reasoning behind this is we are one family, supporting each other equally without one standing out more than the other."*

4.   Little did Cpl Jarrett realize when she was crafting this trophy that she would be the first recipient. The inscription on the Trophy is:

> *"The Olympic Torch Trophy" Awarded annually to the member of the Regiment who best displays personal achievement or leadership in sports.*

Table 21 - Olympic Torch Trophy Winners

2009 Corporal Jarret	2013 Warrant Officer Forbes	2017
2010 Corporal Thoren	2014 Sergeant Davidson	2018
2011 Not Awarded	2015 Captain J.M.J. Kim	2019
2012 Master Corporal Charettte	2016	2020

ARTICLE F207 – <u>ROSS MAINTAINER AWARD</u>

Initiated by Major-General Cam Ross during his time as the Colonel of the Regiment, the Ross Maintainer Award is awarded annually on the occasion of the Moreuil Wood Parade to the top maintainer in the Regiment. The award is granted to a soldier of any trade employed within the Regimental Maintenance organization, from the rank of Warrant Officer and below who has been identified to show the highest performance as a maintainer in the areas of professionalism, innovation, maintenance pride, leadership and operational dedication. The individual is selected based on the collective opinions of the Colonel of the Regiment, the Commanding Officer, the Regimental Second-in Command, the Regimental Sergeant-Major, Squadron Commanders, Squadron Sergeant-Majors, the Maintenance Officer and the Equipment Technical Quarter Master Sergeant.

Table 22 – Ross Maintainer Award

2014 Sergeantt Y.J.P. Cimon, 00129 Vehicle Technician	2016	2018
2015 Master Corporal C.L. Hasson, 00129 Vehicle Technician	2017	2019

ARTICLE F208 - <u>REGIMENTAL SERGEANT MAJOR'S SHIELD</u>

The Regimental Sergeant Major's Shield is awarded to any trooper or corporal who places first on a Combat Leaders' Course/Land Force Junior Non-Commissioned Officers' Course. Strathcona soldiers will receive this award even when other units run the course. Regimental Sergeant Major's Shield winners are at Table 18.

Table 23 – RSM's Shield

1979 Corporal J.N. Dukart & Trooper D.A. Gardner	1980 Trooper B.W.J. Blackburn	1982 Trooper C.R. Ells
1983 Trooper M.J. Barry	1984 Trooper D.W. Hall	1986 Corporal W.D. Kingston
1986 Trooper Rideout	1989 Corporal S.G. Mason & Corporal J.B. Docksey	1990 Corporal W.L. Spiers
1991 Corporal B.A. Murray	1992 Corporal K.F. Cummings	2000 Corporal R.J. Clark

ARTICLE F209 - <u>OTHER INDIVIDUAL AWARDS AND TROPHIES</u>

A list of other key regimental individual awards and trophies is at Table 19. The Regimental Sergeant Major maintains a book with the full list of all individual awards and trophies complete with photographs and the history of each.

Table 24 – Other Individual Awards and Trophies

Trophy	Purpose	
The George Gardiner Memorial Sword.	At the time of his death of cancer in 1983, Warrant Officer George Gardiner had completed a long and devoted career, which culminated as the Troop Warrant Officer and a key member of a small, dedicated group who kept the Ceremonial Mounted Troop alive despite early difficulties. His experience and skills as a horseman and his leadership and determination did much to perpetuate the Troop at a time when it was still becoming established. He was instrumental in training the Troop, acquiring horses and designing the musical ride each year. His dedication to the Troop and the Regiment was evident the day before he died when he called the Commanding Officer, Lieutenant-Colonel J.E. Roderick, and the Regimental Sergeant Major, Chief Warrant Officer E. Cady, to his hospital bed to donate his horse to the Regiment. The George Gardiner Memorial Sword is awarded annually to the Strathcona Mounted Troop Rider who, in the opinion of the Troop Leader, the Troop Senior Non- Commissioned Officer and the Troop Corporal, demonstrates the highest qualities of leadership and horsemanship.	Current location of award is unknown.
The Tank Gunner Trophy	The Tank Gunner Trophy is awarded to the soldier in the Regiment who places first on his tank gunner course. The presentation is made to the individual even when courses are conducted by external agencies.	Last presented 2011
The Gianelli Trophy	The Gianelli Trophy, named in 1982 after Lieutenant-Colonel (later Brigadier) Norman A. Gianelli, one of three Second World War commanding officers, is awarded to the top student from the Regiment on Driving and Maintenance Courses. The presentation is made whether the Regiment runs the course or not.	Last presented 2011
The Tracked Reconnaissance Driver Course Award	The Tracked Reconnaissance Course Driver Award is awarded to the regimental member who is the top student on a reconnaissance driver course. The award is made even if units other than the Regiment conduct the course.	Award currently held at the Regimental Museum
The Coyote Gunner Course Trophy	The trophy used for the Coyote Gunner Course Trophy was rededicated in 1999. The original trophy was "presented by Plunkett and Savage CD, to L.S.H.(RC) for Annual Competition, Championship Tent-Pegging." The trophy is awarded to the soldier in the Regiment who places first on their Coyote gunner course. The presentation is made to the individual even when the course is conducted outside the Regiment.	Last presented 2011
The Assault Trooper Course Award	The Assault Trooper Course Award is awarded to the top student (when a Strathcona) of any Assault Trooper (Support Troop) Course.	Current location of award is unknown.
The Mounted Troop New Rider Award	The Riding Troop Trophy is awarded annually to the member of the Strathcona Mounted Troop who, in the opinion of the Troop Leader and the Troop Non-Commissioned Officers, is the most improved rider of the year. Only new members of the Troop are eligible for the award.	Last presented 2007
The Southern Trophy	Selected by the Mounted Troop Leader and Troop Non-Commissioned Officers to be the most professional member of the Strathcona Mounted Troop demonstrating excellent rapport and bearing when dealing with the public.	Last presented 2007
The Mounted Troop Best Rider Trophy	Annually the Mounted Troop Leader and Troop Non-Commissioned Officers select the most proficient rider in the Strathcona Mounted Troop.	Last presented 2007
The Crewman Course Trophy	The Crewman Course Trophy is awarded to the Strathcona student who places first on his Level Three course. The trophy is awarded whether the Regiment runs the course or not.	Last presented 1977

SECTION 3 - <u>GROUP AWARDS AND TROPHIES</u>

ARTICLE F300 - <u>THE PRINCE OF WALES TROPHY</u>

1.   His Royal Highness The Prince of Wales presented The Prince of Wales Trophy to the Commanding Officer, Lieutenant-Colonel W.J. Ellis, CD, during a Royal Visit to Ottawa on 26 April 2001. It is the Colonel-in-Chief's intention that the trophy be awarded annually to a deserving squadron and that that squadron be henceforth known as the "The Prince of Wales Squadron" for the following year. The Prince of Wales Squadron assumes Right of the Line for regimental parades and events. The appointment, however, is not reflected in written staff work, distribution lists or signs.

2.   The Prince of Wales Trophy is presented annually on the Moreuil Wood Parade. The first presentation was in 2002. The winning squadrons of the Prince of Wales Trophy are displayed in Regimental lines with the trophy.

3.   The Colonel of the Regiment, the Commanding Officer and the Regimental Sergeant Major jointly selects the recipient Squadron. The winning squadron is chosen based on a subjective assessment, rather than upon set criteria. The selectors are influenced by the results of such annual events as: inter-squadron sports, the Annual Technical Inspection, Commanding Officer's Competitions and the completion of mandatory Level of Competency (MLOC) training. Competition for the trophy, however, is not intended to create a divisive situation among the squadrons.

4.   In awarding the Regiment with The Prince of Wales Trophy and allowing the subsequent naming of The Prince of Wales Squadron, His Royal Highness bestowed a great honour on the Regiment.

Figure 121 – The Prince of Wales Trophy

ARTICLE F301 – <u>OTHER GROUP AWARDS AND TROPHIES</u>

A list of other regimental group awards and trophies is at Table 20. The Regimental Sergeant Major maintains a book with the full list of all group awards and trophies complete with photographs and the history of each.

Table 25 – Other Group Awards and Trophies

Trophy[2]	Purpose	
The Tank Gunnery Static Firing Award	The Tank Gunnery Static Firing Trophy is awarded to the tank crew that achieves the highest results in static firing. The award is made during continuation training rather than qualification training.	Current location of award is unknown.
The Neatby Trophy	The Neatby Trophy, presented by Major-General P.A. Neatby, CD on the occasion of the relinquishing of his appointment as Colonel of the Regiment on 11 November 1986, is awarded annually to the crew with the best achievement in armoured gunnery.	Last presented 2011; current location unknown.
The Gutknecht Trophy	The Gutknecht Trophy, named after Lieutenant-General J.A.R. Gutknecht, a former commanding officer and Colonel of the Regiment, is awarded annually to the tank troop that achieves the best results in the regimental tank gunnery competition. Recently this award has been repurposed, and is awarded to the top candidate of each Developmental Period 1 now conducted at the Regiment.	

---

[2] The Regimental Sergeant Major maintains a catalogue of regimental awards and trophies, which contains a photograph and the history of each.

The J.R. Lank Trophy	Named after Chief Warrant Officer J.R. Lank, the Lank trophy is awarded to the armoured squadron that achieves the best results in the annual Regimental Gunnery Competition.	Last presented 1996
The Reconnaissance Challenge Award	The Reconnaissance Challenge Award is awarded annually to a crew within Reconnaissance Squadron for proficiency in armoured reconnaissance skills. The conditions for the competition are determined annually by the Squadron Commander, in consultation with the Commanding Officer and depend upon the vagaries of training opportunities and aims. This award has since been included within the criteria of the Prince of Wales Trophy, and is no longer awarded.	Last presented 1993
The Perkins Trophy	The Perkins Trophy is named after Lieutenant (later Major) E.J. Perkins, DSO, the Reconnaissance Troop Leader who performed with distinction at Melfa River. The trophy is awarded annually to the best troop in Reconnaissance Squadron. The conditions for the award are determined annually by the Squadron Commander in consultation with the Commanding Officer based on the training and operational circumstances of the time.	Current location of award is unknown.

SECTION 4 - SPORTS AWARDS AND TROPHIES

1.   Sports competitions remain a key element in developing soldiers and establishing team spirit. Consequently, sporting events are strongly encouraged and virtually every modern athletic activity is contested in the Regiment at the inter-squadron level.

2.   The current regimental awards and trophies held at the Regiment are detailed in Table 21.

Table 26 – Sports Awards and Trophies

Trophy	Purpose	Remarks[3]
Overall Winner of Moreuil Wood	Presented to the Top Squadron during the Moreuil Wood Sports Day	Last presented 2013
Hockey Champions (Inter-Mess)	Presented to the top team of Christmas Sports Day, re-designated in 1998	Last presented 2012
Ball-Hockey Champions (Inter-Mess)	Presented to the top team of Christmas Sports Day	Last presented 2012
Soccer Champions (Inter-Mess)	Presented to the top team of Christmas Sports Day, re-designated in 1998	Last presented 2012
Broomball Champions (Inter-Mess)	Presented to the top team of Christmas Sports Day, re-designated in 2011	Last presented 2012
Winners (Inter-Mess)	Presented to the top team of Christmas Sports Day	Last presented 2012
Annual Master Corporal's Charity Golf Tournament Top Finisher	Presented to top golfer of the tournament	Last presented 2012
The Capital City Championships Novice Grappling	Third place, presented to Cpl T. Silcox, member of Regimental Grappling Team in 2011	
Ex MOUNTAIN MAN Top Finisher – LdSH(RC)	Individual winner	Last presented 2011

---

[3] Unless otherwise stated, the winning squadron displays the trophies until competed for again.

1 CMBG Ex MOUNTAIN MAN Top Finisher	Individual winner	Last presented 2012
The Garbage Bowl Sarcee Room	East/West Grey Cup Football Game.	Last presented in 1981
97 DHL Championships 1997	Camp Dravar, Bosnia Hockey	One-time presentation
Alberta Dragoons Races 1993 Tin Chak Cup	Second Place	One-time presentation
Headquarters Squadron Inter-Troop Sports Day		Last presented 2000
Summer Softball (Inter-Mess)	Re-designated in 1998	Last presented 1998
Molson Breweries – Byng Hotel Waiters Race	Third place, during Sam Steele Days 1991	One-time presentation
25 CIBRG Tug of War Brigade Champions		Last presented 1953
Strathcona Day Champion (Inter Squadron)		Last presented 2004
25 CIBRG Softball Champions		Last presented 1953
Dingwall Hockey (Inter-Mess)	Re-designated from Billiard Cup in 1998	Last presented in 1998
Annual Inter Squadron Hockey Competition		Last presented 1993
Russ Brinn Memorial Trophy	Sgt/Cpl's games competition	Last presented 1968
Sarcee Camp Softball league annual Championship cup 1925		Last presented 1987
Strathcona's Horse Skill at Arms Challenge Cup		Last presented 1969
Alberta Service Pistol Team Championship Trophy	Presented by Brigadier R. Rowley DSO EU for annual competition	Last presented 1969
Comd Caughell trophy	Cougar gunnery	Last presented 1998
LdSH(RC) Annual Pistol Competition	Donated by Hammering Hank (Tpr)	Last presented 1983
25 CIBRG Tug of War Brigade Champions	Presented 1953	One-time presentation.

Strathcona Day Champion (Inter-Squadron)		Last presented 2004
25 CIBRG Softball Champions	Presented 1953	One-time presentation
Curling Rookie of the Year Trophy	Awarded to the most improved first year curler	Current location of award is unknown
Inter-squadron Basket Ball Trophy		Award currently held at the Regimental Museum
Inter-squadron European Handball Trophy		Current location of award is unknown
Inter-squadron Floor Hockey Trophy		Award currently held at the Regimental Museum
Inter-squadron Orienteering Trophy		Award currently held at the Regimental Museum
Sergeants' Mess "A", "B" and "C" Event Trophies	Curling Bonspiel	Awards currently held at the Regimental Museum
Bow Cycle Trophy	Awarded to the champion rink in Regimental curling.	Award currently held at the Regimental Museum
Pro Sporting Goods Trophy	Awarded to the Curling Rink that accumulates the most points during the regular season	Current location of award is unknown
Sarcee Point-to-Point Race	Presented annually for competition between WO, Staff Sergeants and Sergeants of CHS and LSH(RC)	Last presented 1934
B Squadron LdSH(RC) Miniature Range Inter-Troop Competition Plaque		Last presented 1936
LdSH(RC) Regimental Military Skills Competition	Donated by PPCLI	Last presented 2006

ANNEX G - <u>REGIMENTAL NEWSLETTER</u>

ARTICLE G100 – <u>GENERAL</u>

1.   <u>Authority</u>. The Regimental Society publishes the Regimental Newsletter under the authority of the Regiment.

2.   <u>Objectives</u>. The objectives of the Newsletter are:

     a.   to maintain contact between serving members and former members of the Regiment who served in any capacity (i.e. RCEME, RCASC, RCAMC, etc);

     b.   to provide a means for the exchange of information and thoughts among readers, and between the Regiment and the "Family"; and

     c.   to foster support for a variety of regimental activities including the The Military Museums, Strathcona Mounted Troop, Regimental Newsletter, reunions and other special events.

3.   <u>Policies</u>. The policies applicable to the Newsletter are as follows:

     a.   the title "Regimental Newsletter" may be amended by the Regimental Society;

     b.   all members of the "Family" are entitled to receive the Newsletter irrespective of Regimental Association membership;

     c.   should it become necessary, the Society may implement a subscription fee for the Newsletter;

     d.   the content of the Newsletter shall be free from political, religious and special-interest group material;

     e.   the Newsletter, while of primary interest to former serving members, is intended to complement *The Strathconian*;

     f.   the Editor of the Newsletter will be appointed by the Regimental Society; and

     g.   the Assistant Editor shall be appointed by the Editor.

4.   <u>Administration</u>. The following administrative details apply:

     a.   the Regiment shall control all financial aspects related to the operation of the Newsletter, including printing and postage costs; and

     b.   the Regiment will provide administrative support, including an office, furniture, computer access, stationary supplies, etc.

ARTICLE G101 - <u>TERMS OF REFERENCE</u>

1.   <u>The Editor</u>. The Editor shall be responsible for:

     a.   establishing the policy on content;

      b.   soliciting and editing submissions;

      c.   liaising with the printer;

      d.   liaising with the Commanding Officer;

      e.   maintaining on-going contact with the Regimental Association;

      f.   forwarding material to the printer for publication;

      g.   referring any contentious matters to the Regiment for decisions;

      h.   serving on the Board of Directors of the Regimental Society;

      i.   forwarding all donations and enquiries to the Regimental Secretary; and

      j.   establishing and notifying submission deadlines.

2.   <u>Assistant Editor</u>. The Assistant Editor shall be responsible for:

      a.   understudying the Editor;

      b.   forwarding Family Roll amendments to the Regimental Secretary;

      c.   maintaining all computer records;

      d.   preparing the Newsletter for distribution; and

      e.   maintaining all files pertaining to the Newsletter.

ANNEX H - <u>VEHICLE NAMES</u>

ARTICLE H100 - <u>GENERAL</u>

1.   This annex contains the names of the Second World War tank histories as recorded in *A Record of Achievement* by Lieutenant-Colonel McAvity along with the extra names that have been added since the Second World War. In addition, the names typically used for the horses of the Strathcona Mounted Troop have also been listed at the back of the annex.

2.   Those vehicle names carried forward from the Second World War and used in the Regiment today are marked with an asterisk (*) while those marked by a double asterisk (**) have been added to bring the list of names up to the required number. Only armoured fighting vehicles are named. Variants such as armoured personnel carriers, ambulances and recovery vehicles shall not be named.

3.   One should note that the names used for the tanks in Korea were, in most cases, different than those contained in *A Record of Achievement*. Unfortunately, a complete list of all tank names used in Korea is not available. The methodology used to name the vehicles also depended on the squadron. C Squadron, for example, named their tanks after Second World War battles (Squadron Headquarters), female names (First Troop), Indian names (Second Troop), animal names (Third Troop) and types of liquor (Fourth Troop). This would account for "Catherine" in the well-known picture of tanks crossing the Injim River in Korea.

Figure 122 – "Catherine" at the Injim River in Korea (The Military Museums Archives)

4.   Research into which vehicles were used in Afghanistan is currently being done by The Military Museum and will be included in the next edition of the Regimental Manual.

5.   Only the vehicle names shown in this annex are to be used whenever sufficient squadrons and vehicles so permit. Names may only be added to the list with the authority of the Commanding Officer.

ARTICLE H101 - <u>REGIMENTAL HEADQUARTERS</u>

1.   "Strathcona." Despite some argument about security, the name was allowed to stand for the Colonel's "command" tank. Fitted with an extra wireless set, a desk and two swivel chairs in the turret, it

possessed only a dummy wooden gun. It had a "near miss" at Melfa when an "88" hit the commander's box; it had several AP rounds whiz past its rear end at first light near Otterloo. It was one of several in the Regiment to run the full course-from Matera to Groningen - under the able guidance of one Parsons until he went to hospital in April 1945, then by Trooper Stewart (ex-C Squadron).

2.   In 2015, it was announced that the CO's tank would be renamed "Southern", in honour of Ron Southern's extraordinary support of the Regiment, both financially and through various events held at Spruce Meadows.

3.   "Screwball."* The 2IC's tank throughout, used as spare "command" tank; was "brewed" at the Melfa after knocking out a German SP; the 2IC, Major Wattsford, was badly wounded and did not return; the driver (Corporal Moggey) and operator (Signalmen Nadon) were killed and Sergeant Lovelack wounded.

4.   "Screwball II." Replacement for the above, it lived a happy, normal life, except at the crossing of the Conca; taken over by the CO and Adjutant when Strathcona wireless failed, it spilled battery acid and caused a further change.

5.   "Scimitar."* Commanded by RHQ Tank Troop Leader - whose name was legion. Carried on throughout.

6.   "Spartan."* The Troop Sergeant's tank - for most of the war the stalwart and indefatigable Sergeant Jack Main, then Sergeant Buzza.

7.   In 1999, the Regiment began naming the vehicles in Regimental Headquarters Reconnaissance Troop. Since 1996, the troop has been equipped with the Coyote Light Armoured Vehicle (Reconnaissance). The vehicle names for Regimental Headquarters Reconnaissance Troop, which were approved by the Commanding Officer, Lieutenant-Colonel Hilton, are:

    a.   "Steadfast."** Troop Leader's vehicle (C/S 60);

    b.   "Suppressor."** Troop Warrant/ "A" Patrol Commander (C/S 60A);

    c.   "Stalker."** The second "A" patrol vehicle (C/S 60B);

    d.   "Stallion."** The "C" Patrol Commander (C/S 60C);

    e.   "Stalwart."** The second "C" patrol vehicle (C/S 60D);

    f.   "Spectral."** The "E" Patrol Commander (C/S 60E); and

    g.   "Striker."** The second "E" patrol vehicle (C/S 60F).

ARTICLE H102 - A SQUADRON

1.   Squadron Headquarters (Fighting):

    a.   "Akbar."* Started as the Squadron Leader's tank, with Major G.L. Symmes from Matera; "brewed" at the Melfa when Trooper Hateley was killed, Major Symmes, Troopers McIver and Sudosky wounded.

    b.   "Akbar II."   Did not continue to be the Squadron Leader's tank after the Liri; was

successively commanded by Captain Cummings, Sergeant Tall, Corporal Krivoshea in the final stages in Italy, Sergeant Patterson from Izegem on until the end.

c. "Abdul."* In which the Squadron 2IC, Captain J.C. Whittle, won the M.C. for gallantry on the Melfa – just before it was hit.

d. "Abdul II." Became the Squadron Leader's "control" tank, commanded in turn by Major Ussher in the Gothic Line, Major Brathwaite on the Lombardy Plain, and Major Graham after the first period in Cervia. Was damaged near Nijkerk (Holland), when Major Graham was wounded, and later had to be destroyed by our own guns. It was not replaced.

e. "Attila"* The Battle Captain's – in which Captain J.B. Windsor was seriously wounded at the Melfa – "brewed" by AP fire. Every one of the crew was wounded, the others being: Sergeant Barry, Lance Corporal Montgomery, and Troopers Zuke and Ratcliffe.

f. "Attila II." Taken over first by Captain Gartke and carried on without mishap until it was replaced by a 105 mm Sherman at Cervia. Commanded by various sergeants until the end.

g. "Ajax." Was "brewed" at the Melfa when Sergeant R.R. Scott and Trooper Jolicoeur were wounded; Troopers Hawkins, Stewart and Chaval were killed.

h. "Ajax II." Taken over by Sergeant A.H. Williams, MM – later by Corporal Karpinka. Exchanged for a 105 mm in Cervia and carried on. Finished up with Sergeant Pennicuick in command.

Figure 123 – "Abdul" (and others) on Roadside in Italy (The Military Museums Archives)

2. First Troop:

a. "Alligator."* The Troop Leader's tank throughout -1st Lieutenant (later Captain) R.A. Gartke at "Vino Ridge" and on 24th May; taken over by Lieutenant J.J. Black on the 25th and had a distinguished career until it was badly damaged in the mine-field near San Giustina in September.

b. "Alligator II." Came up in replacement for the above. It saw considerable activity under Lieutenant Black in the "Route 9 show" with First Div in October and was taken over by Lieutenant H.D. Shaw in the ensuing weeks. It was destroyed by the heavy shell, which killed the Troop Leader near Conventello on 4th January 1945.

c.   "Alligator III." Commanded by Lieutenant "Huck" O'Connor until it was hit near Barneveld (Holland); although the Troop Leader was badly wounded and had to be evacuated, the tank suffered only the loss of the turret hatch. Taken over at once by Sergeant J.L. Antossi who had come to us from Div HQ Squadron in Izegem. This commander won the Military Medal before he was wounded north of "STEAMER" near Nijkerk, by our aircraft. Sergeant Finley commanded it until the end.

d.   "Antelope."* Commanded by Sergeant Kendall, it had mechanical trouble on the Centre Line short of the Hitler Line. Was later commanded by Sergeant G.F. Johnston; it was exchanged for one of the first 17 pounders in the San Giustina "Mud-hole" and retained its name; was the first 17 pounder to "K.O." an enemy tank: a PANTHER at Bulgaria while working with the The Hastings and Prince Edward Regiment (Hasty Pees) in October 1944. Sergeant Johnston fought many gallant actions in this tank, perhaps none more so than that near Barheveld, before the tank was hit. Sergeant Johnston received the posthumous award of the U.S. Bronze Star; Trooper Leverington was also killed. The tank was never replaced.

e.   "Armadillo."* Commanded by Corporal Karpinka until the summer camp on the Volturno, then Corporal Bathgate throughout the fall and winter until taken over by Corporal Lovelack. The latter was in command of it when it had a track damaged by shellfire, near Conventello. It was left behind, to be one of the tanks to serve as pillboxes on the Senio front.

f.   "Armadillo II." Commanded by Corporal Pflinger from the second period in Cervia until the end of the war.

g.   "Aardvark."**

3.   Second Troop:

a.   "Aspen."* Lieutenant G.C. Catton's tank until he left to take command of Al Echelon in September 1944, then commanded by Lieutenant B.D. Richards for a brilliant performance which ended in the Province of Groningen. It was replaced once for mechanical trouble in Cervia.

b.   "Alder."* Sergeant Pennecuick was crew commander until the Uso where it was "brewed"; none of the crew was injured, but Major Brathwaite had a close call, standing beside it.

c.   "Alder II." Replacement in San Giustina was a 17 pounder, again taken over by Sergeant Pennecuick, later by Sergeant Anfossi who took it through Otterloo; was hit and "brewed" at Barneveld, Trooper McPherson was wounded; Sergeant Anfossi was given command of First Troop at that time. No replacement was received for Alder II.

d.   "Almond."* Was hit by AP fire at the Melfa but not damaged, when commanded by Corporal Skelton. At the Naviglio canal, it was hit on the road leading to the Start Line, and Corporal Farrell was injured while bailing out.

e.   "Almond II." Commanded by Corporal Stein until the end of the war.

f.   "Apricot."* Came to the regiment in Izegem - one of the new 17 pounders - and was commanded by Corporal Krivoshea to the end.

4.   Third Troop:

a.   "Algiers."* Knocked out on 24th of May at the Melfa; Lieutenant Ken Philip, Corporal Nikirk and Trooper Michel killed; Troopers Fraser and Armstrong wounded.

b.   "Algiers II." When commanded by Lieutenant (later Captain) D.J. Cowley, it was damaged by mortar fire on the approach to Torrice Crossroads.

c.   "Algiers III." Lieutenant Cowley carried on until Lieutenant A.M. MacKinnon returned from hospital in England in December 1944. The tank was hit on the evening of 15th April 1945 at Otterloo, when Lieutenant MacKinnon was seriously wounded, taken prisoner and later died of wounds. Corporal Forde was reported missing and later presumed killed while Toopers Bowman and Graham were wounded.

d.   "Athens."* With Sergeant Tall commanding, it was knocked out at the Melfa; Trooper Embury was killed and Trooper Mitchell wounded.

e.   "Athens II." Was commanded by Corporal Pavelack when it was blown up on a mine in "that" field near San Giustina; recovered soon afterward and was commanded later by Corporal Honey, then by Lance Sergeant Milne. The latter was wounded, also Troopers Robbins, Erret and Viscussi, when it was hit by bazooka just short of the Naviglio on the night Third Troop went up to relieve the pressure on the Lanarks. Trooper McIntosh got back unscathed.

f.   "Athens III." Carried on until it was replaced by a new 17 pounder at Izegem, which retained the name, and this was commanded by Sergeant Kendall until the end.

g.   "Alaska." Sergeant Williams in the turret at the Melfa - awarded the MM. Corporal Karpinka was commanding when it was damaged in the Route 9 minefield near San Giustina.

h.   "Alaska II." Became a 17 pounder in San Giustina; had a hole put into it during the "show" with the RCR on Route 9 near Cesena, but the driver, Trooper MacPherson, miraculously got it going despite the gaping hole in the final drive. It was evacuated to workshops after the action.

i.   "Alaska III." A 75 mm "job" again, commanded by Corporal Bathgate till the end.

j.   "Athabaska."**

5.   Fourth Troop:

a.   "Algonquin."* Knocked out on 25th May 1944; Corporal McNeil, L.D., wounded.

b.   "Algonquin II." Knocked out when supporting Westminsters near Uso River on 24 September; Troopers McPherson and McTavish killed; Corporal Borton and Trooper Armstrong wounded. Lieutenant West not injured.

c.   "Algonquin III." Commanded first by Lieutenant Eyres, then by Lieutenant J.J. Black till the end of the war; had an exciting time near Barneveld.

d.   "Alberta."* Was hit on the 24th of May near "BENEDICTINE," but not seriously and was towed back to the harbour on the morning of the 25th - only to be hit there. During the heavy shelling, two of its crew were killed; Sergeant Eby and Trooper Gammack.

e.   "Alberta II." Commanded by Acting Sergeant Richmond -later by Sergeant Eveleigh. It became a 17 pounder temporarily for the "Show" with First Div, then reverted to a 75 mm. Sergeant Eveleigh was crew commander until the end.

f.   "Aldershot."* Was hit on the 25th of May in the shelling; Corporal MacNeil was wounded.

g.   "Aldershot II." Commanded by Corporal Lodwick for a long time; he took it into the action with the "Hasty Pees" at Bulgaria when Corporal Bathgate bogged at the bridge. Corporal Lodwick was the only lucky one when the tank was hit on the 4th of January near Conventello: Troopers Selby and Deller were killed and Troopers Hodgson and Porter wounded.

h.   "Aldershot III." No replacement for Aldershot II was received until Izegem - then it was a 17 pounder-still commanded by Corporal Lodwick - right to Groningen.

i.   "Argyle."* New 17 pounder taken on strength at Izegem, commanded by Corporal Richmond from then on.

Figure 124 – The Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Battle Group, Wainwright, May 1999

ARTICLE H103 - B SQUADRON

1.   Squadron Headquarters (Fighting):

a.   "Brown."* This was one of the Matera originals that saw action in Italy and Holland, and finished the course. Was commanded by a Sergeant until Coriano Ridge, after that always by the Squadron Leader.

b.   "Bader."* Another that went the whole way with the squadron - always commanded by the Battle Captain.

c.   "Bishop."* Was the Squadron 2IC's tank, but when the Left out of Battle (LOB) policy came into effect (always in force after the Liri) it was manned by one or other of the Sergeants: the 2IC took over "Bader" when the Battle Captain was LOB. The only

exception was during the push from Arnhem, after the original had been exchanged for a 105 mm, when Captain Morrison took "Bishop" - and laid some useful HE and smoke shells south of Otterloo when the tail of the column was passing through.

d. "Barker."* Started off from Matera as the Squadron Leader's tank and carried Major Milroy through until he was wounded (away from the tank) on the bad night in the Gothic Line. After Coriano, a Sergeant manned it. It was replaced by a radial-engine 105 mm in Cervia.

2. First Troop:

a. "Beaver."* Commanded by Lieutenant (later Capt) E.J. Perkins, DSO, this tank was perhaps the most successful in the Orsogna sector - its 75 mm knocked down the tower there with 40 rounds. With Lieutenant J.W. Black, it went through the 24th and 25th of May unscathed. On the 30th, it bogged in a shell crater near Torrice Crossroads and Lieutenant Black took over another tank (and was killed). Lieutenant Mackay-Keenan took it into the Gothic Line; the Troop Leader was wounded in the night attack but stayed on until morning; the gunner later died of wounds received at the same time. Next "C.C." was Lieutenant E.H. Grand who stayed with it from then on. In all, it fired over 1000 rounds in indirect fire as well as considerable 75 mm and co-axial MG direct fire.

b. "Buffalo."* This was the Troop Sergeant's tank most of the war. On 30th May 1944, Lieutenant Black took it over when his own bogged, and it was hit and "brewed" near the crossroads. Lieutenant Black, Troopers Holtslander and MacKenzie were killed; Trooper Harris wounded; Trooper Hall, J.H. was uninjured.

c. "Buffalo II." Carried on without mishap until it was replaced by a 17 pounder in Izegem. Its crew at the end of the war by Corporal Lake and Troopers Schaefer, Feldman, and Robertson.

d. "Broncho."* Manned by the following in the Liri Valley: Corporal J.B. Matthews, who won the DCM for his fine shooting on the 30th May, Troopers Fullerton, J.H.C., Hucik, J., and Doucette, L.E. On the approach march before the Gothic Line, it was replaced because of mechanical trouble; the new one carried on for the rest of the war without mishap.

e. "Bear."* New 17 pounder drawn in Izegem; in the Dutch action it was manned by Sergeant Montney, Trooper Bond, Trooper Hucik and Trooper Doucette. Later, Sergeant Schuler took over command.

3. Second Troop:

a. "Balsam."* Driven by Trooper "Happy" Burns, this tank loaded and offloaded from flat-cars and transporters until it was stopped by an "88" at Torrice - after it had knocked out one Panther and scored an assist on another.

b. "Balsam II." A "very new and unscratched tank" when it replaced the above in the Liri Valley; not so unscratched when it ended up in Groningen nearly a year later. Crew Commanders of the Balsam series were: Corporal Mackay, G.W., Corporal MacDiarmid, R.J., Lieutenant W.G. Spencer, and Lieutenant E.H. Grand.

c. "Bluebell." Survived until hit by AP fire near Torrice Crossroads; Sergeant Zeal and one other were killed.

     d.   "Bluebell II." Had a hectic time on the night of 31 August 1944; was exchanged for a 17 pounder at San Giustina, continuing as Bluebell II. In Izegem, her name was changed to Briar after which her crew carried on until the end. It was commanded by the following Troop Sergeants: Sergeants Zeal, Barr, P.S., Giroux, L.J., and MacDiarmid, R.J.

     e.   "Buttercup."* Fired its first shots in anger at Orsogna, the crew then being: Lieutenant D.P. Ramsay, Corporal Barr gunner, Trooper Gilbertson driver, Trooper Katerynuk co- driver and Trooper J.H. ("Rapid") Hall the loader-operator. "NTR" on 24th of May, but it threw a track on the 30th and the Troop Leader changed to another. On the lateral north of Villanova it was hit with an HE shell which "blew kit, tools and box all to hell." Undaunted, it rolled onto the Senio, and to the Zuyder Zee and "Finito" Parade.

     f.   "Birch."* Taken over in Isegem by Lance Sergeant Hutchinson and had an uneventful career guarding the "Echelon" through Arnhem.

     g.   "Briar."** Briar replaces the name Bluebell (see c and d above) which was used previously.   Bluebell is used today as a radio appointment title for the maintenance representatives.   Its continued use as a vehicle name could lead to confusion with disastrous consequences if retained. Hence, it is not currently used.

4.   Third Troop:

     a.   "Biscay."* Lived a comparatively normal life, taking part in every action. Was smeared with shrapnel on a few occasions and had a close shave in Otterloo. Commanded by Lieutenants Brear("Vino Ridge"), Tobin ("Hitler Line") Gar - until he was killed in the early stages of the Gothic Line, then Corporal Elrick, Lieutenant McCulloch took over in the Gothic Line and commanded through to V.E. Day.

     b.   "Bengal."* Was in every "B" Squadron action and had many near misses. Commanded by Sergeant Rosler, R., ("Vino Ridge" and "Hitler Line"); Sergeant Harvyl from 25 May 1944 to "Gold Flake," and finished under Corporal Katz.

     c.   "Baltic."* Another that went through every action. Pock marked with shrapnel, it was nearly overturned by a bomb in the "Hitler Line." Was turned in for a 17 pounder in Isegem. Commanded by Corporal MacDiarmid at "Vino Ridge"; Corporal MacKay through the "Hitler Line" and the start of the Gothic Line, when it was taken over by Corporal Elrick who commanded it up to the Naviglio. Corporal Matthews succeeded Corporal Elrick, then Corporal England commanded in the last action.

     d.   "Bering."* 17 pounder acquired in Isegem commanded by Sergeant Harvyl without mishap.

5.   Fourth Troop:

     a.   "Banff I."* Commanded by Lieutenant Burton, it fired its first shot on 18 January 1944 on Orsogna. Knocked out one SP and one AA gun on 24 May 1944. Was taken over by Lieutenant McIlwaine at Torrice Crossroads. Lieutenant Guest succeeded Lieutenant McIlwaine when the latter was wounded in the Gothic Line. "Brewed up" by SP near the Uso River.

     b.   "Banff II." Commanded by Lieutenant Guest, it took part in all the remaining actions without casualty.

c.   "Barrie I."* Commanded by Corporal Montney from Matera to Ortona and by Corporal Schuler in the Liri Valley. Was "brewed up" by bazooka in the night attack in the Gothic Line.

d.   "Barrie II." Commanded by Corporal Rix, was "brewed up" in its first action near the Uso.

e.   "Barrie III." Taken over by Corporal Schuler, was exchanged for a 17 pounder in Isegem and carried on to the end.

f.   "Brandon."* Commanded by Sergeant Clark until the "Hitler Line" when, commanded by Sergeant Rosler, R., it accounted for two enemy AA guns. During the Gothic Line it was used temporarily by Captain Burton. Was hit by mortar near the Uso and a replacement came at San Giustina, which took part in every remaining action with Corporal Ross commanding at Arhhem.

g.   "Broadview."* Taken on at Isegem and suffered no casualty.

ARTICLE H104 - C SQUADRON

1.   Squadron Headquarters (Fighting):

a.   "Churchill."* A Matera original that carried on to "finito," always commanded by the Squadron Leader. Under Major J. Smith at the Melfa it scored a Panther, and at Otterloo it suffered its only casualty when a bazooka set fire to equipment on its back and Lance Corporal Pengelly was wounded.

b.   "Confucius I."* Commanded by Captain R.G. Crimes (later killed in action), it was replaced at the Melfa River when an "88" holed its gun barrel.

c.   "Confucius II."   Fought through every remaining action, commanded by Lieutenant W.M. Reade (who later died in hospital after being wounded in Holland), Captain Tom Cadham, Captain (later Major) J.V.P. Chatwin and Captain P.T. Scramstad.

d.   "Connolly I."* At the Melfa it was first used by a FOO then taken over by Captain Crimes who was killed when it was hit on 24 May 1944, together with three of his crew - Troopers Smith A.A., Lee A.P., and Davis G.T.

e.   "Connolly II." Commanded by Corporal Meadus, H.J., after the Melfa, taken over by Major F.C. Braithwaite at Torrice. Was knocked out by bazooka near "Point 253" in the Gothic Line after Lieutenant Oeuvray had taken over from Sergeant MacPherson.

f.   "Connolly III." Commanded by Sergeant Fallas for the remainder of the war. Name changed to Condor III when Connolly III became 105 mm.

g.   "Conacher I."   Commanded by Captain Len Payne at the Melfa, then by Major Braithwaite. On 1 September 1944, while commanded by Sergeant Hopper, it bogged on "Point 253" and Trooper Otter, E.R. was killed by shell fire and Trooper Cove, D.L., wounded.

h.   "Conacher II."   Carried on for the remainder of the war, exchanged for 105 mm at Cervia. Crew Commanders were Sergeant Gaudette, Sergeant Switzer, Captain Chatwin,

Corporals Goldsack and Francis, and Captain Sutherland in Northwest Europe

2.   First Troop:

   a.   "Cougar."[1] Commanded by Lieutenant S.W. Phillips at the Melfa and Gothic Line, then by Lieutenant W.E. Ralston (later killed in action) until bogged near San Giusti.

   b.   "Cougar II." Commanded by Lieutenant Gaunt, it carried on until V.E. Day.

   c.   "Condor."* Was knocked out at the Melfa when the Commander, Sergeant Forrest R.J., Troopers Laird and Sample were wounded and Troopers Kitching and Karpinka W. died of wounds.

   d.   "Condor II." Commanded in the Gothic Line by Sergeant Becvar who was wounded, then taken over by Sergeant Costello on 21 September 1944.   While trying to pull Lieutenant Ralston's tank out of a hole, Sergeant Costello and Trooper Stonefish were killed and Lance Corporal Copper was wounded.

   e.   "Condor III." This name was given to Connolly III when the 105 mm tanks arrived at Cervia. It carried on to the end commanded by Sergeant MacPherson, being exchanged for a 17 pounder in Isegem.

   f.   "Cobra."* Commanded by Corporal Hopper at the Melfa and Torrice. Knocked out by an "88" on 30 May 1944 when Troopers Spratt F. and Tippett W.H. died of wounds.

   g.   "Cobra II." Commanded by Corporals Nichol, Anderson, Lake Gaudette and Brock. Was taken over by Lieutenant Ralston on 24 September 1944 and was hit by mortar fire which killed the officer and Trooper Barnett, and wounded Troopers Stachera and Wood, N.J. The tank carried on until it was destroyed by bazooka on 28 December 1944 when Corporal Brock was killed and Trooper Martin A.B. was wounded.

   h.   "Cobra III." Commanded by Corporal Corbett, Cobra III carried on until the end, being exchanged for a 17 pounder at Isegem.

---

[1] "Cougar" is the name of the Armoured Vehicle General Purpose (AVGP) t h a t was part of the Regiment's inventory between 1978 and 1998 when they were removed from service with the Regular Force. While the original "Cougar" AFV has been retired, a new vehicle system has inherited the name. "Cougar" is therefore deemed inappropriate as a vehicle name, and consequently not used.

Figure 125 – "Cuddles" in Korea – Affiliation Unknown (The Military Museums Archives)

    i.   "Caribou."* This name was given to 75 mm Cobra III at Isegem. Corporal Thiessen commanded it through the remaining actions.

3.   Second Troop:

    a.   "Capri."* Originally "Cairo" it was renamed because of duplication with 8 N.B.H. Commanded by Corporal Venne at the Melfa and at Torrice where it destroyed a Panther. Taken over by Lieutenant Oeuvray who commanded through the Gothic Line and until he was wounded on a mine on 15 December 1944, then commanded by Corporal Curtis. While supporting P.L.D.G. at the Senio it was hit by bazooka (Lance Corporal Elliott, E.A. wounded) and although the crew fought for the tank on their feet, it had to be destroyed by our own fire to prevent capture.

    b.   "Capri II." Commanded by Lieutenant McIwaine when it was hit at Crossroad "Steamer" in Holland on 17 April 1945. Trooper Pearce, A.H. was killed; Lance Corporal Thompson, C.T. later died of wounds, and the officer and Trooper Stachera were wounded.

    c.   "Capri III." Commanded by Lieutenant M. Powell to the end.

    d.   "Cork."* Was hit in the suspension at the Melfa and towed back to the dump where it was completely destroyed by fire. While away from his tank, the Commander, Lieutenant C.R. Gilliat was killed on 24 May 1944.

    e.   "Cork II." Commanded at Torrice by Corporal Duhamel, then by Sergeant Meadus who was killed by shrapnel at Coriano, then by Sergeants Gaudette and Nichol. It was exchanged for a 17 pounder in Isegem still commanded by Sergeant Nichol.

    f.   "Crete."* Credited with the first enemy kill (Panther at the Melfa) when commanded by Sergeant Turk. The Commander and Trooper Bigham, L.W. were killed in this action. Later

commanded by Sergeant Venne, Corporals Yallits and Anderson. The original Crete was evacuated for repairs in Cervia and this name was given to "Chippewa." This in turn was exchanged for 17 pounder in Isegem, commanded by Sergeant Venne for the remaining actions.

g.   "China."* Acquired in Isegem and commanded by Corporal Curtis in Northwest Europe

4.   Third Troop:

a.   "Chicoutimi."* Commanded by Lieutenant Bill Reade (later killed in action) this tank was hit by two 88's on the Melfa. The fire was put out and the crew remounted and fought stationary, knocking out one enemy S.P. The tank was repaired and carried on under Lieutenant Hutchings bringing glory to itself, its troop and the Regiment. It knocked out a German Mk IV at the Uso and figured prominently in the Munio action. Commanded by Lieutenant Raisbeck it led the Regiment through Otterloo. Originally signed for by Trooper (later Sergeant) Koffman, this tank carried on to the end.

b.   "Chippewa."* Commanded by Sergeant Montford in the Liri Valley, by Sergeant D.R. Armstrong, in the Gothic Line and until Christmas 1944, when Sergeant Switzer took over. In Northwest Europe Sergeant E.J. Clarke, was in the cupola. A 17 pounder in

Viserba replaced the original. The crews who manned this tank through its hectic experience were Troopers R.B. Binnington, F. Blanchette, A.B. Claire, E.O. Forman, H.F. Turner, W.P. Lafferty and I.A. Brevig.

c.   "Chilliwack I."* Commanded by Corporal J.C. Lawson until he was killed on 25 May 1944, then by Acting Corporal D.W. Smith, until the tank was knocked out on 30 May 1944

d.   "Chilliwack II." In the Gothic Line commanded by Corporals Costello and Anderson. Was knocked out at the Uso when commanded by Corporal Thiessen.

e.   "Chilliwack III."   Commanded by Corporal Koffman it led the Regiment across the Munio. Later commanded by Corporal Goldsack. Two of the original crew, Troopers Derenowski and Halliday bailed out of Chilliwack I and II and carried on in Chilliwack III.

f.   "Chinook."* New 17 pounder in Isegem. Taken over by Corporal Koffman.

5.   Fourth Troop:

a.   "Camrose." Was hit and "brewed" at the Melfa when the Commander Corporal Nichol, and Lance Corporal Nichols and Trooper S.C. Powell were wounded and the remainder of the crew - Troopers R.J. Ring, A.S. Erickson and H. Buss were killed.

b.   "Camrose II."* Arrived after Torrice and was commanded by Corporal MacDowell for the summer on the Volturno. In the Gothic Line it was commanded by Corporal Gaudette and manned by Trooper (later Sergeant) A. Francis, Trooper (later Corporal) S.C. Powell and Troopers B.E. Kellington and A.C. McRac. The Troop Leader took over command at Coriano and among those who later commanded it were Lieutenants E.J. Grand and Bob Ellerbeck.

c.   "Calgary."* Commanded by Lieutenant Clifford at the Melfa and by Corporal Gaudette at

Torrice when it joined Sergeant Montford's Third Troop. It continued to be the Troop Leader's tank until it stalled near the Start Line on Coriano Ridge, when it was taken over by Corporal D.H. Longeway. It was knocked out later that day and Corporal G.V. Cable, was killed and the Crew Commander and Trooper R.W. Murray were wounded.

d.   "Calgary II." Commanded by Sergeant Mckay H.J. until he was wounded near San Giustina on 24 September 1944, when it was taken over by Corporal A. Francis. In Isegem it was exchanged for a 17 pounder that was commanded by Corporal Powell to the end.

e.   "Claresholm."* Knocked out at the Melfa when commanded by Sergeant Armstrong.The Sergeant, Troopers A.M. Corbett and H.F. Turner were wounded and the other two members of the crew were killed in action - Troopers G.V. Hannis and D.L. Frazier.

f.   "Claresholm II." Arrived during summer and was commanded by Sergeant G.M. Blair. It was knocked out at Coriano when two of the crew were killed (Troopers C.G. Hives and K.E. Smith). Trooper Cook died of wounds, and Sergeant Blair and Trooper W.P. Lafferty were wounded. Sergeant Blair was wounded when he left his tank to rescue Corporal Longeway.

g.   "Claresholm III." Commanded by Sergeants Nichol, Yallitts, Switzer and Gaudette, the latter was commanding when the tank was hit at the Fossa Munio. No casualties.

h.   "Claresholm IV." Sergeant Gaudette continued as Crew Commander until replaced by Corporal Francis in Isegem.

i.   "Canmore."* New 17 pounder taken on at Isegem, commanded by Sergeant Gaudette for the remaining actions.

ARTICLE H105 - RECONNAISSANCE SQUADRON

1.   In 1986, it was recognized that Reconnaissance Squadron was the only squadron lacking vehicle names. The Commanding Officer, Lieutenant-Colonel Boileau, selected the names for Squadron Headquarters and First, Second and Third Troops from submissions from all members of Reconnaissance Squadron at the time.

2.   Squadron Headquarters (Fighting):

   a.   "Dictator."**

   b.   "Defiant."**

   c.   "Darter."**

   d.   "Decathlon."**

   e.   "Dominion."**

Figure 126 – Coyote Remote Sensor System (inset), February 2012

3.   First Troop:

   a.   "Dieppe."**

   b.   "Dunkirk."**

H-13

    c.   "Devil."**

    d.   "Dardanelles."**

    e.   "Denominator."**

    f.   "Dundurn."**

    g.   "Dervish."**

4.   Second Troop:

    a.   "Drumheller."**

    b.   "Deliverance."**

    c.   "Destroyer."**

    d.   "Dreadnaught."**

    e.   "Dauntless."**

    f.   "Diablo."**

    g.   "Destiny."**

5.   Third Troop:

    a.   "Dagger."**

    b.   "Damocles."**

    c.   "Dynamite."**

    d.   "Dragon."**

    e.   "Danger."**

    f.   "Dingo."**

    g.   "Donnybrook."**

**Figure 127 – Coyote with Surveillance System
Mast Deployed, Afghanistan, September 2004**

6.   Fourth Troop (originally designated Assault Troop in 2003):

    a.   "Drvar."**

    b.   "Discipline."**

    c.   "Demolition."**

    d.   "Dismount."**

       e.   "Destruction."**

ARTICLE H106 - <u>STRATHCONA MOUNTED TROOP</u>

1.   The Strathcona Mounted Troop normally has a complement of approximately twenty quarter horses, 15.2 to 16.3 hands in height. The horses are generally sorrel in colour. Their names are usually chosen by members of the troop and are limited to names beginning with "S" which have regimental or cavalry significance. Certain names have been black listed because they have proven to be unlucky. Names are vetted by the Commanding Officer. The troop maintains records of all mounts used in any particular season.

2.   The name "Strathcona" is normally reserved for the Troop Leader's horse. Should the horse show poor disposition to being a lead horse, however, the Troop Leader will ride a more suitable mount. Common names that have been or are being used by the troop are shown in Table 22.

3.   The Mounted Troop contains several special horses. The Regiment gifted two horses to Prince Charles, Colonel-in-Chief, to commemorate his marriage to Camilla on 9 April 2005. He accepted the gift and presented these horses back to the Regiment with his colours and crest. These two royal horses, "Spirit" and "Saxon", may change but the names of the royal horses must remain in the troop.

Figure 128 – Strathcona Mounted Troop Leader 1995 (Regimental Museum Archives

4.   The troop also has horses donated by organizations and sponsors. The most recent horse in the herd was donated by Spruce Meadows and the Southern family. To acknowledge the close connection and support for the Mounted Troop, this horse was named "Southern" and bears the Spruce Meadows Crest.

5.   The longest serving horse is "Shogun". Born in 1994, he joined Mounted Troop in 1997. At 21 years of age, he is the oldest and longest serving horse in the history of the troop.

6.   The following is an Honour Roll and includes Mounted Troop horses that have died on active duty and long serving horses within the troop:

      a.   "Cross-Bell." Cross-Bell was a paint horse donated by the Blood Indians to His Royal Highness The Prince of Wales on a state visit. Prince Charles left Cross-Bell in the care of the Strathcona Mounted Troop. Traditionally, the ride master rode him. He was retired in 1991 after twelve years of service to the troop. Cross-Bell was pastured with the Blood Indians.

      b.   "Sam." Sam was a 15.2 quarter horse that broke its leg in the Sarcee Training Area in 1991 and was put down.

      c.   "Saxon." Saxon was a quarter horse killed in Spruce Meadows on Highway 22X in

1992.

d.   "Scimitar." Scimitar was an Arabian horse killed in Spruce Meadows on Highway 22X in 1992. He was a high-strung horse and was difficult to ride. He gained a reputation for injuring riders.

e.   "Sentry." Sentry was quarter horse killed in Spruce Meadows on Highway 22X in 1992.

f.   "Spartan." Spartan, a.k.a. "George" was a quarter horse killed in Spruce Meadows on Highway 22X in 1992. He was a relaxed horse that would fall asleep on vedette.

g.   "Spectre." Spectre was a 15.2 hand quarter horse purchased by the troop in 1987. He was the last survivor of the Spruce Meadows tragedy in 1992. He was retired in 1999 after twelve years of service to the troop. He is currently pastured in Rocky Mountain House.

Figure 129 – Strathcona Mounted Troop at Vernon, BC (4 August 2012)

h.   "Stranger." Stranger was a quarter horse killed in Spruce Meadows on Highway 22X in 1992.

i.   "Subaltern." Subaltern was a quarter horse killed in Spruce Meadows on Highway 22X in 1992.

j.   "Supremacy." Supremacy was a 16.2 quarter horse, and survivor of the Spruce Meadows tragedy. He had served nine years in the troop when he was retired in 1999. He is pastured with the Edmonton Garrison Riding Club.

Table 22 – Common Names of Strathcona Mounted Troop Horses

Sable	Saxon**	Sheriff	Sorcerer	Stinger*
Sabot	Sceptre	Sherman	Southern*	Stranger
Sabre	Scholar	Sherpa	Sovereign	Strathcona*
Sage	Scimitar	Shire	Spartan*	Stryder*
Saint	Scorcher	Shock*	Spectre	Stuart
Sam*	Scorpion*	Shogun*	Spike	Subaltern
Samaritan	Scythe	Shooter	Spirit **	Sultan
Sampson	Semaphore	Shrapnel	Spitfire*	Summit
Samson	Senator*	Sidearm	Sportster*	Supremacy*
Samurai	Sentinel	Silver*	Spruce	Sutton
Sapphire	Sentry	Singapore	Spyder	Swiftsure
Saracen	Seville	Slapshot	Staghound	
Sarcee	Shadow*	Slick*	Stan*	
Sarge*	Shakespeare	Sniper	Starbuck	
Savage*	Shaman	Solomon*	Steadfast	
Saviour	Shamrock	Solstice	Steele	
Savoy	Shepherd	Somme	Stein	

* Current Serving   *** Royal Horse*

WWI				
Savage	Seymour	Sprado		
Septimus	Shea	Steubing		
Sevin	Sinclair	Stoneham		
WWII				
Stonefish	Shortreed	Selby		

ANNEX I - REGIMENTAL MARCHES AND SONGS

The details of the background and origin of regimental marches and songs, including the regimental call, are at CHAPTER 7 - REGIMENTAL MUSIC. The following songs are included in this annex:

     a.   *The Soldiers of the Queen* is at Appendix 1.

     b.   *Strathcona's Horse: Regimental Song* is at Appendix 2.

THE SOLDIERS OF THE QUEEN.
Song
WORDS & MUSIC BY
LESLIE STUART.
Pr. 50¢
TORONTO CANADA
WHALEY, ROYCE & CO.
YONGE STREET
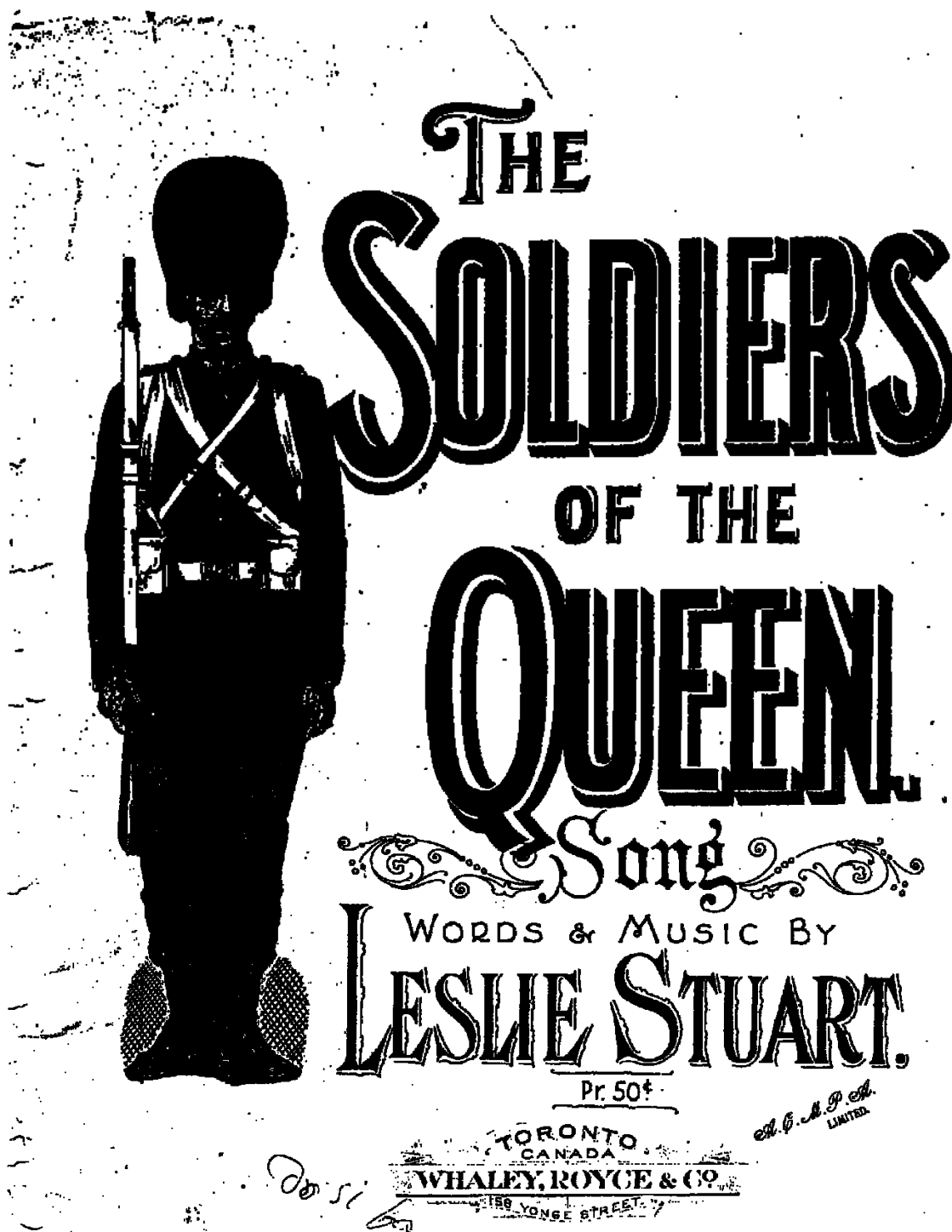
APPENDIX 1 – THE SOLDIERS OF THE QUEEN

sing - ing of our sol - dier braves,... All the world had heard it,
bold re - sour - ces try to test. They thought they found us sleep-ing
show we're some-thing more than "Jin - go." And though Old Eng-land's laws do

won - der'd why we sang, And some have learn'd the rea - son why. But
thought us un - pre - par'd, Be - cause we have our par - ty wars; But
not her sons com - pel To mil - i - ta - ry du - ties do, We'll

we're for - get - ting it, And we're let - ting it____
Eng - lish - men u - nite, When they're call'd to fight The
play them at their game, And show them all the same, An

Fade a - way and grad - u - al - ly die,____ Fade a - way and grad - u -
bat - tle for Old Eng-land's com-mon cause, The bat - tle for Old Eng-land's
Eng-lish-man can be a sol-dier too, An Eng-lish-man can be a

APPENDIX 2 – STRATHCONA'S HORSE: REGIMENTAL SONG

Strathcona's Horse.
REGIMENTAL SONG.

A. L. H. KYLE.

ANNEX J - <u>GUIDON DRILL</u>

ARTICLE J100 - <u>GENERAL</u>

   This annex should be read in conjunction with CHAPTER 5 - <u>THE REGIMENTAL GUIDON AND COLOURS</u>. This annex amplifies the drill contained in *Canadian Forces Manual of Drill and Ceremonial.* The chapter on colours and flags in the Canadian Forces manual is too generic - it assumes that an officer is the Colour Bearer and that the escort carries rifles not swords.[1]

ARTICLE J101 - <u>UNCASING THE GUIDON</u>

1. On arrival at the Parade Square, the Guidon Party positions itself on the left flank of the parade and the Orderly falls in three paces to the left of the Guidon Party. On the command from the Regimental Sergeant Major "Uncase the Guidon," the Orderly moves to position three paces in front of, and facing the Guidon. The Orderly raises his left forearm parallel to the ground, cupping the left hand. Simultaneously the Bearer lowers the pike directly forward to a horizontal position bringing the device to rest in the cupped left hand of the Orderly.

Figure 130 – Uncasing the Guidon

2. The Bearer unties the tapes of the case and grasps the Guidon with the left hand. The Orderly carefully removes the case and drapes it over the left forearm, the cap to the left. The Orderly then unrolls the cords. The Bearer then releases the Guidon and cuts his left arm smartly to the side. At this time, the Orderly ensures that the Guidon and cords hang correctly. On the signal from the Bearer, the Orderly gives the pike an upward thrust with the left hand to assist the Bearer to return the Guidon to the Order position.

3. The Orderly then cuts his left arm smartly to the side, observes the standard pause and salutes, returning to the position of attention. The Orderly then makes a right turn and marches off the Parade Square. Since swords are drawn and the carry is a form of salute, the escort who is responsible for the protection of the guidon does not present arms.

ARTICLE J102 - <u>GUIDON DRILL</u>

1. <u>General</u>. At the halt, a cased Guidon shall be held in the position of the Order. On the march, a cased Guidon is carried in the Slope position and never held at the Carry. An uncased Guidon is never sloped and shall always be at the Carry or the Order.

2. <u>Position of the Order</u>. The Bearer stands at attention with the pike held vertical with the right hand at the right side. The base of the pike is on the ground at the right side of the right foot, in line with the toe of the shoe. The pike and Guidon are held with an all-round grasp of the right hand with the back of the hand outwards at the point of the pike where the lowest corner of the Guidon reaches. The Guidon shall hang naturally down the pike and shall not be stretched taut. The right elbow is at the side and the wrist is directly in rear of the pike. A cased Guidon is held in the same manner except that the Guidon is not grasped in the right hand.

3. <u>Stand at Ease from the Order</u>. On the command "Stand at Ease," the Guidon and pike remain in the same position as described for the order position and the left foot is carried 10 inches to the left.

4. <u>Stand Easy from Stand at Ease</u>. The Guidon and pike remain in the same position with the left arm kept to the side and the body relaxed. The feet and the Guidon are not moved.

---

[1] *Canadian Forces Manual of Drill and Ceremonial*, (Ottawa: Department of National Defence, 1992), Chapter 8

5.   Carry from the Order. The right hand raises the Guidon to a vertical position in front of the centre of the body with the base of the pike just clear of the socket and the   right forearm alongside the pike. Simultaneously, the left hand is brought to the socket in order to guide the pike into it. Then the left hand is brought to the position of the Order. On completion of the movement the right hand is approximately opposite the Bearer's mouth, the right forearm is parallel to the ground and at right angles to the pike. The wrist of the right arm is straight with the back of the hand outward and head and eyes facing the front.

Figure 131 – Guidon Party on Parade – Harvey Barracks, 1996

6.   Order From the Carry. With the right hand raise the pike clear of the socket and bring the right forearm from the horizontal position to a vertical position alongside the pike. Simultaneously, bring the left hand to the socket to steady the carrier. Next, move the Guidon with the right hand to the position of the order, with the left hand across the body to steady the pike. On completion of the movement, the back of the left hand is facing outward, fingers of the left hand are extended and pointing to the right and the left forearm is parallel to the ground.

7.   Let Fly from the Carry. Let Fly is conducted when arms are carried on parade and the parade is ordered "General Salute, Present Arms." On the order, the Guidon is let fly on the last movement of the present arms by maintaining the grip on the pike but releasing the Guidon with the right hand. The movement consists of a sharp downward movement of the right hand, (approximately thirteen centimetres). Also, during the march past in quick time, on the command, "Eyes-Right," the Guidon is Let Fly. On the command "Eyes-Front," the Guidon is caught.

8.   Catching the Guidon from the Let Fly. Grasp the Guidon with the left hand and bring it into the pike. Simultaneously, grasp the corner of the Guidon with the right hand in the position of the Order and cut the left hand to the side to the position of attention while raising the right forearm to the horizontal position. Depending on the wind direction, the Guidon may be grasped with the right hand after securing the pike in the left hand. If, because of wind strength, the Guidon cannot be caught, the Guidon shall be brought to the position of the Order, secured and returned to the carry.

9.   Slope from the Order (Cased Guidon). The pike is raised clear of the ground with the right hand and placed on the right shoulder so that the pike is at a 45 degree angle when the right elbow is close to the body and the forearm parallel to the ground. Simultaneously, the left hand grasps the pike just above the right hand to steady the pike. The left hand is then cut to the side to the position of attention.

10.   Order from the Carry (Cased Guidon). The pike is lowered to the ground by straightening the right arm. Simultaneously the left arm is used to steady the pike by cupping the case. The left arm is then cut back to the side.

ARTICLE J103 - THE GUIDON ON PARADE

1.   Marching on the Guidon. On the command "March on the Guidon" by the Commanding Officer, the Guidon Party shall ready themselves. After the order "To Your Guidon, Present Arms" by the Commanding Officer, the Guidon Bearer will give the order "Slow March" to the Guidon Party. The band, if present, shall play. The Guidon Party shall march in slow time to the right flank, counter-march, mark time and halt. After

a standard pause, the Guidon Bearer will give the order "Quick March" and proceed to the left flank of the Regiment. The party will subsequently, by a series of wheels, proceed to its designated position between two squadrons and to the rear of the Commanding Officer, then mark time and finally halt facing the front of the parade. Once in position, the Commanding Officer will give the command, "Shoulder Arms." Throughout the parade, when all others are stood at ease and easy, the Guidon Party shall remain at the position of attention, with the escort's swords at the carry.

2.   Marching off the Guidon. At the conclusion of the parade, on the order "March off the Guidon, to your Guidon Present Arms," the Guidon Bearer will order "Quick-March" to the Guidon Party. The band shall play appropriate music and by a series of forms the Guidon Party will position themselves to the left flank facing the Regiment where the casing of the Guidon will take place.

ARTICLE J104 - CASING THE GUIDON

1.   After being marched off parade, the Orderly moves to position three paces in front of and facing the Guidon. The Orderly raises his left forearm parallel to the ground, cupping his left hand while the Guidon Bearer simultaneously lowers the pike, directly forward, to a horizontal position. This brings the device to rest in the Orderly's cupped hand.

2.   The Guidon Bearer, with the left hand, and the Orderly, with the right, grasp the bottom corner of the Guidon nearest to each and together fold the bottom edge of the Guidon over the pike, ensuring the tassels also hang over the pike. The above procedure is executed three times, ensuring there are no creases and that the Guidon is neatly rolled along the top of the pike. The right thumb of the Bearer and the left thumb of the Orderly are used to hold successive folds in place. The Orderly then wraps the cords around the Guidon three times along the width. The Bearer then grasps the end of the cords and the Guidon in the left hand.

3.   The Orderly removes the Guidon case, which is draped over his left forearm, and carefully slides it over the Guidon. As the case is lowered to the bottom of the Guidon, the Bearer uses his left hand to assist in pulling the case fully over the Guidon and ties the tapes securely around the pike. The Bearer then cuts his left arm sharply to the side. The Orderly resumes his original position by cupping the device in the left hand.

4.   On order from the Bearer, the Orderly gives the pike an upward thrust with the left hand to assist the Bearer in returning the Guidon to the Position of the Order. The Orderly then cuts his left arm smartly to the side, observes the standard pause, salutes and returns to the position of attention.

5.   The Orderly then makes a right turn, and marches off the Parade Square. The Guidon Party, under command of the Bearer marches off the Parade Square and returns the Guidon to Regimental Headquarters.

ANNEX K - SWORD DRILL

ARTICLE K100 - GENERAL

1.   Two methods of wearing the sword are described in *Canadian Forces Manual of Drill and Ceremonial*: hooked and slung.[1] Once the sword is drawn, the sword movements for hooked and slung drill are the same. With the exception of the Guidon Bearer and mounted personnel, the Regiment customarily uses slung sword drill when dismounted.

Figure 132 – Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Royal Escort to Their Majesties King George V and Queen Elisabeth, Winnipeg, 24 May 1939 (Regimental Museum Archives)

2.   Unfortunately the sword drill described in the Canadian Forces manual focuses primarily on hooked drill. The manual does not adequately describe the customary differences observed by the cavalry and the Regiment; the differences between the drill used by soldiers and officers; nor discuss mounted sword drill. This annex, therefore, is the sole source of authority for sword drill used by the Regiment. The basis of the sword drill used by the Regiment is well described in *Cavalry Training: 1912* and later issues.[2]

3.   Accurate and swift but graceful movements are the hallmarks of good sword drill.

ARTICLE K101 - DISMOUNTED SWORD DRILL

1.   The drill when the sword is not drawn is as follows:

    a.   Position of Attention. The scabbard is held in the left hand with the left arm straight, hand gripping the scabbard between the upper and lower rings (rings to the rear – handle of the sword to the rear), thumb down the front, back of the hand outward, fingers curled round the

---

[1] *Canadian Forces Manual of Drill and Ceremonial*, Chapter 6, Section 1.

[2] War Office, *Cavalry Training: 1912*, (London, 1912: Eyre and Spottiswoode Limited, rpt. 1915), pp. 38-43 and 119-122.

back. The sword will be held upright, shoe on the ground close to the foot and just forward of the heel, hilt close to the side. Except when otherwise stated the left hand remains in this position for subsequent movements. The right arm remains at the side.

b.   Stand at Ease. "Stand at Ease" is completed in three movements. On the first, bend the left knee and move the left foot twenty-five centimetres directly to the left raising the foot to a height not to exceed twelve centimetres. At the same time carry the shoe of the scabbard to the left. The right hand does not move. On the second movement, place the palm of the left hand on the top of the hilt, fingers together in front. For the third movement, force the hilt of the sword straight to the front to the full extent of the left arm leaving the shoe resting on the ground as per the position of attention.

c.   Stand Easy. "Stand Easy" is the same as the "Stand at Ease" but relaxed.

d.   Attention from the Stand at Ease. To return to the position of attention, bring the scabbard to the upright position, palm of the hand still on top on the first movement. On the second movement, change the grip of the hand to the position of attention around the scabbard.   Note that on parades where troops are armed with rifles these first two movements must be completed on the precautionary word of command "Strathcona's." On the command "Attention," the left foot and scabbard are returned to the position of attention.

e.   Marching. As the left foot goes forward on the first pace, raise the sword smartly with the left hand, without stooping or disturbing the position of the body, and grasp the scabbard at the point where the sword balances when held at an angle of forty-five degrees (shoe to the front), the fingers round the scabbard, the thumb along the front edge, the arm fully extended, the hilt touching the back of the arm.

f.   Halting. On the final movement of the halt, lower the sword to the ground and adopt the position of attention.

g.   Paying Compliments. When the sword in not drawn, a normal salute with the right hand is given while maintaining the scabbard in either the position of attention or per marching as appropriate.

2.   Drawing Swords. To draw swords:

a.   The first motion is to raise the scabbard until the little finger of the left hand is in line with the elbow, grasping the back (for officers' sword, upper) ring with the thumb and forefinger, the remaining fingers closed in the hand, the thick part of the forearm against the side. At the same time pass the right hand smartly across the body to the sword knot, placing it on the wrist and giving it two turns inwards to secure it. As the handle is grasped, thumb in the thumb set, draw out the blade slowly until the hand is in line with the elbow, turning the edge to the left and straightening the left arm in rear of the thigh, the right arm close to the body, shoulders square to the front.

b.   The second motion is to draw the sword from the scabbard, edge to the left, point to the rear of the left shoulder, and lower the left hand until the upper part of the hilt is opposite the mouth, the blade perpendicular, edge to the left, thumb in the seat, elbow close to the body. This is the recover position.

c.   On the third motion bring the sword smartly down until the right hand is in front of the elbow, and little finger in line with it, the elbow close to the body, blade perpendicular,

edge to the front, fore finger and thumb around the grip, hilt resting on the upper part of the hand. The other fingers are held together and slightly curled. While moving the sword to the carry, lower the scabbard to the attention position. This is the carry position.

3. Recover. See drawing swords above (paragraph b).

4. Carry. See drawing swords above (paragraph c).

5. Return Swords. Return swords as follows:

   a. Carry the hilt smartly to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow level with the shoulder, at the same time bringing forward the mouth of the scabbard about three inches, grasping the back (for the officers' sword, upper) ring with the thumb and fore finger. By a quick turn of the right wrist, drop the point to the rear of the left shoulder into the scabbard and resume the position at the end of the first motion of the draw swords (paragraph 2.a), shoulders being kept square to the front throughout this motion.

   b. Let the sword fall smoothly into the scabbard, releasing the knot by giving it two turns outwards, the right hand remaining across the body in line with the elbow, fingers extended and close together, back of the hand up and bring the sword to the position of attention.

   c. Drop the right hand smartly to the side, as in the position of attention.

6. Stand at Ease with Sword Drawn (Slope Swords). On the command "Stand at Ease," the left foot and scabbard are moved twenty-five centimetres to the left as described in paragraph 1.b and, at the same time, swords are sloped. Sloped swords is adopted by releasing the grasp of the last three fingers, and, without disturbing the position of the hand or forearm, allowing the back of the blade to fall lightly on the right shoulder midway between the neck and the point of the shoulder. The little finger is placed behind the handle. The left hand remains on the scabbard as for the position of attention.

7. Stand Easy with the Sword Drawn. To "Stand Easy," maintain the "Stand at Ease" but relax.

8. Attention from the Stand at Ease with the Sword Drawn. On the command "Attention," the left foot and scabbard are returned to the position of attention and the sword is brought to the carry.

9. Marching and Halting with Sword Drawn. The scabbard is held in the same manner as for marching and halting when the sword is not drawn as described in subparagraphs 1.e and 1.f. The sword will remain at the carry, except for "March at Ease" where the sword is sloped. If rifles are ordered slung, then swords are to be returned.

10. Right (or Left) Dressing with Sword Drawn. On the command "Eyes Right (or Left)," bring the sword to the recover and turn the head and eyes to the right (or left). On the order "Eyes Front," return the sword to the carry and, at the same time, turn the head and eyes to the front.

11. Paying Compliments.

   a. Officer's Salute at the Halt with Sword Drawn. The salute at the halt is carried out in four movements:

      (1) In the first movement bring the sword to the recover.

(2)   For the second movement, lower the sword until the point is thirty centimetres from the ground and directly to the front, edge to the left, right arm straight, hand just behind the thigh, and thumb flat on the handle of the sword.

(3)   In the third and fourth movements, bring the sword to the recover and return it to the carry.

Except when on parade with armed troops, the complete movement detailed above is performed in one continuous, graceful movement.

b.   <u>Present Arms</u>. When on parade with troops armed with rifles and "Present Arms" is ordered, officer with swords drawn will move to the recover position on the first movement of the present arms with the rifle and lower the sword to the salute on the third rifle movement. On the order "Attention," bring the sword to the recovery and then to the carry in time with first and second movements of the present to the shoulder arms.

c.   <u>Saluting on the March with Sword Drawn</u>. Saluting on the march with the sword drawn is performed as follows:

(1)   <u>Saluting in Slow Time</u>. The salute in slow time is conducted during a march past from the carry position and commences as the left foot comes to the ground. The movement continues over four paces, finishing on the right foot. There is no pause between the movements. The salute is carried out as one graceful movement.

(a)   On the order "Eyes Right" given on the left foot, take a check pace with the right foot. When the left foot next touches the ground, shoot the right arm out to the right, arm horizontal at shoulder height and square off to the right, blade perpendicular, edge to the right. At the same time, turn the head and eyes to the right.

(b)   When the right foot next hits the ground, keeping the blade perpendicular and the hand and elbow on the same plane as the shoulder, bring the sword round in a circular sweep across the body so that the pummel of the hilt comes to the point of the left shoulder. The elbow is kept level with the shoulder and the thumb remains around the grip.

(c)   In the third motion (take a further pace with the left foot), without pausing, continue the sweep, the sword passing through the position of the recover until the pummel reaches the point of the right shoulder. The elbow is still shoulder high with the upper arm squared off to the right, forearm horizontal, hand in line with the mouth.

(d)   Finally, for the fourth motion (right foot hits the ground), lower the elbow to the side and change the grip so that the thumb points up the side of the handle lower the sword to the position of the salute.

(e)   On the order "Eyes Front," given as the left foot comes to the ground, take a check pace with the right foot and when the left foot next hits the ground, turn the head and eyes to the front. At the same time, bring the sword to the position of the recover, keeping the elbow close to the side. As the left foot next comes to the ground, bring the sword down to the position of the carry.

(2)   Saluting in Quick Time. Normally the sword is retained at the carry position and the head and eyes are turned in the direction of the salute; during a march past, however, officers will conduct a full salute as per the slow time. On the order "Eyes Right" given as the left foot is forward, the four motions of the full salute will be conducted as one graceful movement working when the left foot hits the ground. "Eyes Front" is conducted in the same manner as for the slow time.

12.   General Notes.

a.   When "Officers Fall In" is ordered, officers will come to attention and draw swords before stepping off to join their squadrons.

b.   On the order "Officers Fall Out," officers will conduct the normal drill as detailed at ARTICLE 8201 - Falling Out The Officers. When swords are drawn, officers will conduct the full salute both times on the command "Hup" by the Adjutant and march off the parade with swords at the carry. When the officers have marched off of the parade square, they may return swords on their own.

c.   When on parade with troops armed with rifles and "Fix" or "Unfix Bayonets" is ordered and swords are required to be drawn or returned, the motions for drawing and returning swords will be timed with the movements of the fix (unfix) bayonets. The last motions of each sword drill will be executed on the executive "Attention."

d.   When an officer, at the halt with sword drawn, receives a salute, the salute is acknowledged by bringing the sword to the recover and then returning it to the carry. This short salute is timed to coincide with the first and fourth movements of the salute at the halt with swords drawn above. The short salute is used as an acknowledgement only when returning the salute of a junior and is never used as a replacement for a full salute.

e.   When marching with the sword drawn, an officer will salute a senior by remaining at or coming to the carry and turning head and eyes towards the senior officer.

f.   When saluting an officer at the halt or on the march, a soldier with sword drawn will come to the carry and turn head and eyes in the direction of the officer.

g.   On parade, a recipient of an award called forward shall return swords before falling out to receive the award. After falling back into position, the sword is redrawn and the original position is adopted.

h.   When the Guidon is ordered to the slope, drawn swords are also to be sloped.

i.   Swords are never sloped during the slow march.

ARTICLE K102 - MOUNTED SWORD DRILL

1.   Draw Swords. To "Draw Swords" when mounted:

a.   Pass the right hand smartly across the body over the bridle arm, draw out the blade so as to rest the hilt on the bridle arm, place the sword knot on the wrist, give it two turns inward to secure it, and then grasp the handle with the right arm close to the body, shoulders square to the front.

b. With an extended arm draw the sword slowly from the scabbard, in the rear of the left shoulder, and bring it smartly to the "Recover," that is, with the upper part of the hilt in line with the mouth, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow close to the body.

c. Lower the sword smartly to the "Carry," that is, with the top of the guard resting on the top of the hand, blade perpendicular, edge to the front, the first and second fingers gripping the handle under the resistance piece, the little finger behind the handle to steady it, the wrist resting on the leg and the pommel pressed against the side of it, upper part of the arm close to the body, and the elbow lightly touching the hip.
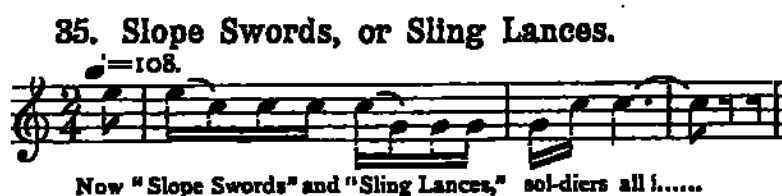
Figure 133 – Field Bugle Call – Slope Swords or Sling Lances[3]

2. <u>Slope Swords</u>. Bring the lower part of the arm at right angles to the upper hand in front of the elbow, relax the grasp of the second and third fingers, and allow the sword to fall lightly on the shoulder, midway between the neck and point of the shoulder, the top of the hilt resting on the top of the hand, the little finger still in rear of the hilt.

3. <u>Sit at Ease</u>. Keeping the sword at the slope, place the hands on the front part of the saddle, with the right hand over the left.

4. <u>Position of Attention</u>. Come smartly to the position of "Slope Swords."

5. <u>Carry Swords</u>. Resume the grasp of the second and third fingers and bring the blade perpendicular, the hilt resting on the thigh, as in the third motion of drawing swords.

6. <u>Return Swords</u>. To "Return Swords" when mounted:

a. Carry the hilt smartly to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow level with the shoulder; then by a quick turn of the wrist drop the point in rear of the left shoulder and push it slowly into the scabbard; then resume the position at the end of the first motion in "Draw Swords," shoulders being kept square to the front throughout this motion.

b. Push the sword lightly into the scabbard, release the hand from the sword knot by giving it two turns outwards, the right hand remaining across the body in line with the elbow, fingers extended and close together, back of the hand up.

c. Drop the right hand smartly to the side.

7. <u>Notes</u>.

a. When "Draw Swords" is ordered at the walk, the soldier after "Drawing Swords" will remain at the carry until ordered to "Slope"; but if "Draw Swords" is ordered at the trot or gallop, the soldier will come to the "Slope" after drawing.

---

[3] *Regimental Trumpet and Bugle Calls for the Canadian Army*, Ottawa: Canadian Army, 1961.

b.   Drawing and returning swords should frequently be practised at the trot and gallop. On such occasions, when returning swords, the scabbard may be steadied by the drawn back heel.

8.   Proving. In proving with a drawn sword, the sword is brought to the "Carry," and again sloped on the command "As you were."

9.   Paying Compliments with Swords Drawn. Officers' salute in marching past.

a.   First motion: Carry the sword direct to the right to the full extent of the arm, hand as high as the shoulder, back of the hand to the rear, blade perpendicular.

b.   Second motion: Bring the sword by a circular motion to the "Recover," keeping the elbow as high as the shoulder.

c.   Still keeping the elbow the height of the shoulder, bring the hilt to the right shoulder; during this motion let the fingernails come in line with the edge of the sword.

d.   Fourth motion: Lower the sword to the front to the full extent of the arm, blade three inches below the knee, edge to the left, thumb extended in the direction of the point, hand directly under the shoulder. There should be no pause between these motions; all should be combined in one graceful movement.

The head is slightly turned towards the reviewing officer whilst marching past. When ten yards past the reviewing officer, the sword is brought to the "Recover" carrying it well to the front, and to the "Carry" in two deliberate movements.

ARTICLE K103 - SWORD DRILL WITH SAM BROWNE BELT

1.   Sword drill with the Sam Browne belt is similar to that as described in ARTICLE K101 - DISMOUNTED SWORD DRILL. As a result of the scabbard being fixed to the belt in a much more restrictive manner than when slung, however, the drill is simplified. The left hand is maintained in the position of attention throughout. The following differences in drill are identified.

2.   Position of Attention. Hold the scabbard with the left hand, left arm straight (left arm bent outside the hilt when the sword is not drawn, back of the hand to the left, thumb round the front, forefinger pointing down the scabbard, other fingers curled round the back. This position of the left hand is maintained throughout the drill except when standing at ease with swords not drawn.

3.   Draw Swords.

a.   In one movement carry the right hand across the body to the sword knot, placing it on the wrist giving it two turns inwards to secure it and grasp the handle. Draw out the blade until the forearm is horizontal. The back of the hand is to the rear, fingers and thumb round the handle.

b.   On the second movement, draw the sword sharply forward and upwards allowing the shoe of the scabbard to move slightly to the rear and adopt the recovery position as described in "Draw Swords" in ARTICLE K101 - DISMOUNTED SWORD DRILL. Resume the position of attention with the left hand.

       c.   The third movement, the "Carry," is the same as described in "Draw Swords" in ARTICLE K101 - <u>DISMOUNTED SWORD DRILL</u>.

4.   <u>Return swords</u>.

       a.   Carry the hilt smartly to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow level with the shoulder, at the same time push the shoe of the scabbard a little to the rear. By a quick turn of the right wrist, drop the point to the rear of the left shoulder into the scabbard and resume the position at the end of the first motion of the draw swords (paragraph 3.a), shoulders being kept square to the front throughout this motion.

       b.   Let the sword fall smoothly into the scabbard, releasing the knot by giving it two turns outwards, the right hand remaining across the body in line with the elbow, fingers extended and close together, back of the hand up and bring the sword to the position of attention.

       c.   Drop the right hand smartly to the side, as in the position of attention.

5.   <u>Marching</u>. The sword or empty scabbard is kept steady at the side by the left hand.

ANNEX L - LANCE DRILL

ARTICLE L100 - GENERAL

1.   As described in ARTICLE 9302 - Lances, the Regiment has never been issued lances or used them as weapons. The Regiment has, however, maintained lances solely for tent pegging and use during ceremonial activities including rides and displays by the Mounted Troop. As a matter of interest, this annex contains lance drill based on that described in *Cavalry Training: 1912*.[1] The programme and drill for the musical ride are held separately by the Mounted Troop.

2.   Parts of the Lance. The lance consists of the following parts: the point, the butt, the pole, the point of balance and the sling. The sling should be fitted as for mounted work, so that the bottom of it comes two inches nearer the butt than the point of balance.

ARTICLE L101 - DISMOUNTED LANCE DRILL

1.   Position at Attention. The lance is held between the thumb and fingers of the right hand at the full extent of the arm, thumb inside the pole, fingers outside, back of the hand to the right, butt close to the ball of the right foot. This is the position of the "Order."

2.   Stand at Ease. Carry the left foot to the left.

3.   Carry Lance. Raise the hand with the back to the front and grasp the pole, thumb level with top of the shoulder, back of the hand to the front, elbow down. Lance to be kept perpendicular.[2]

Figure 134 – Field Bugle Call – Carry Swords or Lances

4.   Shoulder Lance. Bring the lance to the shoulder by raising the arm from the elbow, still holding the lance as at the "Order," right elbow close to the hip, hand in front and in line with the elbow, lance sloping backwards and resting on the right shoulder. (This is the position in which the lance is carried when marching on foot.)

5.   Support Lance.

   a.   Raise the hand to the balance, placing the thumb in front, and the fingers in rear of the pole.

   b.   Raise the arm from the elbow, back of the hand down, so that the butt is brought across the body to the left front, the lance resting on the right forearm, the butt about six inches lower than the point.

6.   Paying Compliments with the Lance. When a soldier carrying a lance passes an officer he will do so at the "Shoulder" and will turn his head towards the person saluted. A soldier with a lance, if halted when an officer passes, will turn towards him and "Carry Lance." A sentry on the approach of an officer will halt, turn towards him and "Carry Lance."

7.   Guards and Sentries. Guards including reliefs will march with lances at the "Shoulder." Sentries are to walk with their lances at the "Support."

ARTICLE L102 - MOUNTED LANCE DRILL

---

[1] War Office, *Cavalry Training: 1912*, pp. 52-54 and 122-126
[2] *Regimental Trumpet and Bugle Calls for the Canadian Army*, Ottawa: Canadian Army, 1961.

1.   When standing to a horse at "Attention," the lancer stands square to the front, toes in line with the horse's fore feet, holding the bridoon rein with the right hand near the bit, and the lance at the "Order" in the left hand, which slides down the pole to the full extent of the arm, the thumb next the body, the fingers on the outside of the lance.

2.   Prepare to mount. Grasp the lance just below the sling with the left hand, which at the same time grips the reins and a lock of the mane.

Figure 135 – Strathcona Mounted Troop at Spruce Meadows (The Military Museums Archives)

3.   Mount. Mount in the usual manner, taking care to keep the point of the lance well up to prevent it from touching the riders and horses in the ranks. As soon as seated in the saddle, grasp the lance by the right hand below the balance under the bridle hand; by a second motion bring it smartly up and hold it perpendicularly with the right hand in front of the face, the butt in line with the elbow; after a short pause, lower it carefully into the bucket and come to the position of "Carry Lance," which is the position of "Attention" when mounted.

4.   Prepare to Dismount. Let the right hand slide down the pole of the lance to the full extent of the arm; bring the lance smartly up and hold it perpendicularly with the right hand in front of the face; after a short pause lower it under the bridle arm, and grasp it just below the sling by the left hand, which should already be holding the reins and mane.

5.   Dismount. Dismount as usual, pressing the hand upon the butt end of the pole, so as to keep the point well raised, and assume the position of "Attention" with the lance at the "Order" in the left hand, butt close to the ball of the left foot.

6.   Carry Lance. The lance, resting with the butt end in the bucket, is kept upright with the right hand, which grasps the pole, thumb level with the top of the shoulder, back of the hand to the front, elbow down.

7.   Order Lance. Let the lance fall against the hollow of the right shoulder, and let the right hand slide down the pole to the full extent of the arm, as on foot.

8.   Trail Lance. Grasping the lance at the balance, raise it out of the bucket, lower the point to the left front, over the horse's near ear, the hand resting on the thigh, little finger in line with the back edge of the stripe of the pantaloons, knuckles down and elbow slightly forward.

9.   Sling Lance.[3] (Given from the "Carry") Pass the right hand through the sling, and rest it on the thigh, near the hip, with the knuckles down, elbows bent outwards, without stiffness. On "Left Arm Sling Lance":

  a.   Let the right arm slide down the pole of the lance to the full extent of the arm.

  b.   Bring the lance smartly up, and hold it perpendicularly with the right hand in front of the face; after a short pause, lower it carefully into the left bucket outside the bridle arm, the right hand resting on the left, the lance sliding through it.

---

  [3] "Sling Lance" is currently not done, as the Regiment's slings are not long enough.

     c.   Holding the lance between the thumb and fore-finger, pass the remaining fingers of the right hand over the reins and hold them, with the back of the hand up: pass the left hand thus disengaged through the sling and again take the reins.

On "Carry Lance":

     d.   Let the right arm slide down the pole of the lance to the full extent of the arm.

     e.   Bring the lance smartly up, and hold it perpendicularly with the right hand in front of the face; after a short pause, lower it carefully into the left bucket outside the bridle arm, the right hand resting on the left, the lance sliding through it.

     f.   Drop the right hand to the full extent of the arm under the bridle hand, seize the lance and bring it smartly up, holding it perpendicularly with the right hand in front of the face; after a short pause, lower it carefully into the right bucket, and assume the position of "Carry Lance."

10.   <u>Dressing</u>. On the order "Dress," when mounted, the lance is brought to the "Order." As soon as the dressing is completed and the command "Eyes Front" given, the position of "Carry Lance" is resumed.

11.   <u>Proving</u>. In proving the telling off with a lance at the "Carry," the right arm is extended to the front, the hand retaining its grasp. In proving at the "Order," the hand is brought to the position of "Carry," and the arm extended to the front. The original position is assumed on the command "As you were."

12.   <u>General Notes</u>.

     a.   Royal escorts and orderlies attending royal personages or officers on duty will move with their lances at the "Trail." Other orderlies and individual lancers when detached will move with their lances "Slung," except when acting as scouts or when passing guards, armed parties and officers and others entitled to salutes, when they "Carry Lance." Care should be taken to prevent soldiers from getting into the habit of leaning on their lances when at the "Carry" or when at the "Sling."

     b.   When it is desired to ride at ease, the command "Sling Lance, March (or Sit) at Ease" will be given, upon which leaders return swords. When at the halt and it is intended to sit at ease for a short time, the command will be given "Sit at Ease," upon which leaders do not return swords but sit at ease as in ARTICLE K102 - <u>MOUNTED SWORD DRILL</u>

     6.

     c.   It may sometimes be convenient, for example when riding through wood, to trail lance with the point to the rear: if this is done files should be opened.

ANNEX M - DRILL WITH CROP, CANE OR PACE STICK

ARTICLE M100 - GENERAL

Drill for the crop, cane or pace stick is much the same in most instances. The differences are identified below.

ARTICLE M101 - ATTENTION

1.   For canes or pace sticks, hold the cane firmly in the right hand, in a perpendicular position close to the right side of the body, first joint of the forefinger of the right hand underneath the knob of the cane pointing towards the ground, the remaining three fingers grasping the cane.

2.   For officers carrying a crop hold the crop under the left arm with the loop to the rear, handle to the front with adopting the position of "Attention."

ARTICLE M102 - STAND AT EASE

1.   For canes or pace sticks, adopt the position of "Stand at Ease" with the back of the right hand in the palm of the left. The right hand holds the cane as at "Attention" and the cane is kept between the crook of the arm and the body, ferrule end up, pointing to the right front.

2.   Officers hold the crop as for "Attention," except that the hands are moved to the position of "Stand at Ease."

ARTICLE M103 - MARCHING

1.   Step off and as the left foot first comes to the ground, move both hands at the same time to grasp the cane in the middle, keeping the cane upright into the right shoulder by the left hand, and the elbows close to the body. As the foot again comes to the ground, straighten the right arm with the cane horizontal and cut the left hand to the side. As the left foot comes to the ground for the third time, swing the arms as in marching, holding the cane between the thumb and first two fingers of the right hand and keeping it parallel to the ground throughout the swing which must be straight from front to rear. This position is referred to as the "Trail."

2.   Squad Halt. Keep the cane at the "Trail" (see marching above) and observe a regulation pause before bringing the cane to the position of "Attention" as follows:

    a.   First Movement.   Grasp the cane with the left hand at the centre and bring it to a perpendicular position at the right side. At the same time move the right hand to the knob of the cane as in the position of "Attention"; and
    b.   Second Movement. Cut the left hand away to the side.

ARTICLE M104 - TURNING

1.   When Halted. Keep the cane in the position of "Attention."

2.   On the March. On the first movement of the turn, bring the cane to a perpendicular position in front of the right shoulder, upper part of the arm close to the side, forearm horizontal, hand in line with the waist belt. On the first pace after the completion of the turn, bring the cane to the "Trail" (see

marching above) as the right foot reaches the ground.

ARTICLE M105 - <u>SALUTING</u>

1.   The drill for saluting when carrying a crop, cane, or pace stick is essentially the same as when saluting without arms. When the crop, cane or pace stick is carried or held in the right hand, additional movements are required to transfer it to a position under the left arm before saluting with the right arm.

2.   <u>Saluting at the Halt</u>. The drill for saluting at the halt is as follows:

>   a.   <u>Cane or Pace Stick</u>. Other ranks carrying a cane or pace stick, place it under the left armpit in a horizontal position, head to the front. The cane or pace stick is carried across the body and into this position by the right hand, which grasps the cane or pace stick at the head as in the position of "Attention." After the cane or pace stick is placed in position, observe a regulation pause, keep the left elbow still at the side and raise the left forearm to grasp the cane or pace stick slightly to the rear of the head with the fingers together and straight, thumb on the right side of the cane or pace stick. At the same time, cut the right arm to the side to the position of "Attention," observe a regulation pause and salute leaving the left hand on the pace stick. Hold the salute for a regulation pause. As the right arm is cut to the side, observe a regulation pause, reach across the body with the right hand and grasp the cane or pace stick at the head, at same time cutting the left forearm to the side in the position of "Attention." After observing a regulation pause, return the cane or pace stick to the right side in the position of "Attention."

>   b.   <u>Crop</u>. Officers carrying a crop salute without changing its position, that is, the crop is held under the left armpit when standing at "Attention."

3.   <u>Saluting on the March to the Flank (All)</u>. As the left foot comes to the ground, place the crop, cane or pace stick horizontally beneath the left armpit, head (handle) to the front. As the left foot again comes to the ground, cut the right hand to the side (and when carrying a pace stick or cane, place the left hand near its end). As the left foot again comes to the ground, adopt the position of the "Salute" with the right hand. Hold the salute until the right foot comes to the ground for the third time since adopting the position of the "Salute." At this time, cut the right hand to the side. As the left foot comes to the ground, grasp the crop, cane or pace stick with the right hand at the point where it is held while marching, and at the same time, cut the left forearm to the side (where applicable). As the left foot comes to the ground again, carry the crop, cane or pace stick to the right side. As the left foot comes to the ground again, swing the arms as for normal marching accordingly. The following summarizes the drill for saluting on the march:

>   a.   Pace 1 - Left foot, place crop, cane or pace stick under the left armpit;

>   b.   Pace 3 - Left foot, cut right hand to the side (and move the left hand to the end);

>   c.   Pace 5 - Left foot, salute;

>   d.   Pace 5 to 9 - Hold salute;

>   e.   Pace 10 - Right foot, cut right hand to the side, hand and eyes front;

>   f.   Pace 11 - Left foot, grasp crop, cane or pace stick with the right hand;

g.   Pace 13 - Left foot, carry crop, cane or pace stick to the right side; and

h.   Pace 15 - Left foot, swing the arms.

The detail contained in the above sequence explains the normal duration of a salute. On certain occasions, for example when marching past a saluting base, the salute is held from the first marker until clear of the saluting base.

4.   Saluting on the March to the Front (All). After halting, pause, place the crop, cane or pace stick under the left armpit, pause; cut the right arm to the side and at the same time place the left hand on the cane or pace stick (as applicable). After another pause, salute, pause and then cut the right arm to the side. The next time the left foot comes to the ground, transfer the crop, cane or pace stick to the right side and the next time the left foot comes to the ground, swing the arms.

ARTICLE M106 - DISMISSING

1.   When an officer is present, the squad salutes with the cane or pace stick as previously detailed as for marching (above). Warrant officers and senior non-commissioned officers not carrying a cane must wait for those who are. After a pause, the squad turns to the right, pauses, and falls out, bringing the cane to the "Trail" (see marching above) when marching off the parade ground.

2.   When an officer is not present, the squad turns to the right, pauses, and falls out, bringing the cane to the "Trail" (see marching above) when marching off the parade ground.

ARTICLE M107 - THE PACE STICK

1.   Carrying the Pace Stick when Closed. When closed, the stick is carried either at the "Trail" (see marching above) or under the left arm. When at the "Trail," it is swung with the right arm from front to rear and kept parallel to the ground. When under the left arm, it is kept parallel to the ground; the point of balance under the left armpit, shoes to the rear, the head of the stick held in the left hand, fingers together and on the left, extended and along the stick, thumb straight on the right. When the stick is held at the right side in the position of "Attention," the rules for cane drill apply.

2.   Pace stick Open. When open, the stick is held at the right as follows:

a.   Standing at Ease. When standing at ease, the stick is held in the right hand just below the apex, back of the hand to the right fingers around both shafts, thumb nearer the body around the rear shaft, elbow against the side. The rear shaft is upright with the shoe slightly to the right and to the front of the right toe and the forward leg is extended to the front, point off the ground. The left arm is at the side;

b.   Stand at Ease to the Attention. Bend the left knee and swing the forward leg of the stick to the rear by rotating the stick to the rear; and

c.   Quick or Slow March. Step off with the left foot, swing the rear leg of the stick forward by twisting with the fingers and thumb and rotating the free leg of the stick outward and forwards; place the swinging shoe on the ground straight in front of the point already on the ground. Continue this movement until halting or as long as required.

3.   Marching Position. When halting, the stick is held in the position of "Attention." When ceasing

to swing while still marching, the stick is lifted up so that the forearm is parallel to the ground, hand in front of the right hip, thumb and forefinger around the forward shaft which is upright, other fingers around the rear shaft. This is known as the marching position.

ANNEX N – <u>CHANGE OF COMMAND PRAYERS</u>

ARTICLE N101 – <u>INVOCATION</u>

"At this time of transition, let us acknowledge the importance of the history, the heritage, the perseverance, and the faith of those who have served and are presently serving in the Regiment. Faith is not the exclusive domain of religion. It is the belief and trust in something that is greater than ourselves. Believing and trusting in a fellow soldier or in the chain of command is an act of faith. Signing up to serve one's country, with up to and including the cost of one's life, is an act of faith. And prayer is an act whereby we collectively express our hopes and desires for the success and advancement of our common goals, values and purposes as human beings, and in our case as members of a proud and capable Regiment.
Therefore, let us pray."

ARTICLE N102 – <u>PRAYER</u>

"We give thanks today for all who have served and sacrificed before us. In particular, we give thanks for the leadership, dedication, and service of our outgoing Commanding Officer _____ . We pray for his/her continued success, both personally and professionally, wherever life and duty may call him/her.
We pray for our new Commanding Officer _____ . May he/she be blessed with wisdom to lead, courage to command, and perseverance to inspire all who come under his/her direction and authority. We pray that under his/her command we will uphold our heritage, accomplish all our goals and overcome each and every challenge. Amen."

ARTICLE N103 – <u>BENEDICTION</u>

"In times of battle, be strengthened.
In times of decision, be enlightened.
In times of change, be renewed.
And in times of victory, be empowered.
Perseverance. Amen."

ANNEX O - <u>SUBALTERN MANUAL</u>

SECTION 1 – <u>BEING AN OFFICER</u>

ARTICLE O101 - <u>INTRODUCTION</u>

It is frequently construed that the holder of the Queen's Commission is, by some act of parliament and Her Majesty's grace both an Officer and a Gentleman or Lady.

ARTICLE O102 - <u>OFFICER AND GENTLEMAN OR LADY</u>

Such is NOT the case. The Queen's Commission proclaims an Officer with the accompanying authority and responsibilities, but the status of Gentleman or Lady, as the Regiment has had female members for a quarter of a century, can only be obtained by continuous observances or certain principles and the application or certain protocol.

ARTICLE O103 – <u>GENTLEMAN AND LADY</u>

1.   The philosopher Amiel has described a Gentleman as: "…the man who is master of himself, who respects himself, and makes others respect him. The essence of gentlemanliness is self-rule…from self-respect a thousand other things are derived – such as the care of a man's person, or his language, or his manners; watchfulness over his body and over his soul; dominion over his instincts and his passions; the effort to be self-sufficient; the pride which will accept no favor; carefulness not to expose himself to any humiliation or mortification, and to maintain himself independent of any human caprice; the constant protection of his honour and his self-respect. In order to lay himself open to no reproach, a gentleman will keep himself irreproachable; in order to be treated with consideration, he will always be careful himself to observe distances, to apportion respect, and to observe all gradations of conventional politeness, according to rank, age and situation."[1]

2.   If the good name of the Canadian Armed Forces is to be upheld; if the servicemen and women in the ranks is to be given the leadership they deserve, then Officers must at all times be worthy of the title "Gentleman" or "Lady."

ARTICLE O104 - <u>RESPONSIBILITY</u>

1.   An officer has a dual responsibility which they must constantly keep foremost in their thoughts, and which they must never forget or shirk.

2.   They are responsible to their superiors for carrying out their orders and directions to the best of their ability and with no thought of their own personal desires, comfort, or safety.

3.   They are responsible to those placed under them to merit their respect and in every way to be worthy or being their leader, under any circumstances of hardship, danger, or despair.

4.   If they are to shoulder such responsibility, an Officer must have:

        a.   A sense of honour and responsibility;

---

[1] Henri Frédérick Amiel, *Journal Intime*, (Cambridge, Cambridge University Press, 1911) p. 118.

b.   **Strong Character** – moral and physical courage, self-reliance, loyalty, tenacity, and honesty;

c.   **Sound Judgement** – developed by learning to discriminate between right and wrong, good and bad, strength and weakness; by acquiring a sense of values and by practicing logical thinking;

d.   **Energy** – mental enthusiasm, physical fitness and personal "drive." The will to succeed;

e.   **A Sense of Humour** – the ability to accept all aspects of one's job in a fashion which allows a certain level of light humour in touchy situations, if applicable (i.e. do not take oneself too seriously);

f.   **Knowledge** – A thorough knowledge of their work, with the ability to impart it clearly, both verbally and in writing; and

g.   **Common Sense** – the ability to analyze a problem and to reach, and apply to it, a logical solution.

ARTICLE O105 - DND AND CAF CODE OF VALUES AND ETHICS

1.   The *DND and CF Code of Values and Ethics* sets a standard of expected behaviours for all personnel in the Department of National Defence (DND) and the Canadian Armed Forces. The principles, values and expected behaviours it contains apply to DND and its employees and to the CAF and its members. Nothing in the *DND and CAF Code of Values and Ethics* is in derogation of standards of conduct and other disciplinary or administrative accountability procedures and mechanisms established pursuant to the *National Defence Act* or the Queen's Regulations and Orders.

2.   As dedicated professionals whose work is essential to Canada's and Canadians' well-being, as well as to the enduring strength of the Canadian democracy and the protection of its territory and its sovereignty, they contribute to upholding the public trust. The following ethical principles are expected behaviours that apply to all CAF members, regardless of position or rank. They are to provide guidance and to ensure that all decisions and actions are taken in the public interest. The ethical principles are consistent with our most fundamental democratic ideals and are to be applied in order of precedence.

a.   Respect the dignity of all persons;

b.   Serve Canada before self; and,

c.   Obey and support lawful authority.

3.   The following values and expected behaviours that apply to all CAF members, which are used in concert with the above mentioned ethical principles, and all have equal weight. If a doubt should arise in the application of one or more of these values, the three ethical principles will assist in choosing a course of action.[2]

a.   Integrity;

---

[2] *DND and CF Code of Values and Ethics*

      b.   Loyalty;

      c.   Courage;

      d.   Stewardship; and,

      e.   Excellence.

4.   As a member of the CAF, it is your responsibility to ensure that you know and abide by the *DND and CF Code of Values and Ethics* in all of your actions, those of your subordinates, and that any and all breaches of such are reported to the appropriate authority.

ARTICLE O106 - WAR AND PROFESSIONAL SOLDIERS

Although oriented to arms and the application of violence, in the same way that a physician is not a lover of sickness, the professional soldier is not a lover of war. Rather, the professional soldier is acutely aware of war's horrors and of the need to be prepared for them. It is the existence of war as an inherent part of the human condition, and the requirement to conduct and manage it within established constraints and moral boundaries, which necessitates the military ethos and justifies the profession of arms.

ARTICLE O107 - ATTITUDE TO ORDERS

1.   An officer must never apologize for an order; to apologize for an order given by themselves is weak; for one given by a superior is disloyal. They must always carry out an order to the best of their ability. If they disagree with it or thinks its wrong, criticism should be made to the Adjutant or sub-unit commander afterwards.

2.   If a junior officer has to implement an order given by their superiors which they know will be unpopular with their subordinates, they must give it out as their own order and take full responsibility for it. It is disloyal to pass on such orders in the form "the CO or squadron commander wants us to do etc," as this implies disagreement on the part of the junior with the policy of their superiors. Such orders must always start with the phrase "I want etc, etc" or "you will, etc".

ARTICLE O108 - CRITICISM

1.   No officer should expect soldiers under their command to carry out loyally all their orders if the officer himself does not set the example. The disastrous habit of "knocking" all orders or authority can be one of the most harmful influences in our whole service. Not only that, it is sometimes found that criticism takes place in the presence and hearing of the men. Nothing could be worse.

2.   The great Admiral Earl St. Vincent once said: "I dread not the seamen; it is the indiscreet conversation of the officers and their presumptuous discussions of the orders they receive that produce all our ills"[3]. Let all officers who presume to criticize their seniors remember this – they thereby set an example for criticism of themselves by all who are junior to them. The voicing or gossip, slander, harsh criticism and faultfinding are unofficer-like practises.

---

[3] Robert Heinl, *Dictionary of Military and Naval Quotations*, (Anapolis, United States Naval Institute, 1966) p. 92.

ARTICLE O109 - <u>ADVICE</u>

Do not be too proud or too difficult to seek information or advice. It is not inappropriate for the inexperienced to seek assistance from those more experienced.

ARTICLE O110 - <u>OFFICERS AND LEADERSHIP</u>

The first duty of a Canadian Army officer is to lead, whether as a Second Lieutenant commanding a troop, or as a Lieutenant-General at National Defence Headquarters. As the Field Marshal Viscount Montgomery of Alamein said in his memoirs in 1958, "The first thing a young officer must do when he joins the Army is to fight a battle, and that battle is for the hearts of his men. If he wins that battle and subsequent similar ones, his men will follow him anywhere; if he loses it, he will never do any real good."[4] The officer's second duty is to pursue self-improvement and professional development in order to become expert in the profession of arms. To be good leaders, officers must be models of professional excellence, displaying absolute and uncompromising integrity of character, taking responsibility for their actions and being accountable for the actions of those in their charge. If an officer's integrity is compromised, he or she will be unable to maintain the bond of trust upon which their leadership relies. All officers must live by the precepts of the military ethos set forth by the army, and in a spirit of fraternity which is anchored on service to the nation and care of subordinates attitude to others. On operations, the ultimate measure of an officer's worth is the ability to carry out dangerous tasks successfully, at minimum cost. When an officer is given a mission which he or she feels will result in unusually high or unnecessary casualties the officer must, as Currie did at Passchendaele, seek additional resources or request to have the mission modified.

ARTICLE O111 - <u>WARRANT AND NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS</u>

1.   Warrant officers and Non-Commissioned Officers have rightly been called the backbone of the Canadian Army. They are the link connecting soldiers to their officers and officers to their soldiers. Their role is to translate the intentions of commanders into action. Because of their experience, maturity and knowledge, Warrant Officers and Senior NCOs serve a special function. They must not only set the example in matters of discipline, drill, dress and deportment, but they also have an important responsibility in teaching newly joined officers hands on skills in the mechanics of soldiering and leadership. This includes offering advice, helping solve problems, and providing feedback and information.

2.   In their responsibilities both up and down the chain of command, Warrant Officers and NCOs must strive to develop a rapport that is based on honesty, trust respect and candour. This is facilitated by being mindful of their personal honour and that of their regiment or branch. In this regard, Warrant Officers and NCOs are expected to know, observe and enforce all regulations, rules and instructions pertaining to their duties and to show a proper sense of their rank, status and responsibilities at all times.

3.   The relationship with your troop warrant is one of the most important that you will make as a new troop leader. They are the bridge that spans the gap between you and the soldiers in your troop. Often, warrant officers will have been working at the Regiment for many years prior to your arrival and will know the soldiers very well; as such, they will be able to guide you and offer advice in regards to their administration. Moreover, because of the time they have served, they have seen many different troop leaders and have been employed in every position within a troop; their understanding of your duties is

---

[4] Bernard Montgomery, *The Memoirs of Field-Marshal the Viscount Montgomery of Alamein, KG*, (Boston, 1982, Da Capo Press) p. 53.

extensive. Questions regarding tactical or technical information should be directed to them as your first point of contact. If they do not know the answer, they will be able to point you in the right direction. Although you are encouraged to work closely with your troop warrant, you are ultimately responsible for the combat effectiveness of your troop. Each command team is different and you must work to find a balance between each of you that will work best.

ARTICLE O112 - PRIVATE SOLDIERS

Private soldiers are required to work, learn, and train hard, and to carry out all orders and tasks to the best of their abilities. As full members of the profession of arms, they are expected to conduct themselves as befits such membership, and to live by the tenets of the military ethos and its application within the Army. Hence, their actions, conduct, and deportment must at all times reflect credit on themselves, their comrades, their regiment, the army, and Canada itself. Application of disciplined initiative for which the Canadian soldier is renowned is also demanded. In return, private soldiers have the right to be well and properly led, to be adequately trained and equipped to do the tasks they are given, to be accorded trust and respect, to be appreciated for their efforts, and to know that their welfare will be tended to by their superiors.

ARTICLE O113 - PROFESSION OF ARMS

Canadian soldiers are members of a honourable and noble profession, serving their country with unlimited liability and embracing an ethos founded on Duty, Integrity, Discipline, and Honour. This service further implies a moral contract of reciprocal obligations between soldiers and their fellow citizens. Because conflict is morally and physically based, the army comprises moral and physical components. It is the proper development of and balance between these components, which provides force cohesion and engenders in soldiers the superior will require for success. Although moral components form the basis of military professionalism and are the decisive factor in operations, cohesion and superior will are also dependent on the army possessing adequate

ARTICLE O114 - ARRIVAL AT THE REGIMENT

1.   An officer will report to the Adjutant upon his or her arrival to unit lines when joining the Regiment or returning from detached duty, hospital or leave. He will also acquaint himself with all orders issued during his absence, and check the Officers' Memo Book held by the Adjutant. If he arrives after duty hours, he should report to the Regimental Orderly Officer immediately and see the Adjutant the next working day.

2.   An officer will be interviewed by his Commanding Officer normally at the time he reports to the Adjutant.

3.   An officer when leaving the unit area for a period either on or off duty will always notify the Adjutant, Orderly Officer or immediate superior where he can be located in an emergency. When proceeding on leave he will sign the Officers' signing out book held in the Adjutant's office.

ARTICLE O115 - REGIMENTAL TRADITION

1.   As an officer, you are expected to take a continual interest in the history and tradition of the Regiment. You must be able to converse with your men and instil a sense of pride in the traditions of the Regiment when the occasion arises.

2.   Study the Guidon and learn the origins of the Battle Honours. You should be conversant with the authorized Regimental Histories available in the kit shop.

ARTICLE O116 - <u>FORMS OF ADDRESS</u>

1.   One of the most common errors subalterns commit is incorrectly addressing officers or other ranks within the Regiment. Embarrassment and ruffled feelings can be avoided by following a few simple guidelines.

2.   The Commanding Officer is referred to as "the CO" or as "Lieutenant-Colonel." You may address him as "Colonel" on less formal occasions, but he should be addressed as "Sir" otherwise.

3.   The Second-in-Command may be referred to as "the 2IC." The Second-In-Command and all other officers of the rank of Major and above are always referred to as "Sir" by junior officers, never by their Christian names. The officers occupying the positions of Adjt, Ops O, 2IC HQ Sqn should be addressed by their position title.

4.   Captains, Lieutenants and Second-Lieutenants are on a first name basis. Relations are generally informal except when on parade. Subalterns may also be referred to as "Mister" or "Ms."

5.   The Regimental Sergeant-Major is referred to as "the RSM." Junior Officers may address the RSM as "Mister Last Name" depending on the preference of the RSM. <u>NEVER</u> use "Sergeant-Major" or "Chief."

6.   In dealing with Non-Commissioned Officers, use their rank and name. Master Warrant Officers are addressed as "Sergeant-Major" and Master Corporals are referred to as "Master Corporal". Warrant Officers holding the position of Squadron Quarter Master Sergeant (SQMS) are normally addressed by their title in an abbreviated form as "SQ."

7.   The Regiment also has three other MWO positions that have special forms of address. The Regimental Quarter Master Sergeant (RQMS) is normally addressed in an abbreviated form as "RQ." Similarly, the Technical Quarter Master Sergeant (TQMS) and the Electrical Technical Quarter Master Sergeant (ETQMS) are addressed as "TQ" and "ET" respectively.

8.   In keeping with the traditions, private soldiers in the Regiment are addressed as "Trooper."

9.   Today, more than ever, there is a closer bond of comradeship between officers and men. A clearer understanding has developed under modern democratic principles that, in no way, impair discipline or the respect of the men for their officers. Danger will arise only if officers fail to learn to be friendly with their men without loss of dignity or respect, always realizing that "undue familiarity can breed contempt". Officers will not be on a first-name basis with any other rank.

ARTICLE O117 - <u>RANK HAS ITS PRIVILEGES</u>

        The military system bears some similarity to a hierarchy. Control is exercised by leaders and those placed in charge of units in the military structure. Disciplined obedience combined with loyalty is required of all, from the highest to the lowest, in accordance with regulations. Subordinates are required to extend an unflagging respect to the authority which issued their orders. That respect must be manifested by unfailing courtesy and obedience to the individuals placed in positions of authority.

ARTICLE O118 - "I WISH" AND "I DESIRE"

When the Commanding Officer states "I wish" or "I desire" rather than "I order you to do such and such", this wish or desire has all the force of a direct order and must be treated as such.

ARTICLE O119 - PLACE OF HONOUR

The place of honour is on the RIGHT; accordingly when a junior officer rides, walks or sits with a senior, he takes a position to the left of the senior. The deference which a junior should pay to his elders pertains to this relationship. The junior should walk in step with the senior, allow the senior to be first to enter any room or building, and render similar acts of consideration and courtesy.

ARTICLE O120 - ADJUTANT AND OPERATIONS OFFICER

The Adjutant and Operations Officer are the Staff Officers of the Commanding Officer and it is to be understood that orders issued by them on behalf of the Commanding Officer are to be respected as such.

ARTICLE O121 - CONDUCT AND DEPORTMENT

1.   A very high standard of conduct, dress and deportment is expected of an officer at all times where ever he may be. It must be remembered that the Canadian Armed Forces are judged on the behaviour of all its members and that other ranks follow the example of their officers.

2.   Be careful of your conduct at all times, but particularly so if your actions can become known to the soldiers or to the public. An officer who reprimands soldiers for faults of conduct of which he himself is guilty does a disservice to his commission and the trust with which he is empowered. By such inexcusable action, he has not only lost the respect of those he has the privilege of commanding but has brought discredit on his Regiment.

3.   An officer must be constantly alert to ensure that all personnel subordinate to him are checked for slackness in any respect.

ARTICLE O122 - SALUTING

1.   Saluting is a custom which, in some ways, is peculiar to the armed forces. There is nothing demeaning about saluting. On the contrary, it is a mark of mutual respect and courtesy between individuals as well as a barometer of the standard of training and discipline of a unit.

2.   While you may feel self-conscious at first, you will soon become accustomed to being saluted and returning salutes. Remember, do it smartly. Salutes are returned, not merely acknowledged or "waved off". To do so less than smartly is to insult the recipient of the salute. Look directly at the recipient of your salute.

3.   It is your duty to ensure the proper standard of saluting is maintained. Don't turn a "blind eye" to the lack of a salute or an improperly delivered salute. You are not doing yourself, the Regiment, or members of other units a favour.

4.   All officers of the rank of major and above are always saluted. When entering an office, it is customary to come to attention at the doorway before entering. If you are wearing a headdress, salute the officer inside.

5.   It is also customary to salute inside buildings. It you are not wearing headdress, then simply come to attention when greeting a superior. Only the downstairs duty area of the Harvey Building is a required saluting area.

6.   If in civilian clothes, come to attention when saluted or if paying respects to a superior officer, civilian headdress is removed to pay or return compliments.

ARTICLE O123 - DRESS

1.   An officer should be smartly dressed and well turned-out at all times. This is just as important in civilian clothes. Therefore, pay the same attention to the selection and care of your civilian clothing as you pay to your uniform. Ensure you dress appropriately for the occasion. If in doubt, a jacket and tie should be worn, as it is very easy to remove the jacket and tie if overdressed. Never hesitate to seek advice from more experienced officers on matters of dress.

2.   You are expected to lead your subordinates by example; therefore your dress must be beyond reproach at all times. You will not gain respect by setting a poor example to your men.

ARTICLE O124 - DISCIPLINE

1.   The Adjutant is the Commanding Officer's primary staff officer, and as such, has a wide range of responsibilities. The Adjutant is responsible for the discipline, instruction, deportment and general conduct of junior officers. The Adjutant is aided in this task by the Senior Subaltern who is the senior lieutenant of the unit. The Adjutant through the Senior Subaltern passes on instructions to the junior officers or may receive suggestions mostly having to do with the behaviour and welfare of the subalterns as a group.

2.   Officer discipline, when necessary, can take many forms. It includes extra duties, and ranges from verbal warning through to disciplinary action under QR&O's or to career action leading to release from the CAF.

ARTICLE O125 - SENIOR SUBALTERN

        The Senior Subaltern is normally a lieutenant or captain appointed by the Commanding Officer to represent all subalterns in the Regiment. As such, the Senior Subaltern has direct access to the Commanding Officer to enable an informal means of presenting the views of the subalterns. The Senior Subaltern also advises the Commanding Officer of the subalterns' state of morale and provides a conduit by which the Commanding Officer may present his views without employing formal avenues. The Senior Subaltern should be advised of any factor that may affect the subalterns as a whole so that it can be brought to the attention of the Commanding Officer.

ARTICLE O126 - PUNCTUALITY

        A good officer is never late for an appointment or parade. If you should be unavoidably detained, make your apologies at the first opportunity.

ARTICLE O127 - ATTITUDE TOWARD ORDERS

1.   An officer must always carry out lawful orders to the best of their ability, regardless whether they agree with them or not. Disloyalty to superior officers not only undermines the Regimental structure but is also unprofessional. Orders or instructions should be discussed with your superior officer only behind

closed doors. Your expressed dissatisfaction in front of your subordinates will only create poor morale and lower your own stature.

2.   Orders and information may be disseminated through weekly conferences, routine orders or standing orders. The junior officer must acquaint himself with Regimental Standing Orders and Regimental Administrative and Logistic Procedures on his arrival at the Regiment. He is expected to be current in Regimental affairs and policy by reading Regimental Routine Orders and the Officers' Memo Book. The Officers' Memo Book is normally held in the Mariner Room and updated by the Adjutant.

ARTICLE O128 - RELATIONSHIPS WITH UNIT OFFICERS

1.   Although an officer's close friends and associates are his fellow unit officers, the informal and free exchange of ideas and opinions expressed off duty must not be conducted openly during duty hours or in the presence of subordinates. You must at all times maintain a respectful attitude towards all other officers regardless of your personal feelings. Grievances or dislikes originating from your daily routine must not be brought into the relaxed atmosphere of the Mess. Similarly, the Mess is no place to brood over criticism or corrective action you have received for your shortcomings. The Commanding Officer, Squadron Commanders and the Adjutant may seem severe at times, but this does not interfere with their relations with you in the social sphere.

2.   When reprimanded by a senior officer for slackness, or for a fault in men under your command, do not attempt to cast the blame on a subordinate who may be at fault. Accept criticism, and discuss the matter with your subordinates afterwards. Your NCOs and men will like you for it and will try not to let you down. If your whole command has fallen down and brought wrath on your head, pass on the trouble to them and point out their faults, but in doing so say "we" and not "you", did so and so, showing as is the case, that you recognize and accept your responsibility for the fault.

ARTICLE O129 - POLITICS

        No member will take an active part in the affairs of any political organisation or party, be it a candidate for election to the Parliament of Canada or Provincial Legislature, or, except with special authority, accept any offices in a municipal corporation or other local governing body.[5]

ARTICLE O130 - CURRENT AFFAIRS

        It is expected that all officers keep abreast of current affairs, particularly as they affect national and international politics. The profession of arms is demanding in many respects. Now more than ever, an officer is required to have more than a passing knowledge of national security issues.

ARTICLE O131 - FINANCIAL MATTERS

        An officer should keep a thorough record of his private accounts. Should he find himself in financial difficulties, he should seek the counsel of his Squadron Commander and the Unit Financial Counsellor (usually the Adjutant).

---

[5] *QR&Os*, Volume I, Chapter 19, Section 2, para 19.44 – Political Activities and Candidature for Office

ARTICLE O132 - PUBLIC RELATIONS

All dealings with the media must be approved by the Commanding Officer. This approval will be coordinated by the Unit Public Affairs Representative (UPAR), an appointment normally held by the Adjutant.

SECTION 2 - SOCIAL RESPONSIBLIITIES

ARTICLE O201 - INVITATIONS -GENERAL

1.   Invitations fall under two headings: formal and informal. They must be answered in the form in which they are issued. That is, a formal invitation must be answered formally and an informal one informally.

2.   Etiquette demands that all invitations should be answered promptly to enable the host or hostess to make the necessary preparations. Failure to reply to an invitation at all is not only irresponsible, but demonstrates a lack of consideration to the host or hostess.

3.   An invitation, once accepted, must not be subsequently declined, except for reasons over which one has no control, such as illness or an unavoidable absence on duty.

ARTICLE O202 - FORMAL INVITATIONS

1.   Formal invitations are written in the third person and may be either hand-written or printed. The following example is in general form:

> The Commanding Officer
> and the Officers of
> Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)
> request the pleasure of the company of
>
> _____
>
> at _____
> at _____ O'clock on_____
>
> The Edmonton Garrison Officers' Mess

Dress: Mess Kit   RSVP to the Commanding Officer's Secretary
                         973-1660

2.   Such invitations must be answered formally in the third person.
For example:

> Mr. J. Smith has much pleasure in accepting the kind invitation of the Commanding Officer and Officers of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) to dinner on……………………………………………………
>
> Or, if a refusal is necessary, it should be amended to read "regrets he is unable to accept………….

3.   The address of the officer or gentleman replying to the invitation and the date should be written in the bottom left-hand corner of the sheet, and the envelope addressed as shown on the invitation. Replies should be handwritten on personal paper.

4.   It is important that the decorations of officers issuing the invitation should not appear on the invitation card, but those of the guest invited should be inserted.

5.   In replying, always insert any decorations to which your host maybe entitled to but do not insert your own,

ARTICLE O 203 - <u>INFORMAL INVITATIONS</u>

Informal invitations may be either written or received verbally. Correct etiquette requires you to answer in the same form that you receive it. For example:

Dear Mrs.

Many thanks for your invitation to dinner on January 10th. I shall be delighted to attend.

Yours sincerely,

Or

Dear Mrs.

I am sorry I cannot accept your kind invitation to dinner on January 10th, as I have, unfortunately, another engagement that evening.

Yours sincerely,

ARTICLE O204 - <u>RSVPs</u>

RSVPs are normally used on all invitations, and are of two types: RSVP or RSVP: Regrets Only. The former requires you to reply to your host or hostess regardless of whether you plan to attend or not; whereas the latter only requires you to respond if you are unable to attend. Format for replies are illustrated above. Keep in mind that it is extremely rude to ignore an RSVP; you should always send your reply promptly.

ARTICLE O205 - <u>THANK-YOU NOTES</u>

Having attended a function to which you have been personally invited, it is customary and indeed, common courtesy following the function, to thank the host or hostess in appreciation for his/her efforts. This is normally done in the form in which you received the invitation. Therefore, if you received a written invitation, it is proper to send a thank-you note shortly after the function. A telephoned thank-you is acceptable if verbal invitations were issued. Unfortunately, this custom is all too often ignored or forgotten. Regimental Officers should not need to be reminded of this simple courtesy.

ARTICLE O206 - <u>PUNCTUALITY</u>

Private dinners or cocktails are the only occasions when an officer is not required to arrive promptly. The current accepted time of arrival at the hostess' home is within fifteen minutes of the time indicated on the invitation. NEVER arrive prior to the indicated time of the function.

ARTICLE O207 - <u>CALLING CARDS</u>

1.   Subalterns may acquire proper calling cards if they so desire. Calling cards must be of the correct size, those for officers being 3" by 1/2" and of top quality. Do not use printed cards. Your name must be inscribed in embossed lettering (engraved or thermo-engraved). Junior officers below the rank of Captain do not show their rank on calling cards, but have "Mr" or "Ms" prefixed to their name. Decorations do not appear on calling cards. An example is shown below:

Mr. Hansen H. Panzerleader

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)

2.   To ensure your cards are correct in every detail, they should be ordered through the kitshop and based on the advice of the Adjutant.

3.   Officers make use of their calling cards in exactly the same way do civilian gentlemen. There is an additional military use, and although this no longer in general use, cards may be left in when visiting or on posting. When one calls on an officer he leaves two cards. One for the Commander / Commanding Officer (depending on whether or not it is a headquarters or unit Mess) and one for the PMC and officers. The officer leaving the card writes, in his own hand, in the upper left hand comer of one card:

Lieutenant-Colonel JA Hulk, CD
Commanding Officer

The British Columbia Dragoons

and on the other:
PMC and Officers
The British Columbia Dragoons

4.   When an officer has been posted away from his base he leaves two cards as indicated above but this time he places the letters "P.P .C." in the lower left hand comer as well. This abbreviation is "Pour Prendre Congé", roughly translated "On Taking Leave". This act constitutes his formal farewell.

ARTICLE O208 - <u>THE JUNIOR OFFICER IN PUBLIC</u>

1.   When a junior officer appears in public, his conduct must be beyond reproach and must never bring discredit to his unit and the Canadian Armed Forces.

2.   There are certain general points of behaviour that will be observed by all subalterns:

        a.   When in uniform and walking with a lady, it is proper to offer the lady your left arm. This
                method of escorting a lady allows an officer to return salutes as necessary;

b.   A junior officer should never frequent public establishments where members of other ranks have a habit of gathering;

c.   At all public events and if the officer is in uniform, he will salute when the national anthem is played; and

d.   It is customary on first meeting a lady to, when in uniform, salute as a mark of greeting and courtesy.

ARTICLE O209 - ETIQUETTE

1.   Etiquette is the execution of acts of politeness, civility and respect. It includes the full appreciation of the rights and feelings of others. The rules of etiquette give our social society that certain "something" that makes life pleasant. For a gentleman, many of the rules of etiquette deal with the opposite sex and should be practiced constantly by the junior officers.

2.   The following are some of the important points and rules of etiquette:

a.   A gentleman should rise whenever a lady enters the room

b.   Ladies should be escorted by gentlemen, both to and from dinner; the lady in question should be seated to his right;

c.   A gentleman should open a door for a lady;

d.   A gentleman should always assist a lady to sit;

e.   Foul or abusive language should not be used in mixed company;

f.   A gentleman should always ask the permission of those around him before smoking;

g.   A gentleman will observe the proper method of using utensils at every meal;

h.   A gentleman should:

(1)   Eat with his mouth closed;

(2)   Not talk with his mouth full; and

i.   Should excuse himself when leaving the company of others.

3.   The rules of etiquette are not difficult to practice and the observance of these rules will stand the junior officer in good stead throughout society. Further amplification is available from any recognized book on etiquette. Appendix 2 also provides some rules on basic table manners and Dining Etiquette

ARTICLE O210 - CONCLUSION

By virtue of your commission as an officer in the Canadian Forces you bear certain social responsibilities. Courtesy, consideration for others and a few basic ground rules are all that is required to fulfill these responsibilities. These simple gestures of politeness and respect, as well as the observance of certain principles, will earn you the respect of your fellow officers and help maintain a positive image of

the Canadian Forces. It is expected that as an officer of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) you will live to the spirit and to the letter of the title, "an Officer and a Gentleman."

<center>SECTION 3 - <u>THE SUBALTERNS' GUIDE TO ADC DUTIES</u></center>

ARTICLE O301 - <u>PRELIMINARIES</u>

It is essential to maintain a working knowledge of the General and his wife's interests to enable you to provide answers to any such questions by visitors to social functions prior to the General's arrival. It is obvious that you must know the reason for his visit as well as such things as his family and there respective ages, any particular likes/dislikes with regards to food/beverages. The General may have special interest/hobbies or relatives in the local area he may wish to visit. Many of these details can be obtained prior to his visit and are definitely of value.

ARTICLE O302 - <u>INFORMATION ON ARRIVAL</u>

The General will expect to be briefed on the details of his visit upon arrival. The ADC should have available to him an itinerary as well as the following information: dress for functions official/social, accommodation arrangements (including his room key), speeches he will be required to make and a staff list for the unit. Also he should provide details of where the ADC is staying, local and background as applicable.

ARTICLE O303 - <u>VISIT ITINERARY</u>

An ADC must review the itinerary in detail with the visit OPI. If the visit involves a number of different locations in sequence a route recce should be undertaken with the car driver to familiarize him and obtain timings. Obtain a list of names, including first names, the General will meet at each location and whom to expect upon arrival. Obtain the phone number of the OPI so he can be informed of any unexpected changes. Ensure the route is planned to bring the visitor's car to the closest and appropriate entrance at each location. Brief the General on the route he will take once in the building. The ADC should act as a guide and walk ahead of the officer party to prevent the host from having to continually say "This way Sir." If the General's wife is in attendance ensure you have a complete working knowledge of her itinerary.

ARTICLE O304 - <u>COMMUNICATIONS</u>

Prepare a list of emergency phone numbers that may be needed such as transport, the Visit OPI, the mess, PMC.

ARTICLE O305 - <u>SOCIAL FUNCTIONS</u>

The ADC must discuss the planned function with the OPI/Adjt/PMC. Ensure the menu conforms to the General's diet and that no allergic items are planned. In the brief include a guest list with first names, appointments, first names of ladies in attendance, and a diagram of seating arrangements. A sequence of events should be provided with highlights on those requiring the General's attention.

ARTICLE O306 - <u>DUTIES AT A SOCIAL FUNCTION</u>

The principal duty is to ensure the visiting General has a good time and is not embarrassed. The ADC should keep the General in view at all times. The host will normally ensure the proper guests are introduced. However, if he is engaged, the ADC should fill this role. The ADC should ensure the General

obtains the beverage he wants and that the host is informed of the type. The General's wife will usually mix separately and the ADC should keep her in sight and ensure she is properly entertained. The ADC should provide the General with timely reminders of deadlines to allow him to tactfully disengage from any conversation. The ADC will remain sober during his duty.

ARTICLE O307 - QUARTERS

        The ADC must ensure the quarters are reserved and appropriate. Prior to his arrival, obtain the keys and inspect the quarters. When the visitor is to be accompanied by his wife, arrange for flowers as well as stocking the bar. Before picking up the General, obtain the keys, check the room and lock the door. If hotel accommodation is arranged, register him in the room ahead of time, and inform the manager. Quarters for the ADC should be in close proximity and he should preposition extra uniforms, pressed shirts/kit to avoid time delays and always be at a presentable state.

ARTICLE O308 - VEHICLES

        Obtain the flag/staff plates from Regimental transport/RSM or, if they are only held by the General's command ensure they are forwarded with his arrival. The flags on the cars are flown both day and night on the base and only flown off base on ceremonial occasions. Ensure the vehicle is equipped with a staff to mount the flag and the driver knows the proper times to do so and puts it right side up. On arrival at parades, once the General has left the vehicle the flag is not removed from the vehicle until clear of the square. Make arrangements for the car to be in close proximity to airport terminal doors with appropriate plates when meeting the General. The driver should be thoroughly briefed on all matters, times for pick up and be at a phone where he can be reached immediately when off duty or not required. Suitable locations are the ROR, transport office or Duty Centre Room.

ARTICLE O309 - SEATING

        The ADC sits next to the driver, the General sits behind his command pennant. If two or more Generals are present the Senior one sits on the right and the car carries his pennant. The ADC always opens/closes the vehicle door saluting in the process. The driver does the same if the General's wife is present as well as taking the flag down after his departure. Papers or briefcases are carried in the front with the ADC.

ARTICLE O310 - DRESS

10.   The ADC should be properly dressed and wear the same order of dress as the visiting officer, this applies equally to the driver. Aiguillettes are worn on the left shoulder with # 2/3. Two small loops must be sewn into the left shoulder ¼ inch from the edge of the seam. The button loop for this is attached to the upper tunic button. The ADC must inform the General of the uniforms he will require prior to leaving his home unit, or have such items readily available in the appropriate size. It is the ADC's responsibility to ensure the General is appropriately dressed. Whenever the General removes clothing it is the ADC's responsibility to ensure their security. The ADC should know the whereabouts of facilities to quickly launder/dry clean uniforms, and keep an emergency kit of spare buttons/retaining clips readily available.

ARTICLE O311 - PARADES

1.   The ADC must ensure his General unhesitatingly carries out the correct action at the proper time. The ADC must attend the parade rehearsal and discuss all points with the Commanding Officer/RSM. You must know the order of who sits where in the VIP seats. Generally all VIPs sit on the right of the Reviewing Stand with the Host. The usual order of seating is left to right as follows: CO, Federal MPs,

Generals by rank, other officers in descending order of rank, provincial MPs, Reeves. An hour before parade, the ADC should make a prearranged call to the RSM and synchronize watches and confirm arrival time.

2.   The General should arrive on the Parade Square with vehicle door facing the Reviewing Stand. The general salute should not be given until the General is on the stand and his wife has reached her seat. The car should depart to a prearranged spot where the driver can see the ADC for the signal to pick up the General. The ADC takes a position 6 feet to the rear of the right comer of the Reviewing Stand. The ADC follows the Drill movements of the General. But does not salute on the General salute.

3.   The action of the ADC during the inspection will be decided by consultation with the Parade Commander. The ADC may be required to carry the General's speech with him until it is required. A spare copy might be carried in the event his papers are blown off the Reviewing Stand. Finally, the ADC should ensure the General and his wife have a Parade Programme.

ARTICLE O312 - <u>DEPARTURE</u>

The ADC should check transportation arrangements a few hours prior to departure to ensure accommodation arranged at the arrival end and confirm the transportation plan.

ARTICLE O313 - <u>SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES</u>

1.   a. CFAO 61-6 Precedence;

b. CFAO 61-8 Military Honours;

c. CFP 265 CF Dress manual; and

d. A-PD-201-000/PT-OOO CF Manual of Drill and Ceremonial.

ARTICLE O314 - <u>CONCLUSION</u>

It is your responsibility to ensure the General's visit goes as smoothly as possible. Anticipate his requirements, be a source of information on all matters and, above all, be confident in the execution of your duties.

ARTICLE O317 - <u>DRESS GUIDE</u>

1.   As a Strathcona Officer, you can be expected to attend numerous social activities that will require you to wear civilian dress. There are several categories of dress that are often used within the civilian world and private sector, often incorrectly. A young officer properly dressed is able to confidently present himself to both civilians and superior officers. In contrast, a poorly dressed officer will invariably make a poor impression that will be difficult to overcome. In years gone by, a junior officer was told a uniform is always in style. This is no longer the case. A social function may require you to dress in civilian attire for many reasons, you receiving orders to dress accordingly not the least of them.

2.   If you are unsure of the exact dress requirements, it is your responsibility to ask. The senior subaltern, mess secretary or a senior captain are all aware of the nuances of dress and familiar with those expectations of previous events. If you are unable to get that clarification, a good rule of thumb is to over-dress. It is far easier to remove a tie and sport coat to dress down than to turn a surfing outfit into respectable business attire.

3.   There exist several conventions of civilian dress. It is advised you strictly adhere to these guidelines. As previously mentioned, some conventions are improperly applied or the wrong term is often used. As a result, a good rule of thumb is to dress in a more formal style and be prepared to modify your dress at the event. Being over-dressed for an event is a minor faux-pas but does indicate you are serious and a professional. Being under-dressed is a major faux-pas that can bring discredit to both you and the Regiment.

4.   **Business Casual** is by far one of the most commonly used dress conventions in the business world for informal functions and occasions. It is also one of the most improperly applied. Business casual consists of:

      a.   Dress pants or slacks;

      b.   Sports jacket, blazer or suit (optional);

      c.   Dress shirt with tie, open neck dress shirt, blouse, or golf shirt;

      d.   Sweater with dress shirt and tie or turtleneck;

      e.   Dress shoes (oxford, loafers or lace up shoes) or dress sandals (women only); and

      f.   Dress, skirt or capris (women only).

5.   Business casual dress is tasteful and subdued. Skirts and dresses should not expose more than six inches above the knee. Polo or golf shirts must not display offensive language, advertisements or slogans. Dress shorts are not considered appropriate unless your host specifically states they are. The following are never considered appropriate dress:

      a.   Sports clothing (including sweat shirts, T shirts, sweat pants, spandex, cargo pants, shorts or running shoes);

      b.   Beach attire (including shorts, swimwear, sleeveless shirts, flip-flops, or sandals);

      c.   Denim clothing of any sort;

      d.   Midriff baring clothing; and

      e.   Jewelry of excessive appearance (men should avoid wearing jewelry of any kind).

6.   **Business formal** dress (often simply called business attire or business dress) is the more formal dress convention worn in a business or professional environment. Although many companies are becoming less formal, this is the style of dress traditionally worn to the office and formal meetings. Though social events often entail a less formal dress convention, many social events coincide with business meetings or conventions out of convenience. Be prepared for this dress convention in any informal event hosted by a government representative, Fortune 500 company, or museum.

7.   The good rule of thumb for business formal is suit and tie. A blazer or sports jacket with slacks may be worn instead of a suit. Women may wear a pants suit or professional style dress. During inclement weather a coat is normally worn outdoors however a sweater may be worn over the dress shirt and tie. Footwear is limited to dress shoes. Women should avoid wearing ostentatious shoes or very high heels. Jewelry is limited, small, and tasteful.

8.   **Black tie** dress conventions are reserved for major events and formal affairs. The dress for a black tie event reflects a more elegant event and often a more exclusive guest list. Dress for the black tie event is the traditional tuxedo with black bowtie. Warm weather climates and summer do enable a variation with a white tuxedo jacket.

9.   For a black tie event, your mess dress may be appropriate. Before wearing your mess kit, ensure you request permission from your chain of command and confirm the dress with your host. As with mess kit, it is considered poor taste to use the plastic buttons on your tuxedo shirt. A simple set of studs and matching cuff links is appropriate.

10.   **White tie** events represent the most formal of events. An invitation to a white tie event is very prestigious and strict adherence to dress and deportment is expected. The dress for a white tie event includes a black tailcoat, matching trousers, white waistcoat, French-cuff shirt with wing collar, and white bowtie.

11.   Your mess dress may be appropriate for a white tie event, with a white bowtie. As with a black tie event, request permission from your chain of command and confirm with your host if mess dress is appropriate. Even more than a black tie event, the quality and presentation of accessories are very important. In the event you are asked to attend such an event, do not hesitate to ask for guidance and assistance to ensure you represent yourself (and the Regiment) at the highest standard.

12.   Numerous styles and techniques for tying formal neckwear exist, often tradition and fashion dictating the method used. Below are diagrams demonstrating the correct method to tie a Windsor Knot and a bowtie.

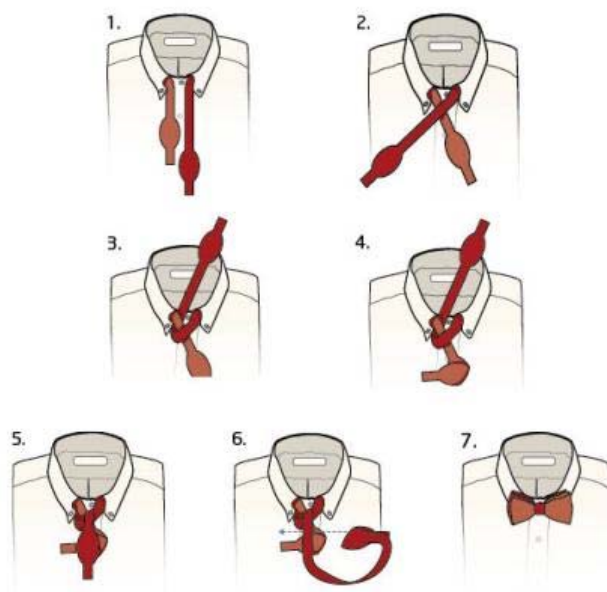**Figure 135 – Tying a Windsor and Four-in-hand Tie Knot**   **Figure 136 – Tying a Bow Tie**

SECTION 4 – <u>SUMMARY TRIAL ASSISTING OFFICER DUTIES</u>

ARTICLE O401 - <u>GENERAL</u>

1.   An important duty you may be tasked with is to act as an Assisting Officer for a soldier who has been charged. The details included here provide a cursory overview of the responsibilities. Upon arriving at the Regiment it is important you become familiar with the Assisting Officer's Guidebook and QR&O 108. Prior to meeting with an accused soldier, ensure you understand the charges that have been laid and the specific punishments possible. Remember, you are there to assist the soldier and you should be the expert on the procedures and decisions the accused will face. This will be a stressful time for the accused, you are there to assist in the process.

2.   To the extent desired by the accused, the assisting officer must:

    a.   Assist in preparation of the case and advise the accused regarding witnesses, evidence, and other matter relating to the charge; and

    b.   Assist during the trial to the extent of speaking for the accused during the trial.

ARTICLE O402 - <u>ELECTION</u>

1.   Based on the specific charges that have been laid, the accused may have the opportunity to elect for either a Summary Trial or trial by Court Martial. The assisting officer must ensure the accused understands:

    a.   The nature and severity of the charges that have been laid; and

    b.   A comparison of the differences of Summary Trial and Court Martial, including:

        (1)   The powers of punishment;

        (2)   The rights of the accused for representation;

        (3)   Rules of evidence; and

        (4)   The right to appeal.

ARTICLE O403 - <u>CONCLUSION</u>

1.   Prior to providing any advice, ensure you have read and understand the related QR&O's. Do not be afraid to talk to the investigating officer. They can provide information that may help you to assist the accused. Remember, you are not a JAG or civilian lawyer. You are there to assist with the administration of the trial <u>NOT</u> to provide legal advice.

ANNEX P - <u>BIBLIOGRAPHY</u>

<u>PUBLISHED REGIMENTAL SOURCES</u>

Cunniffe, R. <u>The Story of a Regiment: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)</u>. Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), 1995. As the title page of the book states, the book is "A record of happenings, from 1885 to1939, which tells the story of the first unit of the Permanent Force to be stationed in Canada's north-west." <u>The Story of a Regiment</u> was completed in manuscript form in 1963 but was not published until 1995. The book was published as Volume I of the Regiment's Historical Series.

Department of Militia and Defence. <u>Strathcona's Horse in the South African War 1899-1902</u>. Sessional Paper No. 35a. Ottawa: S.E. Dawson, 1901. The official account of the Regiment in its first campaign is contained in this official report of the Honourable Minister of Militia and Defence.

Fraser, W.B. <u>Always a Strathcona</u>. Calgary: Comprint Publishing Company, 1976. Initially printed in 1976 (and reprinted in 1986), <u>Always a Strathcona</u> is the authorized account of the Regiment. The book describes the activities and spirit of the Regiment, as well as the political and social settings of the times, throughout its first seventy-five years.

Grodzinski, Captain J.R. <u>The Battle of Moreuil Wood</u>. Vancouver: Broadway Printers, 1993. This booklet was published on the seventy-fifth anniversary of the Battle of Moreuil Wood. The booklet contains a detailed account of the battle along with maps, organization charts and names of personnel involved in the battle.

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Regimental Society. <u>Strathcona's Horse: South Africa 1900 - 1901</u>. Calgary: Bunker to Bunker Publishers, 2000. <u>Strathcona's Horse: South Africa 1900 - 1901</u> is Volume V of the Regiment's Historical Series and is an edited copy of <u>Diary of Lord Strathcona's Corps South African War 1900-1901</u>.

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians). <u>The Strathconian</u>. 1914, 1927 to present. <u>The Strathconian</u> is the Regiment's annual journal published under the authority of the Commanding Officer. Special editions have been produced from time to time to mark activities such as deployments on United Nations peacekeeping operations.

McAvity, Lieutenant-Colonel J.M. D.S.O., M.B.E. <u>Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians): A Record of Achievement</u>. Toronto: Brigdens Limited, 1947. (Reprinted in Vancouver: Broadway Printers Limited, 1996). Lieutenant-Colonel McAvity commanded the Regiment from 27 July 1944 to 25 November 1945. This book is a stirring account of the Regiment at war, told only as a participant can do. In addition to detailed account of the Regiment during the period 1939 – 1946, the book contains a Roll of Honour, a list of honours and awards, Tank Standing Orders, tank histories and a nominal roll of the 2nd Canadian Armoured Regiment, Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians). The book's reprint in 1996 was as Volume II of the Regiment's Historical Series.

Miller, Andrew. <u>M.S. of Volume Relating to the Organization of Strathcona's Horse</u>, Volume 3 of 4 Regimental Historical Accounts from the South African War, 1912. <u>M.S. of Volume Relating to the Organization of Strathcona's Horse</u> is a sound account of the founding of the Regiment, its first campaign in South Africa and the times that inspired its early years. Andrew Miller (Number 216) enlisted in Ottawa, February 20, 1900, and was appointed to A Squadron as Orderly Room Clerk. He was promoted to Sergeant in 1901.

Steele, Samuel B. Forty Years in Canada: Reminiscences of the Great North-West with some Account of his Service in South Africa. Toronto, 1915: McGraw-Hill Ryerson Limited, rpt. 1972. In his autobiography, Colonel Samuel B. Steele covers much of the early history of the Regiment including his service in South Africa both as a Strathcona and with the South African Constabulary.

Stewart, Brigadier-General John Smith. Memoirs of a Soldier. Lethbridge: Robins Southern Printing Ltd., n.d. Memoirs of a Soldier, which was written by Brigadier J.S. Stewart, G.M.G., D.S.O., E.D., tells the story of the brigadier's years of service in the South African War and the First World War, including his time as a Strathcona trooper in the South African War. The book provides an interesting insight into the life of a soldier in the Regiment's first campaign.

Strathcona's Horse: A Western Heritage. Edmonton: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Regimental Society, 2000. This booklet contains a brief history of the Regiment and contains illustrations of the regimental artefacts that were part of the exhibition "Strathcona's Horse: A Western Heritage" at the Provincial Museum of Alberta (Edmonton) and the Military Museums (Calgary) during Celebration 2000.

William, Captain S.H., M.C. Stand to Your Horses: Through the First World War 1914-1918 with the Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians). Altona: D.W. Friesen and Sons Ltd., 1961. (Reprinted in Vancouver: Broadway Printers Ltd., 1999). Stand To Your Horses is probably one of the very best chronicles of any unit engaged in the First World War. It takes the reader through the First World War with Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians). The book was reprinted in 1999 as Volume III of the Regiment's Historical Series.

OTHER REGIMENTAL SOURCES

Dress Regulations for Officers. Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), 1961. Junior Officer Guide. Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), 1983. Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Dress Instructions. Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), 1970.

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Officer's Mess Constitution. Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), 1982.

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Officers Mess Rules. Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), 1926.

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Regimental Society Business Plan. Edmonton: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Regimental Society, 2003.

Mackie, Lieutenant E.F. "Remnants of the Boer War Diary." Transcribed by Warrant Officer D.H. Crowell, MB, CD. Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Museum, n.d.

Militia Orders Strathcona's Corps 1900-1902. Volume 4 of 4 Regimental Historical Accounts from the South African War.

"Minutes of the Annual and Extraordinary Board of Directors Meeting of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Regimental Society." Various.

"Minutes of the Annual General Meeting of Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Regimental Society." Various years.

Policies and Procedures Manual - Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Museum. Edmonton: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Society, 2003.

Steele, Lieutenant-Colonel Sam, Diary of Lord Strathcona's Corps South African War 1900-1901, Volume 1 of 4 Regimental Historical Accounts from the South African War. Authenticated by Lieutenant-Colonel S.B. Steele, Diary of Lord Strathcona's Corps South African War 1900-1901 is the day-to-day journal of the Regiment in the South African War starting with the formation of the mounted corps for special service in South Africa on 1 February 1901 and ending with Lieutenant-Colonel Steele reporting to Lord Minto in Ottawa on 13 March 1901.

Strathcona's Horse, Part I – Synopsis of Lord Strathcona's Correspondence Relating to the Regiment 1900-1902, and Part II – Copies of Letters from Colonel Steele on the Organization and Works of the Regiment 1900-1902, Volume 2 of 4 Regimental Historical Accounts from the South African War.

Subaltern's Guide. Calgary: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians), 1989. CANADIAN FORCES PUBLICATIONS

Canadian Forces Band Instructions. Ottawa: Department of National Defence, 1994. Canadian Forces Publication A-AD-202-001/FP-001.

Canadian Forces Dress Instructions. Ottawa: Department of National Defence, 2005. Canadian Forces Publication A-AD-265-000/AG-001.

Canadian Forces Manual of Drill and Ceremonial. Ottawa: Department of National Defence, 1992. Canadian Forces Publication A-PD-201-000/PT-000.

Canadian Forces Mess Administration. Ottawa: Department of National Defence, 1982. Canadian Forces Publication A-AD-262-000/AG-000. Change 2, 12 July 1984.

Canadian Forces Museums: Operations and Administration. Ottawa: Department of National Defence, 1998. Canadian Forces Publication A-PD-266-000/AG-001.

Department of Militia and Defence. General Orders. Ottawa: Government Printing Office, various years.

Department of Militia and Defence. Militia Orders. Ottawa: Government Printing Office, various years.

Department of National Defence. Armour Bulletin. Gagetown: Royal Canadian Armoured Corps School, various.

Department of National Defence. Canadian Army Orders. Various.

Department of National Defence. Canadian Forces Administrative Orders. Various.

Department of National Defence. Queen's Regulations and Orders. Volumes I through IV. Dress Instructions for Officers of the Royal Canadian Armoured Corps. Ottawa:

Department of National Defence, 1953.

Flags, Battle Honours and other Honorary Distinctions of the Canadian Forces. Ottawa: Department of
        National Defence, 1988. Canadian Forces Publication A-AD-200-000/AG-000.

Flags, Ensigns, Colours, Pennants and Honours for the Canadian Forces. Ottawa: Department of National
        Defence, 1980. Canadian Forces Publication A-AD-200-000/AG-000.

Historical Section, General Staff, Army Headquarters. Canada's Army In Korea the United Nations
        Operations, 1950-53 and Their Aftermath: a Short Official Account. Ottawa: Queen's Printer,
        1956.

Insignia and Lineages of the Canadian Forces. Ottawa: Department of National Defence, n.d. Canadian
        Forces Publication A-AD-267-000/AF-004.

Regimental Trumpet and Bugle Calls for the Canadian Army. Ottawa: Canadian Army, 1961.

Russell, E.C. Customs and Traditions of the Canadian Armed Forces. Ottawa: Minister of Supply and
        Services Canada, 1980. Canadian Forces Publication A-JS-007-002/JD-001.

The Honours, Flags and Heritage Structure of the Canadian Forces. Ottawa: Department of National
        Defence, 1999 (Revised 2001). Canadian Forces Publication A-PD-200-000/AG-000. The
        Regiments and Corps of the Canadian Army. Ottawa: Canadian Army, 1964.

OTHER REFERENCES

Anglesey, the Marquess of, F.S.A. The Western Front, 1915-1918; Epilogue, 1919-1939. Vol. VIII of A
        History of the British Cavalry 1816-1919. London: Leo Cooper, 1997.

Anglesey, the Marquess of, F.S.A. 1899-1913. Vol. IV of A History of the British Cavalry 1816-1919.
        London: Leo Cooper, 1986.

Army Trumpet and Bugle Sounds (with Words). Aldershot: George Potter & Co., 1915.

Atkin, Ronald. Maintain the Right: The Early History of the North West Mounted Police, 1873-1900. New
        York: The John Day Company, 1973.

Barris, Ted. Deadlock in Korea: Canadians at War, 1950-1953. Toronto: MacMillan Canada, 1999.
        Bercusion,

Blake, R.L.V. ffrench. The 17th/21st Lancers. Series. Ed. Lt.-General Sir Brian Horrocks. Famous
        Regiments. London: Hamish Hamilton, 1968.

Boulton, James J. Uniforms of the Canadian Mounted Police. North Battleford: Turner Warwick
        Publications, 1990.

Reynolds, C. Stained Glass of Westminster Abbey. Westminster: Jarrold Publishing, 2002

David J. Blood on the Hills: The Canadian Army in the Korean War. Toronto: University of Toronto
        Press, 1999.

Department of Militia and Defence. Supplementary Report: Organization, Equipment, Despatch and

Service of the Canadian Contingents During the War in South Africa 1899 – 1900: The 2nd Contingent. Sessional Paper No. 35a. Ottawa: S.E. Dawson, 1901.

Department of Militia and Defence. Supplementary Report: Organization, Equipment, Despatch and Service of the Canadian Contingents During the War in South Africa 1899 – 1900: Report C [The Royal Canadian Dragoons]. Sessional Paper No. 35a. Ottawa: S.E. Dawson, 1901.

Haydon, A.L. The Riders of the Plains: A Record of the Royal North-West Mounted Police of Canada 1873 – 1910. London: Andrew Melrose, 1910.

Heifetz, Jeanne. When Blue Meant Yellow: How Colors Got Their Names. New York: Holt, 1994.

MacKay, Douglas. The Honourable Company: A History of the Hudson's Bay Company. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1936.

Maloney, Sean M. War Without Battles: Canada's NATO Brigade in Germany 1951-1993. Toronto: McGraw-Hill Ryerson Limited, 1997.

Marteinson, John and Micheal R. McNorgan. The Royal Canadian Armoured Corps: An Illustrated History. Toronto: Robin Brass Studio, Inc., 2000.

Marteinson, John, et al. We Stand on Guard: An Illustrated History of the Canadian Army. Montreal: Ovale Publications, 1992.

Mcdonald, Donna. Lord Strathcona: A Biography of Donald Alexander Smith. Toronto: Dundurn Press 1996.

Miller, Carmen. Painting the Map Red: Canadians in the South African War, 1899-1902. McGill- Queen's University Press, 1993.

Montemaggi, Amedeo and Bill McAndrew. The Gothic Line: The Canadian Breaching at Tavullia Key of the Italian Campaign. Tavullia, Italy: Comune di Tavullia, 1997.

Nicholson, G.W.L. The Canadian Expeditionary Force 1914-1919. Ottawa: The Queen's Printer, 1962.

Nicholson, G.W.L. The Canadians in Italy, 1939 -1945. Ottawa: The Queen's Printer, 1966.

Preston, W.T.R. The Life and Times of Lord Strathcona. Toronto: McClelland, Goodchild and Stewart Publishers, 1914.

Reford, Alexander. "Smith, Donald Alexander, 1st Baron Strathcona and Mount Royal." Dictionary of Canadian Biography. Ed. Ramsay Cook, et al. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1998. Vol. XIV. pp. 939 – 947.

Reid, Brian A. Our Little Army in the Field: The Canadians in South Africa 1899-1902. St. Catherines: Vanwell Publishing, Limited, 1996.

Ross, David and René Chartrand. Canadian Militia Dress Regulations 1907: Illustrated, with amendments to 1914. Saint John: The New Brunswick Museum, 1977.

Stewart, Robert. Sam Steele: Lion of the Frontier. 2nd Ed. Toronto: Doubleday Canada, 1999.

Stradling, Group Captain A.H., O.B.E. <u>Customs of the Service</u>. Aldershot: Gale & Polden Ltd., 1939 (<u>Customs of the Services</u>. Aldershot: Gale & Polden Ltd., Revised Edition 1954).

Summers, Jack L. and René Chartrand. <u>Military Uniforms in Canada, 1665-1970</u>. Ottawa: National Museum of Man, 1981.

<u>The Armoured Corps: Its Origins, Regiments and Traditions</u>. 4th Ed. Precis 103. Gagetown: Armour School, 1988.

<u>The Junior Officer and His Regiment</u>. Precis 101. Gagetown: Armour School, 1981.

War Office. <u>Cavalry Training: 1912</u>. London, 1912: Eyre and Spottiswoode Limited, rpt.1915.

Willson, Beckles. <u>The Life of Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal, G.C.M.G., G.C.V.O. (1820-1914)</u>. Toronto: Cassell and Company Limited, 1915.

Woodcock, George. <u>Faces From History</u>. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers, 1978.

Worthington, L. <u>The Spur and the Sprocket</u>. Kitchener: Reeve Press, 1968.

<u>VIDEOS AND FILMS Dispatches from the AOR A Tour Diary: The Strathcona Battlegroup in Bosnia: July 1997 – January 1998</u>. Calgary: AVS Inc. and LdSH(RC), 1998.

<u>LdSH(RC) in Cyprus</u>. Calgary: n.p., 28 Aug 91. (Held in the The Military Museums).

<u>Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians): A History or Valour</u>. Calgary: The Factory \ Amalgam Film/Video Producers, 1995 (re-edited 2000).

<u>Rollpast! LdSH Freedom of the City</u>. Calgary: AVS Inc. Productions, 20 May 1996.

<u>Steele Cavalry: Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians)</u>. Calgary: CFRN Channel 3, aired on 1 July 1996.

<u>INTERNET REFERENCES</u>

Armoured Acorn: The Canadian Armoured Website. <u>http://www.armouredacorn.com/index.html</u>. British Army. <u>http://www.army.mod.uk/army</u>.

Canadian Heritage and Information Network. <u>http://www.chin.gc.ca</u>. Canada's Parliament. <u>http://www.parl.gc.ca</u>.

Canadian Peacekeeping Veterans Association. <u>http://www.cpva.ca</u>.

Canadian War Graves Commission. <u>http://www.cwgc.org/cwgcinternet/search.aspx</u>.

Department of National Defence and Canadian Forces. <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca/site/home_e.asp</u>.

Department of National Defence, Directorate of History and Heritage. <u>http://www.dnd.ca/hr/dhh/engraph/home_e.asp</u>

Glenbow Museum, Art Gallery, Library, Archives (Calgary). http://www.glenbow.org.

His Royal Highness, The Prince of Wales. http://www.princeofwales.gov.uk.

Imperial War Museum. http://www.iwm.org.uk.

Korean War Medals. http://www.korean-war-medals.com/.

Land Force Command (Canadian Army). http://www.army.forces.gc.ca/lf/English/home.asp.

Land Forces of Britain, the Empire and Commonwealth. http://regiments.org/milhist/index.htm.

Library and Archives Canada. http://www.collectionscanada.ca.

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) Regimental Homepage. http://www.strathconas.ca.

Lord Strathcona's Horse (Royal Canadians) - The Military Museums.
        http://www.strathconas.ca/Museum/museum.html.

The Military Museums. http://themilitarymuseums.ca/.

National Inventory of Canadian Military Memorials.
        http://www.forces.gc.ca/hr/dhh/memorial/engraph/home_e.asp?cat=2.

North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) Official Homepage. http://www.nato.int/home.htm.

Orders of Battle 1939 – 1945. http://pages.cthome.net/dryan/orders/army.html.

Statistics Canada. http://www.statcan.ca.

Steele Chariots. http://www3.sympatico.ca/chrjohnson/index.htm.

Tank Museum, Bovington, England. http://www.tankmuseum.co.uk/home.html.

The Memory Project. http://www.thememoryproject.com/index.cfm.

United Nations Homepage. http://www.un.org.

Veterans Affairs Canada - Canadian Military Medals and Decorations. http://www.vac-
        acc.gc.ca/general/sub.cfm?source=collections/cmdp/mainmenu.

Veterans Affairs Canada. http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca/general.

Victoria Cross Reference. http://www.chapter-one.com/vc/default.asp.

Virtual Library museums pages. http://www.icom.org/vlmp.

"We Will Remember." War Monuments in Canada World Wide Web Site.
        http://www.stemnet.nf.ca/monuments/index.htm.